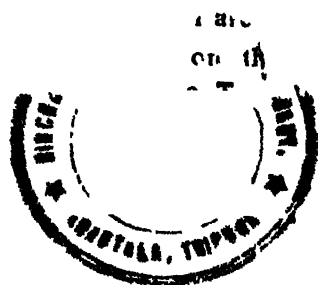


MANIPURI GRAMMAR



NAND LAL SHARMA

Published by:— **R. K. Book Agency**
Paona Bazar, Imphal

Edition— 1st edition:
Price—Rs. 35

Printed at R. K PRINTERS, Paona Bazar, Imphal.

P R E F A C E

Manipuri is the most widely used Tibeto-Burman language of India. It has thus a special importance among the languages of India.

Manipuri was noticed in the Linguistic Survey of India. It was then dealt with in the monograph by Pettigrew and also in some text books by the writers including Padma Shri Kelachand Singh and Shri Dwijamani Sharma. But such text books and monographs do not show the basic categories of Genders, Numbers, Cases, Tenses, Tense Forms etc. They do not thus serve as an aid to the Manipuri Morphology, Phonology and Syntax portions of the language remain as the entirely new field. Thus basic features of phonology, morphology and syntax of Manipuri are not yet brought out.

The author worked on the Manipuri Grammar while teaching the students of the Tombisana High School, Imphal during 1954-56 and 1960-62. Some portions of such work were published and prescribed as the text book in the schools and Colleges. The reception they got was also encouraging. The author could work on Manipuri with more comprehension and precision only after taking it up as a full time departmental work in the Manipur College, Imphal during 1983-85. He has before him no model of a complete grammar of any Tibeto-Burman language of India. Thus the present work was done independently without any commitment towards any model or published works on the Tibeto-Burman languages.

Dialectal variations are very few in the language and seen in the outlying districts of the Manipur Valley. The representative standard Manipuri is the form spoken in the Greater Imphal areas and adjoining districts. It is also understood and spoken by the speakers of the different tribal languages in the Hill Districts of Manipur. The written form of

(II)

the standard Manipuri is the Modern Manipuri Literature with two trends viz, the highly literary Manipuri and the puristic Manipuri. Such trends are not important from the view point of literary assessment and evaluation but they merit notice for linguistic analysis. These trends show slight variations. The highly literary Manipuri use a large measure of Sanskrit words and the puristic Manipuri preserves some features of the early Manipuri. Such standard Manipuri in its spoken and written form is analysed and described in the present work with due emphasis on the features used in the formal talks and common correspondences. Dialectal variations have been noted when they were found important.

Aim and Form

The purpose of the present work is to help the Students and language teachers giving the basic features of the language. This practical side primarily governs the pattern of presentation of the materials in this work. Descriptive approach has been adopted in general. Comprehensive examples are given.

Care has been taken to make this book not too theoretical. Thus mathematical formulae are avoided as far as practicable. Simple statements are used in place of abstract and technical enunciations even where such enunciations would have been more appropriate. Simple statements are also used in place of more compact and precise formalisations even where such formalisations would have been more accurate. There are thus limitations and even inaccuracies in some sections imposed by the attempt to make this book not too theoretical. The author is fully aware of such limitations.

The present work should have avoided references to the historical developments and ancient sources. But it is not possible in case of this language which shows different features in the early and medieval Manipuri.

The analysis of the language will show that almost all the features brought out in this book are new and do not

find any place in the published works on the language. But it does not mean that every feature and peculiarity of the language has been brought in. The field is so vast that they can hardly be covered in a work like this. However, it is hoped that the basic grammatical forms and features required for understanding the language have been adequately dealt with.

Subject

The Introductory Chapter is a very short sketch of the the early Manipuri literature and the Modern Manipuri.

The First Chapter deals with Manipuri Phonology. Vowels (both the monophthongs and diphthongs) carry two Tones viz., the High Tone and the Falling Tone. The problems in the modifications of the two Tones of the vowels are pointed out for the first time. Though a complete phonemic analysis is not fully relevant for a book of this size, it is considered necessary in order to make the phonomic studies readily available for the users. A list of the consonant clusters are given at the end of this chapter not only illustrates the voicing, unvoicing etc. of such consonants but also brings out the features of the modification of the two tones of the vowels.

The Second Chapter deals with Morphophonimics. The problems of morphophonimics are not complex compared with those in the New Indo-Aryan languages. Vowels in the loan words of the Indo-Aryan origin undergo morphophonemic changes in conformity with such changes of Manipuri vowels. A separate section on such changes of vowels in the loan words has been incorporated.

The Third Chapter covers Morphology. The declinable classes viz, Nouns, Pronouns and Verbs are treated as usual. The Nouns take the markers of Genders, Numbers and Cases. In case of Genders, the classification is based on a semantic basis not strictly according to the maleness and femaleness but on the division of the nouns into the three classes viz, human, nonhuman and inanimate. The human and non-human nouns are in the three genders viz, masculine, feminine and common. The inanimate nouns are in the neuter gender.

The category of Number is another feature of the nouns. Plural marker occurs with the nouns. Such marker is optional provided it is followed by the numerals. But the emphatic replative plural markers occur even if they are followed by the numerals.

Traditionally accepted case system includes eight cases. The usages and areas of meanings of each case have been shown in detail.

Manipuri pronouns do not show genders. They have different forms in the plural taking the emphatic replative plural

(IV)

marker. The case markers are as in the case of the nouns.

Verbs show three tenses and some tense forms. All the tenses and some tense forms are expressed in the four aspects with the help of the markers of the tenses/tense forms, the aspects and the verbal forms. One of the two groups of Manipuri verbs is the stative verbs or the adjectives. Stative verbs are conjugated for the indefinite and perfect aspects of the tenses and tense forms.

Study of the above three declinable groups forms the main part of the Chapter on Morphology,

Qualifying items as the genitive nouns and pronouns and the infinitives have been treated under QUALIFIERS.

Adverbs and relational words belong to the closed classes. Some primary adverbs are conjugated for the indefinite and perfect aspects of the three tenses. Most of the adverbs are derived from the primary, nominal and pronominal stems by adding to such stems the markers of the instrumental and locative.

Relational words are adverbs. They are monosyllabic forms. They are prefixed, infixed or suffixed to the conjugated verbs in the indefinite and perfect aspects of the three tenses.

Conjunctions are a closed class. Some conjunctions are monosyllabic forms. Most of the conjunctions are derived from the primary, nominal and pronominal stems by adding to such stems case markers and relational words.

The Fourth Chapter deals with SYNTAX. Compound nouns, compound verbs and verbal compounds have been studied, but this is only a limited attempt. Idiomatic uses of nouns and verbs are so large that they cannot be covered in a grammar.

Honorific persons, negation, interrogation and causation of the verbs have been dealt with.

The Chapter on Syntax also shows the main types of sentences—types of simple, complex and compound sentences. Generative possibility in each has been studied. Proceeding from the study of the PHRASES, the study is extended to the CLAUSES and SENTENCES. This will enable the reader to fill in the gaps in the latter parts using the structures shown earlier. Proper pre-references are given as aid.

CONCORD is not an important feature as the verbs and qualifiers do not express gender, number and person and the honorific persons of the verbs is also optional. Thus CONCORD forms the last segment of the Chapter on Syntax. The different types and contents of concord have been examined in detail.

Thanks are due to Mr. Krotchvil, Dr. Y. R. Chao and Shri S. N. Ganesan whose works have been of valuable help in preparing this book.

Shri Ch. Manihar Singh, Senior Fellow, Department of Manipuri Language and Literature, Manipur University and Shri S. P. Bhattacharjee, Head of Department of Geography, Manipur College have kindly given the author valuable help in examining the proofs of the present work. Thanks are due to Shri Singh and Shri Bhattacharjee.

Thanks are due to be given to Shri R.K. Sanayaima Singh, Proprietor, R.K. Book Agency, Paona Bazar, Imphal for making special arrangement for printing of the work.

It is hoped that the work will be of help in undertaking Manipuri and teaching it in a scientific way.

Imphal, }

Nand Lal Sharma

CONTENTS

PREFACE

Abbreviations, Notes and Corrections

Introduction

MANIPURI GRAMMAR 1—406

1 PHONOLOGY 1—123

1.1 PHONEMES

1.1.1.1 Consonants —1

1.1.2 Vowels

1.1.2.1 Simple Vowels (Monophthongs) —2

1.1.2.2 Diphthongs (Complex Vowels) —2

1.1.3 Tones .

1.1.3.1 High and Falling Tones —2

1.2 DESCRIPTION OF PHONEMES

1.2.1 Consonants —2

1.2.2 Vowels

1.2.2.1 Simple Vowels (Monophthongs) —5

1.2.2.2 Diphthongs (Complex Vowels) —6

1.3 DESCRIPTION OF TONES

1.3.1 High Tone —

1.3.1.1 High Tone —7

1.3.1.2 High Tone in Syllables ending with
Unaspirated Voiceless Stops —8

1.3.1.3 Modification of High Tone —8

1.3.1.4 High Tone in Loan Words

1.3.1.4.1 High Tone in Monosyllabic Loan Words. —9

1.3.1.4.2 High Tone in Compound Loan Words —9

1.3.2 Atonic Syllables

1.3.2.1 Atonic Syllables —10

1.3.2.2 Atonic Syllables and High Tone —11

1.3.3 Falling Tone

VII

1.3.3.1 Falling Tone	—11
1.3.3.2 Falling Tone in Syllables ending with Vowels and Nasals	—12
1.3.3.3 Modification of Falling Tone	—12
1.3.3.4 Atonic Syllables and Syllables with Falling Tone	—14
1.3.3.5 Falling Tone in Monosyllabic Loan Words	—14
1.3.3.6 Falling Tone and High Tone in Compound Words	
1.3.3.6.1 Falling Tone followed High Tone	—15
1.3.1.6.2 High Tone followed by Falling Tone	—16
1.3.3.7.1 Opposition between two Tones in Monosyllabic Words	—17
1.3.3.7.2 Opposition between Two Tones in Final Syllables of Compound Words	—18
1.3.3.7.3 Opposition between Two Tones in Initial Syllables of Compound Words	—19
1.3.3.8.0 Influence of Stress on Falling Tone and High Tone	—21
1.4 Consonant Clusters	—22
2 MORPHOPHONEMICS 30—128	
2.1 JUNCTURAL MORPHOPHONEMIC CHANGES	
2.1.1 -o	
2'1.1(1-20) Changes in-o	—30
2.1.2 -i	
2.1.2(1-9) Changes in-i	—32
2.1.3 -u	
2.1.3(1-3) Change in-u	—35
2.1.4 -o	
2.1.4 (1-7) Changes in-o	—36
2.2 INTERNAL MORPHOPHONEMIC CHANGES	
2'2.1 -o	
2.2.1(1-10) Changes in-o	—39
2.2.2 -a	

VIII

2.2.2 (1-11) Changes in-a	- 43
2.2.3 -i	
2.2.3.1 Changes in-i	- 47
2.2.4 -u	
2.2.4.1 Changes in-u	- 53
2.2.5 -e	
2.2.5.1 Changes in-e	- 57
2.2.6 -o	
2.2.6.1 Changes in-o	- 61
2.2.7 -i	
2.2.7.1 Changes in-i	- 65
2.2.8 -u	
2.2.8.1 Changes in-u	- 68
2.2.9 -ai	
2.2.9.1 Changes in -ai	- 71
2.2.10 -ao	
2.2.10.1 Changes in -ao	- 75
2.2.11 -oi	
2.2.11.1 Changes in-oi	- 76
2.2.12 -ui	
2.2.12.1 Changes in-ui	
2.3 INTERNAL MORPHOPHONEMIC CHANGES IN LOAN WORDS	- 80
2.4 MORPHOPHONEMIC CHANGES IN CONSONANTS	
2.4.0 Unaspirated Voiceless Stops	
2.4.1 Unaspirated Voiceless Stops in Syllable Initial Position	- 90
2.4.2 Unaspirated Voiceless Stops in Syllable Final Position	- 95
2.4.3 Aspirated Voiceless Stops	- 100
2.4.4 -c	- 106
2.4.5 -s	- 108
2.4.6 -h	- 109
2.4.7 -l	- 110
2.4.8 -r	- 112

IX

2.4.9	-w	—113
2.4.10	-y	—114
2.4.11	Nasals in Syllable Initial position	—114
2.4.12	Nasals in Syllable Final Position	—116
2.5	MORPHOPHONEMIC CHANGES OF CONSONANTS IN LOAN WORDS	—122
3 MORPHOLOGY 129-240		
3.0	WORDS (Parts of Speeches)	—129
3.1	NOUNS	—129
3.1.1	Gender	—129
3.1.1.1	Male and Female Denoters of Human Nouns	—130
3.1.1.2	Male and Female Denoters of Non-human Nouns	—135
3.1.1.3	Inanimate Nouns in Neuter Gender	—136
3.1.2	Number	—137
3.1.2.1	Nouns in Singular	—137
3.1.2.2	Plural Markers	—137
3.1.2.2.1	Nouns in Plural	—137
3.1.2.2.1.2	Nouns in Emphatic Plural	—141
3.1.2.2.2	Nouns in Epicene Plural	—142
3.1.2.2.2.1	Nouns in Emphatic Epicene Plural	—144
3.1.3	Case	—144
3.1.3.1	Nominative, Agentive	—146
3.1.3.2	Accusative	—149
3.1.3.3	Instrumental, Mediative, Comitative	—150
3.1.4	Locative	—152
3.1.3.5	Genitive (Possessive and Qualificatory)	—152
3.1.3.6	Dative (Possessive, Intensive, Purposeive)	—154
3.2.3.7	Ablative (Separative, Comparative)	—156
3.1.3.8	Vocative	—158
3.1.3.9	Emphatic Case Markers	
3.1.3.9.1	Emphatic Replative Case Markers	—158
3.1.3.9.2	Emphatic Additive Replative Case Markers	—159

X

3.2 PRONOUNS	—165
3.2.1 Personal Pronouns	—165
3.2.1.1 Personal Pronouns in Singular	—165
3.2.1.1.1 Emphatic Forms of Personal Pronouns in Singular	—166
3.2.1.1.2 Honorific Forms of Personal Pronouns in Singular	—167
3.2.1.2 Personal Pronouns in Plural	—167
3.2.1.2.1 Emphatic Plural Forms of Personal Pronouns	—168
3.2.1.2.2 Honorific Plural Forms of Personal Pronouns	—168
3.2.1.8.3 Declension of Personal Pronouns in Plural	—169
3.2.1.2.4 Personal Pronouns in Plural with sing	—169
3.2.1.3 Denotion of Genders	—169
3.2.1.4 Personal Pronouns and their Areas of Meanings	—170
3.2.1.5 Personal Possessive Prefixes	—171
3.2.2 Reflexive Pronouns	—173
3.2.3 Reciprocal Pronouns	—174
3.3.4 Demonstrative Pronouns	—175
3.2.5 Determinative Pronouns	—178
3.2.6 Separative Pronouns	—179
3.2.7 Distributive Pronouns	—180
3.2.8 Interrogative Pronouns	—180
3.2.2 Indefinite Pronouns	—181
3.3 VERBS	—183
3.3.1.1.1 Two Groups of Verbs	—183
3.3.1.1.2 Four Classes of Verbs	—183
3.3.1.1.3 Verbal Base	—184
3.3.1.2.1 Gender, Number and Person of Verbs	—184
3.3.2 Tenses	—185

XI

3.3.2.1.1	Markers of Four Aspects and Form for Verbs in Present and Past Tenses	—185
3.3.2.2.1	Present Tense	—185
3.3.2.2.2	Segmental Similarity of Verbs in two Aspects of Present Tense	—186
3.3.2.3 1	Past Tense	—187
3.3.2.3.2	Markers common to Present and Past Tenses	—188
3.3'2 4	Future Tense	—188
3.2.2.4.1	Markers of Four Aspects and Form for Verbs in Future Tense	—188
3.3.2.4.2	Four Aspects of Future Tense	—189
3.3 2.4.3	Kodo'u, marker of Future Tense in Verbs of Subordinate Clauses	—190
3.3.3	Tense Forms	—190
3.3.3.1	Tense Forms expressed with the help of Markers of Aspects	—190
3.3 3 2	Tense Forms expressed with the help of Auxilliary Verbs	—195
3 3.3.3	Tense Forms expressed with the help of Kodo'u	—197
3.3.3.4	Tense Forms expressed in Adverb Clauses	—200
3 3 é	Stative Verbs in Tenses and Tense Forms	—202
3 3.4:2	Change of Sentences in Active Voice into the Sentences in PassiveVoice	—203
3.4	QUALIFIERS	—203
3 4.1	Verbal Qualifiers	—203
3.4.2	Pronominal Adjective	—209

XII

3.4,3	Numerals	~ 210
3.4.3.1	Cardinal Numerals	—210
3.4.3.2	Ordinal Numerals	—213
3.4.3.3	Multiplicative Numerals	—213
3.4.3.4	Distributive Numerals	—213
3.4.4	Qualificatory Genitive	—213
3.5	ADVERBS	—214
3.5.1	Primary Adverbs	—214
3.5.1.1	Primary Adverbs without any Markers	—214
3.5.1.2	Primary Adverbs taking no forms and Indefinite/Perfect Forms	—215
3.5.1.3	Primary Adverbs used as Emphasisers	—219
3.5.2	Derived Adverbs	—220
3.5.2.1	Derived Adverbs with Instrumental Marker	—220
3.5.2.2	Derived Adverbs with Locative Marker	—222
3.5.3	RELATIONAL WORDS	—224
3.5.3.1	Relational Words suffixed to Nouns and Numerals	—224
3.5.3.2	Relational Words added to Verbs	—225
3.5.3.2.1	Relational Words prefixed to Verbs	—225
3.5.3.2.2	Relational Words infixed to Verbs	—225
3.5.3.2.3	Relational Words suffixed to Verbs	—226
3.5.4	Synonymous Adverbs and Relational Words	—227
3.6	CONJUNCTIONS	—238
3.6.1	Primary Conjunctions	238
3.6.	Derived Conjunctions	—239

XIII

4 SYNTAX 241—381

4.1.1	Nominal Phrase	— 241
4.1.1.1	Noun or Noun Equivalent	— 241
4.1.1.2	Noun Classes	— 241
4.1.1.2.1	Subsyllabic Nouns	— 242
4.1.1.2.2	Monosyllabic Nouns	— 242
4.1.1.2.3	Suffixed Nouns	— 243
4.1.2.2.4	Compound Nouns	— 243
4.1.1.2.4.1	Simple Compound Nouns	— 243
4.1.1.2.4.2	Complex Compound Nouns	— 245
4.1.1.2.5	Verbal Nouns	— 248
4.1.1.3	Coordinated Nouns	— 252
4.1.1.3.1	Coordination of Nouns with out Case Markers	— 252
4.1.1.3.2	Coordination of Nouns with Case Markers	— 252
4.1.1.4	Nouns with Adjuncts	— 253
4.1.2	Verbal Phrase	256
4.1.2.1.1	Subsyllabic Verbs	— 256
4.1.2.1.2	Monosyllabic Verbs	— 257
4.1.2.1.3	Infixd Verbs	— 258
4.1.2.1.4	Compound Verbs	— 259
4.1.2.1.4.1	Simple Compound Verbs	— 259
4.1.2.1.4.2	Complex Compound Verbs	— 260
4.1.2.1.4.3	Verbal Compounds	— 263
4.1.2.4	Persons, Negation and Interrogation of Verbs	— 264
4.1.2.2.1	Verbs in Tenses and Tense Forms expressing Persons, Negation etc.	— 264
4.1.2.2.2	Auxiliary Verbs in Tense Forms expressing Persons, Negation etc.	— 275
4.1.2.2.3	Honorific Persons of Verbs	— 283
4.1.2.2.4	Causation of Verbs	— 285
4.1.2.2.5	Stative Verbs expressing Persons, Negation etc.	— 289

XIV

4.1.2.6.1	Auxiliary Verbs	~ 292
4.1.2.6.2	Emphatic Verbs	—301
4.1.2.6.2	Coordination of Verbs	—311
4.1.2.6.4	Derivatives	—311
4.2	SENTENCE	—320
4.2.1	Simple Sentence	—320
4.2.1.1	Deletion of Subject	—320
4.2.1.2	Adjuncts with N and V	—320
4.2.1.3	Sentences with Complements	—320
4.2.1.3.1	Sentences with Subjective Complements	—321
4.2.1.3.2	Sentences with Direct Objects	—322
4.2.1.3.3	Sentences with Indirect and Direct Objects	—323
4.2.1.3.4	Sentences with Direct Objects and Objective Complements	—323
4.2.1.4	Position of Adverbs in Simple Sentences	—324
4.2.2	Complex Sentence	—325
4.2.2.1	Adjective Clause	—325
4.2.2.2	Relative Clause	—336
4.2.2.3	Adverb Clause	—327
4.2.3	Compound Sentence	—366
4.3	CONCORD	—371
4.3.1	Verb-Noun Concord in Plural	—371
4.3.2	Verb-Personal Pronoun Concord	—371
4.3.3	Presence/Absence of Concord between Verbs of Main and Dependent Clauses	—379
5	LEXIS	—381
5.1	Core Vocabulary	—388
5.2	Phonological forms of Loan Words	—388

XV

5.2.1	Loan Words of NIA Origin	-388
5.2.2	Loan Words of Arabic and Persian Origin	-388
6	GRAPHOLOGY	-389
6.1	Antiquity of Manipuri Script	-388
6.2	Replacement of Manipuri Script by Bengali Script	-392
6.3	Vowels and Consonants in Manipuri Script	-392
6.4	Wak'oklón System	-392

ABBREVIATIONS

EM	—	Early Manipuri
N	—	Noun
V	—	Verb

SIGNS AND SYMBOLS

...	—	Alternate forms
+	—	Added to
>	—	Gives, yeilds or results in
<	—	Got or derived form

CORRECTIONS

Inspite of the utmost care taken, a few mistakes have remained unnoticed. Most of them are self evident or clear from the immediate description or environment. Thus only a selective correction list is given.

'age No.	Line No.	Incorrect	Correct
5	5	stop	nasal
15	28	téngk`o	téngk`ot
131	13	ngú	ngó'u
do	18	from	form
161	13	Plural	Case
169	22	Content	context

O. Introduction

010 Early Manipuri Literature—A Sketch

Manipuri was the vehicle of one of the most developed and advanced literatures of India. Antiquity of early Manipuri literature is not fully established. However, development of Manipuri prose in 600 A.D. is attested by the numismatic evidences.

Most of the early Manipuri texts are in the prose. It shows the development of prose writings at an early period of the Manipuri literature. Some of the early texts are in poetry.

There was a tradition which required that no writers should give their names and other relevant particulars in their works. Such tradition was preserved and protected by the *omaiho l'ois'ong*, the Royal Department in the charge of the State Archive and Ecclesiastical Affairs. The tradition was respected and followed by poets, scholars and writers. Thus most of the early Manipuri texts contain no names and other relevant particulars of the authors. This creates a very difficult problem for dating such texts. However, on the basis of genre, style and content of such texts, some of these texts can be dated.

About 1200 Manipuri manuscript texts have so far been discovered. Most of such texts are noticed in "A Catalogue of the Early Manipuri Manuscript Texts". Such texts belong to the period from 600 AD to 1800 AD. They may broadly be classified into the following heads:—

- a) Literature
- b) History
- c) Polity

XVIII

d) Socio-economic History

e) Cultural History

f) General Literature

Most of the early texts coming under the category of general literature have already been published. Some of such texts are shown below:—

a) Chàinorón

b) Chóthé Thàngmài Pàkh'ongbo

c) Khóngzóm Nùbí Nónggàrón

d) Náothingkhóng Pho'mbán kàbo

e) Númít Kàppa

f) Pánthóibí Kh'onggún

g) Póiro'itón Khúnth'okpo

h) Th'ouwánthàbo Hiràn

English translation of Náothingkhóng Pho'mbán kàbo, the coronation of king Náoth'ingkhóng was published by the Manipur University in 1983.

(II) History

One of the important features of the early Manipuri literature is the development of historical writings at an early date. Such historical writings are in the prose. Some of these texts may be classified into the following groups:—

a) Those on the general History of Manipur

b) Those on the accounts and achievements of the particular kings

c) Those on the clan kingdoms

Ch'óitháron kumbábo is the Royal Chronicle of Manipur. It records the activities, achievements and events of the country. Entries in such chronicle was made in the Manipuri prose and the Manipuri script under the supervision of the omáibo l'ois'ong, the Royal Department in charge of State Archive and Ecclesiastical Affairs.

The Royal Chronicle starts with the coronation of king Nóngdǎ láirén Pàkh'óngbo in 33 A.D. and concludes with the accounts of the reign of king Bodh Chandra (1945-1956). Authenticity of the details in such chronicle is confirmed by the relevant accounts in the two subsidiary chronicles viz., Níngtho'urón Ló'mbùbo and Chàdo Láinúi. Particulars other than those in the Royal Chronicle are recorded in the two subsidiary chronicles. The Royal Chronicle – “Ch'òitháron kumbábo” was published by the Manipuri Sahitya Parishad in 1967. The two subsidiary chronicles had also been published.

The early texts recording the reign and activities of particular Manipuri kings are fairly large in number. Some of such texts shown below:—

- a) Náothingkhong Pho'mbán Kábo, coronation of king Náothingkhong
- b) Tókhén Ngó'mbo, Conquerer of Takhen (Tripura)
- c) Kháhi Ngó'mbo, Conquerer of Khahi (Khasi)
- d) cwà Ng'ombo, Conquerer of Awa (Burma)

The early texts giving the accounts of the clan kingdoms in the Manipur Valley also confirm the authenticity of the details in the Royal Chronicle. Some of the clan chronicles are khùmó'n káng'óirón (the khùmó'n clan chronicle) Móiráng Níngtho'urón Ló'mbùbo (the Moirang clan chronicle), óngómlón (the Aungmye clan chronicle) etc.

(III) Polity

There are also texts dealing with the different aspects of state polity. Some of such texts are L'oiyúmbo sínýén (Royal Edict of king Loiyumbo), pho'mlón (Accounts of the post categories under the Royal Departments), pho'mbánlón (Accounts of the rituals and rules for Royal Coronation) etc.

(IV) Socio-Economic History

There are early Manipuri texts recording different aspects of the socio-economic history of Manipur. Some of such texts are shown below:—

Texts	Subjects
a) Bámón khúnth oklón	migration of the Brahmins
b) Nóngcúp Hár om	migration of the people from the West
c) Nóngp`ok Háro'm	migration of the people from the east
d) Pèndinnobo	marriage rules and practices
e) yùmdábo Pù'á	family genealogy

There are about 350 yumdabo texts on the different families under the seven Manipuri clans

(V) Cultural History

There are also early texts dealing with the different aspects of the cultural history of Manipur. Some of such texts are shown below; -

Texts	Subjects
a) Nóngiábo Láihul Pàkh'ongbo Náoyóm Sàk`ok Lo'mlén Sonàmoh'i Láitú!	early faith and religious practices
b) Nónglón Lángbùm Súbiká Thowànm`icàk Khénzo'nglón	astronomy and astrology
c) Kàngz`oirón	games, sports, physical culture etc
d) Thàngc`ot Thànglón Thénggo'urón	martial arts viz, archery sword fencing etc.
e) Chàinorón	dual between rival warriors
f) Lànggón c`ingg`oirón Nóngmáiz`ing c`ingg`oirón	topography, flora, fauna etc.

0.2.0 Modern Manipuri - A sketch

Modern Manipuri is used as follows:

- a) Mother Tongue of 67 per cent of the population of Manipur
- b) Official Language of Manipur
- c) Language of the Courts in Manipur
- d) Major Indian Language recognised by the Sahitya Akademy of India
- e) Medium of broadcast of the AIR programmes
- f) Medium of Instruction and Examination from Primary to Post-graduate levels

(1) Mother Tongue

Manipuri is the mother tongue of 67 percent of the total population of Manipur. The number of the speakers of Manipuri is over 10,00,000 as per Census Report of India.

Number of the speakers of Manipuri in Assam and Tripura State are 97,000 and 40,000 respectively. There are also the speakers of Manipuri in Nabadwip areas of West Bengal and also in Brindaban and Radhakunda areas of Uttar Pradesh.

There are also speakers of Manipuri in Burma and Bangladesh. The number of the speakers of Manipuri in the two countries are 240,000 and 50,000 respectively.

(2) Official Language

Manipuri had been the official language of Manipur during the period from 600 A.D. to 1890 A.D. It was thus used in such period in the transaction of the following business of the state:—

- a) Inscribing legends on the coins
- b) Making prose entries in the copper plate grants, stone edicts, royal chronicles, records, documents etc.

Some of the formal correspondences of Manipur kings with the British Government of India were written in Manipuri. One of such correspondences is the letter from King Chandra Kirti to the British Government congratulating the latter on

2—Manipuri Grammar

1.1.2 VOWELS

1.1.2.1 Simple vowels (monophthongs)

Manipuri has the following simple vowels (monophthongs):

i	u
e	o
ɔ	
a	

1.1.2.2 Diphthongs (Complex Vowels)

Manipuri has the following diphthongs (complex vowels) t—

ɔi, ai, ui, oi
ao
ou

1.1.3 TONES

1.1.3.1 High and falling tones

Vowels (monophthongs and diphthongs) carry two tones viz., hightone and the falling tone. High tone will be marked ' over the vowels and falling tone will be marked ˘ over the vowels.

1.2 DESCRIPTION OF PHONEMES

1.2 Manipuri phonemes will be illustrated with the help of the monosyllabic and disyllabic words consisting of the vowels (monophthongs and diphthongs) in the high tone. Thus such vowels in these words will be marked with ' (the marker of high tone).

1.2.1 CONSONANTS

1.2.1.1 Consonants

STOPS

/p/ Bilabial, unaspirated, voiceless stop

po'i—spleen ; po'u—pole ; pa'i—a small bag ; pa'o—news ;
pa'r, EM—rifle ; pi'—tear ; pe'—umbrella ; pe'ng—intelligence ;
po'—pawn ; po'n—cage ; pu', EM—pair ; pu'm, Em—needle ;
pu'n—a kind of pitcher.

/ph/ Bilabial, unaspirated, voiceless stop

Pho'i—thigh : pho'u—paddy ; pho'm—post : phai, EM—valley ; pha'n stool ; phi—cloth.

/b/ Bilabial, unaspirated, voiced stop

ba'gi'—a kind of disease ; bo'ro'i—plum : ha'iba'r - a kind of ear ring ; lai'ba'r, EM—ambassador ; he'mbo, EM—hillman ; mo'ngbo, EM—home ; to'nbo, EM—man.

/bh/ Bilabial, aspirated, voiced stop

bha'b—idea ; bha'a'—fare ; bhu'ga'ti' typhoid fever ; bha'lo'—bravo , ph'bh'o'm—condition.

/t/ Denti—alveolar, unaspirated, voiceless stop

to'm—valley ; ta'—spar ; ta'u, EM—an ornament ; ta'ng—limb ; te'm—a weaving implement ; te'n—bow ; tu'—fur ; tu'm—pin ; to'ng—flesh.

/th/ Denti-alveolar, aspirated voiceless stop

tho'u—duty ; tha'—month, moon : tha'o oil : tha'n EM—coffin ; the'n, EM—plateau ; thum—salt.

/d/ Denti—alveolar, unaspirated voiced stop

da'na'—cooked food for cattle ; da'ri'—varandah ; du'ho'n—a person in charge of water supply for a religious function ; do'na'—a water vessel ; tho'uda'—duty ; tho'udu', EM—marble.

/dh/ Denti—alveolar, aspirated voiced stop

dha'tu'—a kind of disease ; dho'ri'—string used in playing top ; dhu'me'n, EM—a performance by the drummers ; la'idhi'—doll ; ta'dho'n—elder brother,

/k/ Velar, unaspirated, voiceless stop

ka' room ; ka'i, EM—coffin : ki'n—fist ; ko'i—beard ; ko'm—pit ; ku'm—year ; ku'n—twenty : k'ong, EM—dry land.

/kh/ Velar aspirated, voiceless stop

kho'u—throat ; kha'o—bag , kha'ng—pan ; khe'—a kind of dye : khe'n, EM—time ; kho'm—udder ; kho'n—voice ; khu'n—village ; khu'ng—top ; khwa, EM—monkey.

4—Manipuri Grammar

/g/ Velar, unaspirated, voiced stop

gi'ho'm—pine apple ; ge'ho'ri'—a kind of fruit ; gu'nza'—front tug of dhoti ; gu'ru'ng—upturn of cart ; gu'mbhi'r—crocodile.

/gb/ Velar, aspirated, voiced stop

ghu'mti'—a canopy on the bullock cart ; ghu'ti'—a kind of kite ; gho'r—enthusiasm ; mosi'nggha'—bite ; si'nggha'ro'i—a kind of flower ; zi'nggho'—corrugated iron sheet.

AFFRICATE

/c/ Palato—alveolar, unaspirated, voiceless affricate

Ca'i, Em—summon ; ca'ng—quantity ; ca'r, EM—door ; ci'—a kind of disease ; co'm—cork ; cu'—sugarcane ; cu'm—lizard.

FRICATIVES

/s/ Alveolar, unaspirated, voiceless fricative

so'u—obstacle ; so'n—bull, cow ; sa'i—cave ; sa'n, EM—body ; si'—even number ; si'n—profession ; se'n—money ; so'—key.

/z/ Alveolar, aspirated, voiced fricative

zo'ng—rust ; za'm—black berry ; zo'i—victory ; zi'nggho'—corrugated iron sheet ; zu'ri—drainage ; zu'wa'n—yoke

/zh/ Alveolar, aspirated, voiced fricative, occurs with the loan words.

zha'n—a kind of cymbal ; zhu'lo'n—a Hindu festival.

/h/ Glottal, voiceless fricative

ho'n—maggot ; ho'ng—machine ; ha'—yam ; ha'r—maure ; hi'—boat ; hu'ng—hand cuff ; ho, EM—blood ; ho'p—ani-seed.

NASALS

/m/ Bilabial, unaspirated, voiced nasal

mo'u—married woman ; mar, EM—foot print ; mi'ng—name ;

me'n,EM -capital ; mo'n-pillow ; cu'm-lizard ; ku'm-year ;
tu'm-pin ; thu'm-salt

/n/ Alveolar, unaspirated voiced stop

na'ear ; na'i-pus : na'o,EM - canoe ; no'ng-rain ; ho'n-
maggot ; kho'n-a weighing implement ; lo'n-wealth ; so'n-bull,
cow.

/ng/ Velar, unaspirated, voiced nasal

ngc'i-neck : ngo'u-palate ; nga'i-relatives ; ca'ng-quantity ;
kha'ng-bell ; la'ng-net ; pa'ng-sheet of paper ; ta'ng-limb,

Lateral

/l/ Alveolar, unaspirated voiced lateral

lo'i-flower, tongue ; lo'n-wealth ; lo'ng-yarn ; la'i-god ; la'n-
battle ; la'ng net ; li'n snake ; le'n hail ; lu'm-pendulum,

Flap

/r/ Post alveolar, unaspirated, voiced flap

ra'si' beauty ; ru'i a kind of shawl ; ca'r,EM-door ; ha'r-
mannure ; mar,EM - foot print ; pa'r,EM -rifle ; ci'na'r-melon ;
ha'iba'r-a kind of ear ring ; la'iba'r,EM -ambassador ; no'ng-
da'r-mica,

SEMI VOWELS

/w/ Bilabial, unaspirated, voiced semi-vowel

wa'ng-a kind of tree ; wa'ngdo'i,EM - granery ; wa'ngle'n,
EM-curry ; owa'ng-north ; howai-pulse ; ke'wa'-a kind of tree ;
lo'wa'i-forehead ; tho'wa'n-name of a Manipuri month,

/y/ Palatal, unaspirated, voiced semi-vowel

ya'-tooth ; ya'i,EM -fire ; ya'o-sheep ; yu'-wine ; yu'ng-
urine ; ye'n-cock, hen ; yo'ng-monkey ; mo'ya'm-many ; mo-
ya'n mixture ; mo'ye'ng-quantity.

1.2.2 VOWELS

1.2.2.1 Simple vowels (monophthongs)

/i/ High, front, unrounded vowel

ci'-a kind of disease ; hi' boat ; pi'-tear ; phi'-cloth ; si'-
even number ; ki'n-fist ; li'n-snake ; si'n-profession.

6—Manipuri Grammar

/e/ Mid, front, unrounded vowel

khe'-a kind of dye ; pe'-a kind of umbrella ; khe'n,EM-time ; le'n-ha'il ; men,EM-capital ; se'n-money ; then,EM-plateau ; le'ng-shoulder ; pe'ng-intelligence.

/a/ Low, central, unrounded vowel

ha'-yam ; ka'-room ; na'-ear ; pa'-eye lash ; ta' spear ; tha'-moon, month ; ya'-tooth ; ca'ng-quantity ; kha'ng-bell ; la'ng-net ; pa'ng sheet of paper ; ta'ng limb.

/ɔ/ Mid; central, unrounded vowel

ho'n-maggot ; kho'n-weighing implement ; lo'n wealth ; po'n bund ; so'n-bull, cow ; ko'm cornice ; lo'm-area ; no'm back ; pho'm-post ; to'm-valley.

/o/ Mid, back, rounded vowel

co'm-cork ; ko'm pit ; kho'm-udder ; kho'n-voice ; mo'n-pillow ; po'n-cage ; yo'n,EM-beauty ; ko'ng,EM-dry land ; no'ng-rain ; to'ng flesh ; yo'ng-monkey.

/u/ high, back, rounded vowel

cu'-sugarcane ; pu',EM-pair ; tu'-fur ; u'-tree ; yu'-wine ; cu'm-lizard ; ku'm-year ; pu'm,EM-needle ; tu'm-pin ; thu'm-salt ; hu'ng-handcuff ; khu'ng-top.

1.2.2.2 DIPHTHONGS (Complex Vowels)

The six diphthongs are not combinations of individual simple vowels. They are complex vowels. They have slightly greater duration than the simple vowels (monophthong). But they are much shorter than the combination of the duration of their components occurring as simple vowels.—*i* forms the final component of the four diphthongs viz., *ɔi*,—*ai*,—*oi*, and *ui*. The two diphthongs viz.,—*ao* and —*ou* take —*o* and —*u* respectively as the final components. The six diphthongs are illustrated below ;—

/ɔi/

lo'i-flower ; ngo'i-neck ; po'i-spleen ; pho'i-thigh ; so'i,EM-song ; to'i-a kind of pan.

/ai/

ka'i, EM-summôn ; ka'i, EM-coffin ; la'i-god ; na'i-pus ;
nga'i-relatives ; pa'i-a-small bag ; pha'i,EM -valley ; sa'i-cave ;
ya'i,EM -fire.

/oi/

ko'i-beard ; kho'i-bee ; lo'i-conquered people ; soi'-filly ;
yo'i,EM -beauty,

/ui/

hu'i-rivet, whistle ; u'i-a kind of bamboo ; cohui-a kind of
tree ; la'ihu'i,EM -origin ; pu'idi'ng,EM -thatch.

/ao/

kha'o-bag ; na'o,EM canoe ; pa'o-news ; ta'o-a kind of
worm ; tha'o-oil ; ya'o-sheep.

/ɔu/

kho'u-throat ; mo'u-married woman ; ngo'u-palate ; po'u-
pole ; pho'u-paddy ; so'u-obstacle ; tho'u duty.

1.3 TONES

1.3.1 HIGH TONE

1.3.1.1 High tone

High tones occurs with the vowels in the monosyllabic and disyllabic words used in illustrating the thirty six Manipuri phone-mes. Basic features of such tone are described by Kratochvil. He says, "The high tone-- has an almost level contour of pitch which is positioned in the upper third of the natural pitch range of the speaker's voice ; the loudness of the respective vowel sound remains the same throughout the whole vowel, and the direction of the syllables with this tones is slightly above average". (Kratochvil, P, 1968, Chinese Language Today, p. 37). Such features of the vowels with the high tone may be seen from the following pairs of segmentally identical monosyllabic words :—

3—Manipuri Grammar

ku'm, EM-year	ku'm—a kind of dye
kha'ng-bell	kha'ng-pan
lō'i-flower	lō'i-tongue
le'n,EM –superior	le'n-hail
no'ng, EM-day	no'ng-rain
phō'm-post	phō'm-be3
sa'i-eave	sa'i-side lock of the girls
thou', EM-marble	thō'u-duty
tha'-moon	tha'-month
tha'n, EM-coffin	tha'n-coil of cloth

1.3.1.2 *High tone in the monosyllabic words ending with the unaspirated voiceless stops*

High tone occurs with the vowels in a few monosyllabic words ending with the unaspirated voiceless stops,

co'p—a kind of indoor game ; ku't,EM -name of a post ;
tha'k-stair.

1.3.1.3 *Modification of high tone*

If a syllable with high tone is followed by another syllable with the same tone, such tone of the first syllable is rising in the pitch contour retaining the loudness of the same tone.

lō'ihā'o-champaka flower	lō'ite'ng-ornament
lō'ika'-flower petal	lō'iko'n-garden
lō'ipu'n-tie of love	lō'iphō'm-residence
laibar,EM –ambassador	lai'za'o-small pox
la'iba'o-gospel	la'iphō'm-shrine
la'imō'n-chronic disease	la'ito'ng—a basket
la'ina'-disease	la'ire'n-python
na'co'n-centipede	na'co'm-nosegay
na'kho'i-settlement	na'khu'm-cap
na'pu'-yellow	na'po'm-slop of a hill
na'so'n-hint	na'yi'n-ear ring
na'tō'ng-a plant	na'toi'-proof
u'ho'n-a medicinal herb	u'ha'm-ordinary wood
u'ko'n-clump	u'khu'n-hole
u'lu'm-pendulum	u'ru'm-umbrage

u'mo'ng-forest
u'pu'-box
u'ra'ng-trunk
u'ro'ng-pipe

u'mu'-a kind of bamboo
u'sa'-bough
u'yi'n-a good quality timber
u'ro'ng-symbol

1.3.1.4 HIGH TONE IN LOAN WORDS

1.3.1.4.1 *High tone in monosyllabic loan words*

High tone accommodates the short and long values of the vowels in the NiA languages. Thus it occurs with the monosyllabic loan words from the NiA languages ending with the vowels and nasals. Such feature of the high tone may be seen from the following pairs of the segmentally identical native and loan words :—

native words

ko'n-premises
kho'n-voice
lo'i-conquered people
lo'r-generation
mo'n-pillow
pa'i-a small bag
po'n-cage
sa'n,EM-body
so'i-filly
ta'n,EM-an ornament

loan words

ko'n-machine
kho'n-a kind of drum
lo'i-rhythm
lo'n-loan
mo'n-mund
pa'i-a coin
bo'n-forest
sa'n-shawl
so'i-signature
ta'n-rhyme

High tone also occurs with a few monosyllabic loan words ending with the unaspirated voiceless stops :

da'k-stigma ; pha'k-difference ; ho'p-anisced ; ka'p-boot
polish ; na'p-measurement.

1.3.1.4.2 *High tone in compound loan words*

High tone occurs with the overwhelming majority of the compound loan words consisting of two syllables ending with the vowels and nasals. Modifications of the high tone in the first syllables of such words are same as those of the same tone shown in para 1.3.1.3 above. These features of high tone may be seen from the following pairs of the native and loan words :—

native words

ba'gi'-a kind of disease
ca'ga'-income
ca'na',EM-grass
dha'tu'-a kind of disease
khu'di'-obstacle
la'lu',EM-head
li'la',EM-snake
mu'ni'-a kind of worm
pa'la'-singer of samkristana

loan words

ba'ki'-loan
ca'ka'-wheel
ca'na-gram
dha'tu'-metal
khu'ti' post
la'lu'-kind of sweet meat
li'la-piay
mu'ni'-hermit
pa'ra'-lesson

1. 3. 2 ATONIC SYLLABLES

1.3.2.1 Atonic syllables

Atonic syllables do not carry high and falling tones. They are thus tonally neutral. Atonic syllables end with $-ə$. Such $-ə$ will not be marked with any diacritical symbol. It is very short. Its loudness is very slight and its pitch contour and distribution of loudness are unpronounced with a uniformly falling tendency. Atonic syllables function as formative affixes. $-ə$ itself functions as formative affix without carrying the two tones. Some atonic syllables are shown below :—

- $ə$ —(a) primary prefix
- (b) secondary prefix
- $əə$ —(a) marker of honorific first person
- (b) primary prefix
- (c) primary infix
- $lə$ —(a) marker of perfect aspect of the present and past tenses
- (b) primary infix
- $mə$ —(a) primary prefix
- (b) secondary prefix
- $nə$ —(a) marker of nominative
- (b) marker of instrumental
- (c) secondary suffix
- (d) primary suffix
- (e) primary infix

- pɔ*—(a) marker of masculine gender
 (b) marker of infinitive
tɔ—(a) marker of locative
 (b) expresses the sense 'only'
 (c) marker of negative for present and past tenses
 (d) primary prefix

1.3.2.2 Atonic syllables and syllables with high tone

Occurrence of the atonic syllables viz, *mɔ* and *tɔ* with the syllables with the high tone in the compound words is shown below :—

(a) *mɔ*, secondary prefix

<i>məkha'</i> —south	<i>məkha'</i> —downwards
<i>məna'</i> —ear	<i>məna'</i> handle of the bucket
<i>məpa'n</i> —flower	<i>məpa'n</i> —exterior
<i>məro'i</i> —argument	<i>məro'i</i> —machine
<i>məru'</i> —root	<i>məru'</i> head
<i>məsa'</i> —bough	<i>məsa'</i> —wing of the bird
<i>məto'n</i> —top	<i>məto'n</i> —father's younger brother

(b) *tɔ*—locative

<i>ko'ndɔ</i> —to the machine	<i>ko'ntɔ</i> —only the machine
<i>kho'ndɔ</i> —to the voice	<i>kho'ntɔ</i> —only the voice
<i>lo'ndɔ</i> —to the conquered people	<i>lo'ntɔ</i> —only the conquered people

1.3.3 FALLING TONE

1.3.3.1 Falling tone

Falling tone occurs with the vowels in the overwhelming majority of the syllables ending with the unaspirated voiceless stops. Basic features of such tone are described by Kratochvil. He says: 'The falling tone (marked ` as in *ba*, 'a harrow') has a falling pitch contour starting almost at the top limit of the range and reaching its lower third at the end; the loudness falls sharply towards the end of the vowel, and the duration is far below average' (Kratochvil 1968). Such features of the vowels with the falling tone may be seen from the following pairs of the segmentally identical monosyllabic words :—

12—Manipuri Grammar

cu`p-spigot	cu`p-mode of sinking
li`k-necklace	li`k-bead
lo`k-gorge	lo`k-cough
no`p-nasal mucus	no`p-mode of being sticky
na`t-custom	na`t-a weaving implement
po`k-grey hair	po`k-sound of breaking an object
pu`k-belly	pu`k-mind
tho`k-a kind of worm	tko`k-directly
thi`k,EM-breast	thi`k-fittering
yo`t-iron	yo`t-spade

1.3.3.2 *Falling tone in monosyllabic words ending with vowels and nasals*

Falling tone also occurs with the vowels in some syllables ending with such vowels and nasals. Occurrence of this tone with these vowels may be seen from the following pairs of the monosyllabic words :-

ca`-lac	ca`-a kind of skin disease
i`,EM-water	i`-blood
ka`o-bull	ka`o-a fishing trap
ma`,EM-mother	ma`-bug
mo`-a kind of flea	mo`-cry of the cow
pu`ng,EM-country	pu`ng,EM-place
pu`ng-drum	pu`ng-hour
phu`,EM-pitcher	phu`-mode of blowing
wa`-bamboo,	wa`-word
wa`i,EM-place	wa`i,EM-span

1.3.3.3 *Modification of Falling Tones*

If a syllable with falling tone is followed by another syllable with the same tone, such tone of the first syllable starts slightly lower and drops to only about the middle of the pitch range. Such features of falling tone may be seen from the following pairs of compound words :-

càkthàk-maintenance
 cùpkhàk-the leftovers of a dish
 hàkto`k-reign
 ko`kyèt-turban
 ko`kset-headgear of woman
 khùtkàp-shot
 lo`kcò`p-ravine
 nàkpàk-side
 pho`kcèt-a plant
 pho`kto`p-a kind of mat

po`tho`k-product

pàtxo`k-comprehensive
 sùplàk-multiplication table

yo`tpàk-spade

The first syllables of the compound words may end with the vowels,

cò`iràk-strictness

cò`itò`p-affix
 ho`iko`k-water chestnut
 hi`dàk-medicine
 i`no`t-tide
 i`phùt-spring
 i`tho`k-wave
 khùbàk-palm
 khùdò`k-instantly
 khùzo`k-handful
 mò`icàk-pain
 mì`kò`p-wink
 mì`hùt-representative
 mì`re`p-candidate for election
 phùrì`t-shirt
 wàcò`p-split
 wàrè`p-decision

càkso`ng-kitchen
 cùpli`-rein
 hàkthi`-sneezing
 ko`kno`m-fillet
 ko`kthón, EM-hat
 khùtrùm-fist
 lo`ksà-rill
 nàkci`-corner
 pho`kto`m-screen
 pho`klo`p-with a little
 unpleasant taste
 po`tsèm-bewitched ob-
 ject
 pàkno`m-a kind of dish
 sùpnò`m-violent im-
 position
 yo`tpi-nail.

cò`iràp, EM-highest court
 of justice
 cò`itùp-club
 ho`itùp-apple
 hi`go`k-blue
 i`pàk-vast sheet of water
 i`so`t-drainage
 i`tho`t-island
 khùdò`p-ring
 khùdùp-cubit
 khùzùp-an ornament
 mòikhet-match
 mì`kùp-moment
 mì`to`p stranger
 mì`thit-a select group
 phùrùp, EM-group
 wàcè`t-split bamboo
 wàso`k-oath

14 – Manipuri Grammar

1.3.3.4 Atonic syllables and syllables with falling tone –

Syllables with falling tone may be preceded or followed by the atonic syllables in the compound words. Occurance of such syllables with the two atonic syllables viz., *mə* and *tə* is shown below : –

(a) *mə*-primary/secondary prefix

<i>məcà</i> -offspring	<i>məcà</i> mode of eating
<i>məkhà</i> -mouth	<i>məkhà</i> deg ee of bitterness
<i>mənà</i> -prize	<i>mənà</i> -leaf
<i>məpàn</i> -plant	<i>məpàn</i> vicinity
<i>məro`i</i> -tongue	<i>məro`i</i> -mode of buying
<i>məri`</i> -relative	<i>məri`</i> -link
<i>məthi`</i> -dung	<i>məthi`</i> -residue

(b) *tə* locative

tə-only

<i>li`ktə</i> -to the necklace	<i>li`ktə</i> -only the necklace
<i>pùktə</i> -in the belly	<i>pùktə</i> -only the belly
<i>yo`tə</i> -to the iron	<i>yo`tə</i> -only the iron

1.3.3.5 Falling tone in monosyllabic loan words

Falling tone occurs with the vowels in some monosyllabic loan words from NIA languages ending with the unaspirated voiceless stops. Such feature of the falling tone may be seen from the following pairs of the native and loan words :

native words

loan words

<i>cə`k</i> -mode of piercing with a sharp weapon	<i>cə`k</i> ,EM-age
<i>lák</i> -mode of being loose	<i>lák</i> -lakh
<i>li`k</i> -necklace	<i>li`k</i> -furrow
<i>phùt</i> -mode of extinguishing fire	<i>phùt</i> -a measure of twelve inches
<i>tèk</i> -mode of philliping	<i>tèk</i> -a kind of utensil
<i>tho`k</i> -mode of waving	<i>tho`k</i> -deceit
<i>ko`t</i> -barn	<i>gho`t</i> -a pitcher used in religious rite
<i>po`t</i> -thing	<i>bho`t</i> -vote

phùt-mode of extinguishing fire	bhùt-ghost
so't-instantly	sàt-roof
sùt-mode of sobbing	zhùt-falsehood
tùp-sound of an object falling on the ground	dhùp-incense
tho`p-brain	dho`p-a kind of samkritana

Falling tone also occurs with the vowels in a few monosyllabic loan words ending with vowels and nasals,
 ghi`-clarified butter h`ing-asafetida

1.3.3.6 FALLING AND HIGH TONES IN THE COMPOUND WORDS.

1.3.3.6. *Falling tone followed by high tones*

Falling tone is modified in the compound words when it is followed by the high tone. Such modification is the same as the modification of the falling tone followed by the same tone. This modification of the falling tone may be seen from the following pairs of compound words :

càkkhāo-stomach	càkkhāi-kitchen
caklén-dinner	càklóng-an annual ceremonial feast offered to the clan numen
càk:hén-fasting	cakthu'ng-share
cèk:ko'n-brick field	cèkphāi-a technique of Kang play
cèklá,EM-bird	cèkyā-aside
ko'kcóng-ant	ko'ksu'-a small baby
khùtlái-weapon	khùtpu'-an organised group
khùt:sá hand	khùtsói-dependence on others for livelihood
li'klu'-a kind of necklace	li'kkón-cowry
mi'tlu'-corner of the eye	mi'tyéng-view
mi'tsáng-discharge from the eye	mi'tsén-sleepless vigil
mùkkhi-a kind of arum	mùkmu',EM-cow

16 -- Manipuri Grammar

mùkláng-a kind of fish
 po'tpá pair
 po'tlén-a bundle of thatch
 pho'kláng-wall
 pho'kpái-a small plant

mò'ksa'n-hybrid
 po'tpho'm-stail
 po'tlói-costume of Rasa dance
 pho'klóng-a curtain of netted
 bamboo strips
 pho'ksáng-a long of mat

1.3.3.6.2 High tone followed by falling tone

High tone is modified in the compound words when it is followed by the falling tone. Such modification is the same as the modification of the high tone followed the same by tone. This modification of high tone may be seen from the following pairs of the compound words :

ho'ngci't-day after tommorrow
 kángcèt-beetle
 kánggo't-tax
 kángdru'k-a kind of bird
 khónco'p-obsene word
 láibo'k-fate
 láicàk-a skin disease
 láiri'k-book
 mónpàk-mattress
 nóngcùp-west
 pho'ibàk-thigh

phi'du'p-a posture
 phinàt-sandal
 phiràk-liver
 pómì'-plaa
 so'nùp-herd of cattle

téngko'-bowl
 úbàk-wood plank
 u'cèk-bird
 u'ri't-tailor bird
 u'rùk-tray

ho'ngko'k-a reptile
 kángcùp smoking pipe
 kángtho'k-a raised floor
 kángpo't-sledge
 khóntho'k voice
 láipo'k-a genius
 láikùp-chicken pox
 láirùk-a dish offered to god
 móntèk-a kind of pillow
 nongpo'k-east
 pho'izùp-a shawl used in sleeping
 phirùk-a kind of basket
 phizèt-dress
 phirep-stand on a matter
 póthàp rule
 so'npò't-a pair of
 bullocks
 téngpàk-clod
 útùp-lóg
 u'cùp-peg
 u'ri'k-a kind of necklace
 n'ro'k egret

High tone may be followed by the falling tone in loan words. In such case, final syllables of these words end with un-aspirated voiceless stops.

(a) k - ko'ntrūk sulphur ; móro'k-chilly ; sábo'k-disciple;
soro'k-road ; tári'k-date

(b) p - cúrip-cigarette ; dhúlo'p a kind of drum ; mándo'p-
an open hall near the temple ; zo'ro'p a ladder with holes :

(c) t - ispàt-steel ; po'ndit-scholar ; púrit'-priest ; sóràt-
sradha ceremony : tézhàt-bay-leaf.

1. 3. 3. 7 OPPOSITION BETWEEN FALLING TONE AND HIGH TONE

1. 3. 3. 7. 1 *Opposition between the two tones in the monosyllabic words*

There is opposition between the falling tone and high tone in the monosyllabic words. In such case these monosyllabic words end with vowels and nasals. They are also segmentally identical.

falling tone

cà-lac
hùi-dog
i'-blood
ko'i-store
kho'i naval
lòu paddy land
là-plantain leaf
lù-a fishing trap
mài-face
mi'-person
sà animal
so'i-a weir for fishing
tù-lo

high tone

cá,LW- tea
húi-rivet, whistle
ì-thatch
kó'i-tiger
khoi bee
lò'u-a technique of wrestling
lá-a large round flat basket
lú EM-head
mái-no
mi-spider, shadow
sá a measure
sói-filly
tú-fur

18 – Manipuri Grammar

falling tone

cùm-key
kàng-mosquito
ko'n-utensil
kho'ng leg
lo'n-language
lo'ng-a long handled weapon
po'ng-raft
so'm-hair
si'ng-fuel
tàn,EM-time
ti'n-worm
tho'ng-door

high tone

cùm-lizard
kàng-chariot, a game
kón-premises
khóng-canal
lón-generation
lóng-a fishing trap
póng,EM-person
so'm-a kind of basket
sing-ginger
tán-chance
tin-spittle
thóng bridge

1.3.3.7.2 *Opposition between the two tones in the final syllables of the compound words*

There is opposition between the falling tone and high tone in the final syllables of some disyllabic compound words. In such case, these words are segmentally identical. *mə*, the atonic syllable forms the initial component of these words. The final syllables of such words end with vowels and nasals,

falling tone

mocà-a small one
moci-horn
moho'i-fruit
makhà-mouth
monà-prize
mopi-mother animal
mori-link
morù-seed
mosà-body
mothi-residue
moyai-middle
mono'm-back
mopan-plant

high tone

mocá-details of a subject matter
moci-essence
moho'i-education
makhá-south
moná-ear
mopí-tear
mori-four
morú-root
mosá branch
mothi mode of selection
mo'yai-impact
mono'm-smell
mopan-exterior

falling tone

mərùm-egg
mərò'n-speech
mòsi ng number
mòto'n-bud

high tone

mərúm-hump
mərón-layer
mòsing-fibre
mòtón-top

There is also opposition between the falling tone and high tone in the final syllables of some disyllabic compound words and both the syllables of these words end with vowels and nasals.

falling tone

ìkù-my father in-law
kà:nì'-will get scorched
lò'uwài-rural area
sàrò'i-a kind of smoking pipe
sákhi'-was built
úkù-bark
ì'tò'n-dysentery
kò'nthì'-spirit

kúm'mò'i-end of the year

lò'irò'ng-fire place
nóngmò'i-rifle
thángzi'-chop
thénggù-mallet

high tone

íkù'-hay-rick
ká:nì,LW-opium
lò'uwài-forehead
sàrò'i-epilepsy
sákhi,LW-witness
úkù-culvert
ì'tón-tip of thatch
kò'nthì,EM-necklace made of
tulasi plant
kúm'mò'i-entertainment with song,
dance etc,
lò'irò'ng-earth wall
nóngmò'i-next year
thángzi-a good quality timber
thénggù-tortoise

1.3.3.7.3 Opposition between the two tones in the initial syllables of the compound words

There is opposition between the falling tone and high tone in the initial syllables of some disyllabic compound words. In such case, these words are segmentally identical and both the syllables of these words end with vowels and nasals.

falling tone

bèrá'-objection
bò'íá-gunny bag

high tone

bèrá LW-a kind of sweet meat
bò'á,LW-a kind of fried food

20 -Manipuri Grammar

falling tone

cùbá-both sides of the face
 hórái-saw
 ì'ká-my affairs
 i'kù-my father in-law
 ló'iháo-soil
 nùrà,EM-woman
 ùso'i-young bamboo plant
 i'tón-dysentery
 kò'nzín-tap
 kò'rphán-a kind of utensil
 kho'ngbán-supporter
 khùdóng-smoking
 khùdón-presents
 ló'mzáo-road
 tho'ngzáo-front door

high tone

cúbá-squeezed sugarcane
 hórāi-a kind of tray
 iká blade of thatch
 ikú-hay rick
 ló'iháo champaka flower
 nùrá-duster for plastering
 úsoi-a good quality timber
 itón-tip of the thatch
 kónzin-corner
 kórphán-a round stool
 khó'ngbán-ditch
 khúdong-opportunity
 khúdon-tip toe
 ló'mzao-meadow
 thó'ngzáo-big bridge

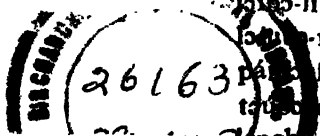
There is also opposition between the falling tone and high tone in the initial syllables of the verbal forms when these syllables are represented by the segmentally identical and semantically different monosyllabic roots of the verbs, carrying one of the two tones. Such opposition may be seen from the following infinitive forms of the verbs viz., compounds of the monosyllabic verb roots and pò' atonic syllable (marker of infinitive) :—

falling tone

pùbò-borrow
 tàbò-hear
 thàbò-send
 thi'bò-count
 hò'ubò-grow
 hàibò-say
 ló'ibò-buy
 ló'ubò-take
 pàibò-handle
 tò'ubò-dig

high tone

púbò-bring
 tábò-fall
 thábò-plant
 thi'bò-search
 hò'ubò-begin
 hàibò-wave
 ló'ubò-live
 ló'ubò-roast
 pàibò-fly
 tò'ubò-do



falling tone

lò'nbò-shut
nò'mbò-press
pàngbò-progress
phànbò-drink (honorific)
sì'nbò-manage
thàngbò-shift
yànbò-cut

high tone

lónbò-boil
nó'mbò-smell
pángbò-help
phánbò-shave
sínbò-copy
thángbò-carry
yánbò-mix

1. 3. 3. 8 *Influence of stress of falling tone and high tone*

Falling tone and high tone are the conditions of stress and not vice versa. They may thus co-occur with the stress in the compound words. Atonic syllables do not create condition of stress and thus do not carry the onset of the stress.

Stress causes some modifications of the vowels and consonants of the syllables with the two tones. In the stressed syllables with the falling tone, vowels are shorter and louder in the beginning and become less towards the end and the pitch of such vowel starts higher and ends lower. In the stressed syllables with high tone, vowels are also shorter and louder and their pitch is slightly falling. In the final stressed syllables of the disyllabic compound words, the five consonants of such syllables viz. -k, -p, -t, -c and -l remain when such consonants other than -l are preceded by the vowels and nasals and -l is preceded by the vowels.

(a) *falling tone*

k—hò'iko'k-water chest nut ; màiko'i-direction ; m'ko'p-wink ;
mì'kùp-moment.

p—cèngpàk-flattened rice ; kbo'ngpàk-foot ; lo'ipùng-mound ;
nàpi'-grass.

t—cò'itò'p-affix ; hò'itùp-apple ; m'itò'p-stranger ; songtò'p-
portico ; thàngtùp-date palm ; yàngtèk-ridge.

c—khàngcèt-dhoti ; kbo'ngcò't-journey ; lo'mcò't-character ;
sì'ngcèp-wedge ; waco'p-obscene word.

22—Manipuri Grammar

l—kàlò'i-country liquor ; so'la-gunny bag.

(b) *high tone*

k—hákúm-last year ; ikú-hay-rick ; loikón-garden ; yáká-response ; yákú,EM-a shawl used in sleeping.

p—hápú-weed ; nápú-yellow ; nápóm-slope of a hill ; úpú-box.

t—lò'itèng-ornament ; láitò'ng-a kind of basket ; nátsi-proof ; náitóm-alone ; páitú-a small bag.

c—káci-hook ; kúcú,EM-court ; náco'n-centipede ; nácom-nosegay ; sácá frame ; yáco'n-rein.

l—cóláng-an edible herb ; kálén-summer ; lolá-ass ; málo'u,EM-a shawl used in sleeping ; pólói-end : poláng basket ; sólóm-a kind of fruit.

1.4 Consonant Clusters

1.4.1 Consonant Clusters

Manipuri has an abundance of consonant clusters. Such clusters occur at the morphemic junctures.

The following is a list of consonant clusters.

1.4.1.1 Two consonant clusters

k+c

kk—omùkko'-once ; cékkón-brick field ; o'kkón-sty.

k kh—kho'kkho'i,EM-handle ; o'kkhi'-dandruff ; uro'kkho'ng-stilt.

kt—khùdò'kto—at once ; pàktù,EM-head load ; mùktábi'-fountain pen ; pho'kto'm-screen.

kth—càkthùng-share ; ko'kthōng-head load ; ko'kthón,EM cap

kp—cò'kpo'n-brick wall ; sèkpi'-bat ; thi'kpi',EM-fire place.

kph — kàkpho'i-leech ; ko'kphái-mould ; mùkphú-inkpot.

kc — ho'kcéng, EM-body ; ko'kcéng-ant ; pùkcén-mind.

ks — o'ko'ksà — a person possessed by the evil spirit ; caksò'ng kit-chen ; ngo'ksò'm-neck.

k:h — o'muk:honno-once again ; cāk:hén-fasting ; ko'k:h:ò'n láih-ò'n-eldest son.

kl — o'klá-perch ; cāk'lén-dinner ; thi'klén, EM-breast.

kr — ko'ikrò'n, EM-officer in charge of royal stores ; krithói, EM-surplus ; mokrí, EM-clew.

km — co'kmóm, EM-fire ; m-akmò'i, EM-date of a month ; mukmu, EM cow.

kn — ko'knò'm — fillet ; m-ùknò wrestling ; pàknò'm — a kind of dish.

kn — o'pò'kngà, EM-name of a star ; to'kngà-rumour.

kw — kwá, LW-betel nut ; kwa'i, EM-spittle coming out of chewing betel nut ; kwák, LW-crow.

ky — còkyá-aside ; nàk:yt — both sides ; wàkyò'i, EM-boat.

kh + c

khr — khúnùkhrò'ng-hawk . pùkhrí, LW-pond

khw — khwá, EM-monkey ; khwái-all ; so'nákhwá — a term of address to a Manipuri Rajkumar.

khy — khyáo-mode of getting something dry

g + c

gr — ho'igrú-myrobalan ; phùgrí — itches ; ségràk-armpit.

gw — gwái-sound of playing cymbal

p + c

pk — kùpkò'ní — will cover ; thùpki-knot.

pkh — co'pkhài-is pressed ; thùpkhí—took shelter (emphatic).

24- Manipuri Grammar

pt - kàptíngà, EM-leech ; nò'ptóng-nose mucus ; tò'plái, EM-pillow.

pth—kàpthò'k:i-is shot ; nò'pthi-dry nose mucus,

pp—lèpponi-will stand (emphatic) ; yèppú, EM-a weaving implement,

pph—kùpphòrói-should not cover (emphatic) ; thùp-phòrói-should not conceal.

pc—hùpci't, EM-intellect ; hàpcínbò-insert ; kho'pchínbò-encroach.

ps—cùpsáron, EM-a hymn ; lèpsùmbò'n-an erect mortar for pounding paddy.

p:h—lèp:hò'n'bò-make one stand up ; thùp:hò'n'bò-make one conceal.

pl—cùpli'-rein ; lèplo'i-auger ; sùplàk-multiplication table.

pr—ngàprúm-mud eel ; prò'zá, LW-people ; prò'mán, LW-proof.

pm—kò'pmò'n'bò-too much crying ; tò'pmò'n'bò—too slow.

pn—làpnò-far ; sùpnò'm-violent imposition.

pw—kàpwáirò'ng, EM-thunderbolt.

phr—pómphri-rags

br—kòúbrú-northwest ; kho'bráng-both sides ; sò'mbru-mole.

by—cò'kò'byáng-a petrel ; ngàngbyá-a talkative fellow ; túbyá, LW-a small vessel for keeping tobacco.

t+c

tk—khùtkàppi'-fillip ; sò'tkò'n'bò- accustomed to borrowing.

tkh—ùtkhà, EM-ash ; yò'tkho'k-handle of a spade.

tt—khùttùm-fist ; thèttáng, EM-a kind of head gear ; yèttúm-needle.

tth—mì'tthò'u-stye ; pàtthò'bi'-a slough ; po'tthò'k-product.

tp—pò'tpú-yoke ; yò'tpak-spade ; yò'tpi'-nail.

tph—mì'hàtphò'm-scaffold ; pò'tphò'm-stall.

te—pò'tcò'ng-requisite ; pò'tcói-item of small articles ; yò'tcàbf-magnet.

ts—khùtsùmo'n-wage ; pàtsén-fishing tax ; pò'tsem-black magic.

t:h—ko`t:hing-rust ; khùt:hing-smell of hand ; yo`t-hing hand cuff.
tl—co`tlo`m,EM-road ; khùtlái-weapon ; pótioi-costume of Rasa
dance.

tr—càtrùk-six hundred ; mōlitrèng,EM-fire ; pèttrùklo`i-violet.

tm—co`tmō`nbo-too wet ; pètmo`nbo-too soft ; po`tmō-a measure
of about one hundred kilograms of paddy.

tn—khùtnàng-stain ; mi`tnō`m-deceit ; tètno`u,EM-iron.

tw—ko`twán,EM-name of a post ; so`twan,EM-name of a post ;

ty—mi`tyéng-view ; po`tyéng-monetary help to a berieved family.

th+c

thr—kaóthrùm-edible root of a plant ; pi`thraí-brass.

thw—thwà-sound of spitting

d+c

dr—hùidri-a weaving implement ; to`udrí--a musical instrument.

ddh—buddhi LW-intellect

o+c

cr—lo`icrèng-particles of dust ; khéeri,LW a kind of cooked rice.

z+c

zk—rázkúmar,LW-member of royal family

zb—tézbát,LW-bay-leaf

zr--ho`izráng knife

zw—zwár,LW-gambling

s+c

sk—péskári,LW-a kind of pump ; Yáiskúí-name of a division of
Imphal.

st—i`sto`k-a basket for scooping up water ; i`stri,LW-smoothing-
iron ; mistri,LW-carpenter.

sp—ispát,LW-steel ; náspátí,LW-a kind of fruit.

sl—múslá,LW-spices ; tóslá,LW-a kind of utensil.

sm—kismis,LW-raisin

sw—póswán a skirt of silvery muslin

26—Manipuri Grammar

r+c

rk—so'rkár,LW-government ; tárko'ng,EM-a musical instrument.

rt—pártin,LW-bucket ; bártón,LW-invitation ; kórtál,LW-cymbal.

rp—ko'rpùr,LW camphor

rph—cárpón-a kind of fruit ; kórphán-a kind of utensil.

rb—kórbék,EM-book ; khórbák-slate ; tórbo't-white gourd.

rc—dácini,LW-cinnámón

rz—khùrzi'-rein ; kho'rzoi'-slate pencil

rs—phársi',LW-hanging by neck till death

l+c

ls—túlsi,LW - tulasi plant.

ll—kóllùp-neighbouring area ; pólláng-basket ; so'llùp-herd of cattle.

lw—kho'lwóng,EM-a weighing implement : sálwón,EM-incarnation.

m+c

mk—dho'mká,LW-threat , so'mko'kthàng-razor.

mkh—hémkhù,EM-boat ; ngo'mkho'i-boundary ; thùmkhóng-salt well.

mg—kho'mgón,EM-wind ; thémgóibo,EM-mango.

mt—ghúmti,LW-a canopy on the bullock cart ; lo'mto'p-secluded area ; námtù,EM-river.

mth—cùmtháng-rainbow ; no'mthàk-deceit ; ngo'mtho'ng-assistant.

md—lo'mdo'm-area ; khómdón-youngest son ; pho'mdo'u,EM-high official.

mp—kompù,EM-soldier ; to'mpàk-valley ; yémpàk-a kind of umbrella.

mph—oinomphú,EM-cooking pot ; to'mphá-jewel ; ti'mphá-water leech

mb—hémbo, EM-hillman ; tho'mbán-lotus ; ti'mbóng-choler.

mbh—gumbhir, LW-crocodile.

mc—lò'mco't-character ; khómcup feeding bottle.

mz—səmzèt-comb ; sùmzi't-broom stick ; yámzég, EM-fore-head.

ms—khómsí, EM-comb ; túmsò't-pincers ; yúmsà-cattle.

mh—lò'mháng-meadow ; lò'mhùi-fox ; thúmhl-brine.

ml—cámloù, EM-plantain leaf ; khómlén, EM-dream ; kómlá, LW-orange.

mm—mócúmmà, EM-friend ; sùmmi, EM a mortar for pounding paddy with pestle.

mn—khe'mnùng, EM-death ; mómnù, EM-woman ; yùmnàk-sur-name.

mng—cámngá-five hundred ; nómgngá-back support on the colt.

mw—kèmwáibo, EM-ruin.

my—kò'myá-lower part of the belly ; lò'myài, EM-road ; sò'myá, EM-comb for the king.

n + c

nk—ci'nkùpsén-spittoon

nh—ci'nhúm-reply ; kónkho'i, EM-area ; tinkhà-bile.

ng—lò'ng:go'i-treasury ; s'ngong-hard cash ; ún:go'i, EM-mind.

nt—hèntàk-a kind of fish pickle ; ngo'ntà-early.

nh—kónthò'ng-gate ; po'nthúng-destination ; tánthong, EM-length.

nd—sèndáng-sparrow ; sèndóng-profit ; tò'ndo'n-fire fly.

ndh—sò'ndhá, LW-twilight ; sò'ndho'ng-south west.

np—òthénpo't-presents ; ówúnpò't-dowry ; lò'llónpo't-merchandise.

nph—f'mphùi, Em-a fishing trap ; khúnp hángtho'ú, EM-high officials.

nb—mánbi, EM-cow ; tò'nbo, EM-man ; únbi, EM-mind.

nc—kò'ncàk-bell metal for casting utensils ; khóncò'p-low speech. phénci, EM-south west.

nz—ci'nzàk-food ; sènzég-bell metal ; wánzég, EM-fish.

ns—púnsí-life ; sènsi't-sale proceeds ; y'ènsáng-curry ;

28—Manipuri Grammar

nh—ci`nhài-oral statement ; mánhò`i-appricot ; wánhò`usò`ng-kit-chen.

nm÷kúnmathói-twenty one ; sínmi`-worker ; to`nmú,EM-oar.

nn—innophi-shawl ; yénnao-chicken ; yènni`ng-sprout.

nw—honwaibo.EM-to come back

ny—ko`nyái,EM pieces of gold and silver ; lónyi`m.EM-house.

ng+c

ngk—léngko`t-a kind of basket ; téngko`t,EM-bowl ; yángko`k-winnowing fan.

ngkh—khángkhà,EM-brinjal ; tingkhò`ng-thorn ; yàngkhò`i-fifty.

ngg—kámngò`t-tax ; kónggón-bubble ; thínggú,EM-mallet.

nggh—mòsingghà-bile ; singghàreoi-a kind of flower ; zíngghò`LW-corrugated iron sheet.

ngt—ménnángto`nbo,EM-goat ; sò`ngto`p-portico ; thàngtùp-date palm.

ngth—kángthò`k-platform ; kángthón-bedstead ; nóngthò`u,EM-king.

ngd—lò`ngdúm-clew ; púngdón-guava ; sò`ngdìng,EM-cloth.

ngp—kángpo`t—sledge ; khàngpo`k-hut ; thàngpo`k,EM-pulse.

ngph—lò`ngphén-weft ; lánghphò`m-critical juncture ; nùngphán-anvil.

ngb—kángbú-group ; léngbán-shoulder ; wángbo`n,EM-wind.

ngc—khángcét-dhoti ; mómó`ngcà,EM-butterfly ; sì`ngcép-wedge.

ngz—khángzég,EM-court ; kho`ngzi-anklet ; tóngzo`i-pipe.

nga—kángsi-gong ; núngsit-wind ; thàngsáng-sword.

ng:h—láng:hò`i,EW-year ; lóng:hún-somersault ; póng:hút awl.

ngl—ho`nglà EM-cloth ; singh`-nerve ; yànglén-backbone.

ngm—ci`ngmi`-hillman ; hàngmò`i-a carpentary implement ; wángmò`-beyond.

ngn—khóngnáng pipal tree ; nóngna`ng,EM-sky ; tho`ngna`o-window

ngng—cìngngu,EM-god ; ka`ngngà-swan ; nùngngò`u-marble,

ngw—kho`ngwa`i,EM-foot hold ; la`ngwón,EM-incarnation ; tha`ngwa`i,EM-north.

ngy - cángyéng-test ; kóngyáng,EM-bamboo ; nóngyài-midnight

1. 4. 1. 2. *Three Consonant Clusters*

k + cc

kkṛ - thi'kkṛi-a kind of bird

kkhr - o'kkhróú-a kind of knot ; pákkhróbo-wide (emphatic).

ktr - pi'ktrú a small baby

kthr - mùkthrúbi'-an insect

kpr - to'kpro'í-a small plant

ksr - pùksri'-an insect

p + cc

pkhr - pho'pkhró'bo-fragile (emphatic) ; to'pkhró'bo-slow (emphatic).

ptr - ko'ptrèng-gin

t + cc

tkhr - cètkhró'bo-firm (emphatic) ; co'tkhró'bo-wet (emphatic).

ttṛ - mi'ttro ng-magic ; yèttro'í,EM right hand side.

n + cc

mkhr - co'mkhró'bo-simple (emphatic) ; lámkhró'bo-hungry (emphatic).

mpr - co'mprá-lemon ; lo'mprái-a kind of bird.

mbr - cùmbro'í-peach ; kha'mbrángcà-wagtail ; so'mbrù-mole.

n + cc

nkhr - pônkhro'ng,EM basket ; so'nkhró'bo-weak (emphatic).

ntr - ko'ntrók,LW-sulphur ; mo'ntro',LW-incantation ; úntrók,EM-winter.

nthr - kúnthrá-thirty ; ti'nthro'k-earth worm.

ndṛ - phùndro'í-lathe ; sùndro'ng-ether ; úpindrà,EM-fuel of good quality.

30—Manipuri Grammar

ng+cc

ngkr—céngkrúk-an edible plant; kó'ngkró'-a bowl of hooka;
méngkrúk-incense.

ngkhr—ci'ngkhró'ng,EM-hawk; ká'ngkhró'ng-wheel; lóngkhró'u-
a technique of wrestling.

nggr—ká'nggrú-slate pencil; kónggréng-oyster; thín'nggri',EM-
diving in the water.

ngthr—ci'ngthráo-a kind of tree; lán'ngthró'i-a medicinal herb.

ngdr—kán'ngdrúm-hockey ball; kóngdrúm-gourd; nón'ngdréng,
EM-everyday.

ngbr—són'ngbró'i-a kind of flower

ngzr—nú'ngzrèng-small stone pieces

2 MORPHOPHONIMICS

2.0 Morphonemic changes in Manipuri are of two types viz. those at the junctural points and those within the morphemes. Changes at junctural points are few and perform derivative functions. Different types of vowel and consonant changes occur within the morphemes.

2.1 *Junctural Morphophonimic Changes*

2.1.0 Vowels in contact occur at the border points of the compound words. Most of such vowels are seen in the verbal forms in the present indefinite tense and imperative mood. These vowels are marked by the following features :—

- (a) They are changed into separate vowels.
- (b) They are merged into single vowels.
- (c) They remain as separate vowels.
- (d) They are separated with—u glide or y-glide.

2.1.1 ɔ

2.1.1.1 ɔ+ɔ

ɔ+ɔ>ɔ in the emphatic verbal forms in the durative and perfect durative aspects of the present and past tenses in the general statement when the first—ɔ is the final phoneme of pɔ,

atonic syllable (marker of infinitive) and the second—*o* is also an atonic syllable (secondary prefix).

ko'k + li + po + odu + ni' > ko'kliboduni-we/you/they pare cutting (emphatic).

kàp + li + po + osi' + ni' > kàplibosi'ni-we/you/they are shooting (emphatic).

tàk + lo'm + li + po + osi' + n'i' > tàklo'mlibosi'ni-we / you / they were teaching (emphatic).

2.1.1.2 a + o > a

a + o > a in same compound words denoting cardinal numerals when—*a* is the final phoneme of the syllables and *-o* is an atonic syllable (secondary prefix).

kúnthrá + omo + thóibo > kúnthrámathói-thirty one

kúnthrá + oni' + thóibo > kúnthráni'thói-thirty two.

kúnthrá + ohúm + thóibo > kúnthráhúmdói-thirty three

torá + omo + thóibo > torámathói-eleven

torà + oni' + thóibo > toráni'thói-twelve

torà + ohu'm + thóibo < toráhu'mdói-thirteen

2.1.1.3 V + o > Vo

V + o > Vo in the preduplicated compound nouns and noun phrases when *V* is the final phoneme of the syllables and *-o* is an atonic syllable (primary/secondary prefix).

a + o - oca' otho'k-foot stuff

ophà opu'n-arrest

i + o - oki okho'ng-fear

u + e - orù ohén-luxury

othù okài-emergency

e + o - okè omo'u-luxury

pé ohùm-three umbrellas

o + o - ohó oràk-leakage

só oni'-two keys

oi + e - oho'i osing experts

ora'i orà-mental reservation

32 – Manipuri Grammar

- ou+ə—oɔ'ʉ ɔsáng—high officials
oɔ'ʉ ɔpèn—fresh vegetables
ai+ə—əkàì ɔtói—wreckage
əwái əkhúm—dialogue
ao+ə—əháɔ ɔthúm sweat meat
kào ɔhúm—three bulls
oi+ə—ɔrói əkhə'm—conclusion
ɔsói ɔngám—ommission and commission
ui+ə—húi ɔsi`—this dog
lə'm húi ɔdù—that fox

2.1.1.4 ə+u, ɔ, oi, ui

In —ə+u, ɔ, oi, ui, this—ə may remain or be separated from these vowels with -w glide in the derived noun words when -ə is an atonic syllable (primary prefix) and these four vowels are the initial phonemes of the verb roots.

- ə+u—ə:únpo't ... əwúnpo't-dowry
ə:úppi` ɔrɔngbi` ... əwúppi` ɔrɔngbi`—an indoor game.
ə+ɔ—ə.ónbɔ ... əwónbɔ—change
ə:ə`k ɔpá ... əwo`k ɔpá—undue interference
ə+oi—ə:oiɔ ... əwóiɔ—truth
ə+ui—ə:ùibɔ ... əwùibɔ—firmness

2.1.2.i

2.1.2.1 ə+i>ə

ə+i>ə in the verbal forms in the negative present indefinite aspect and the perfect aspect of the present and past tenses in the general statement when -ə is the final phoneme of the two atonic syllables viz. tɔ, marker of negation and lɔ, marker of perfect aspect and -i is the marker of general statement.

- ɔt+tɔ +i>ɔt`tré—we/you/they do not go
kɔ k+tɔ +i>kɔ`kté—we/you/they do not cut
kɔ`k+lɔ +i>kɔ`klé—we/you/they have shaved
tho`k+lɔ'm+lɔ +i>tho`klo'mlé—we/you/they had gone out

2. 1. 2. 2. *o + i > oi*

o + i > oi in the verbal forms in the present indefinite aspect —*o* is the final phoneme of the three atonic syllables (primary infixes) viz. *lo*, *no* and *tho* and —*i* is the marker of general statement,

ho'ng - lo + i > ho'ngloi - he comes and asks

hài + lo + i > hàiro'i - he comes and says

hàt + no + i > hàtno'i - they kill each other

ho't + no + i > ho'tno'i - they try

so'n + tho + i > so'ntho'i he becomes weak (emphatic)

wán + tho + i > wántho'i - he faints

2. 1 2. 3 *i, e, oi, ai, oi, ui + i > i, e, oi, ai, oi, ui*

i, e, oi, ai, oi, ui + i > i, e, oi, ai, ui in the the verbal forms in the present indefinite aspect when these six vowels are the final phonemes of the verb roots and —*i* is the marker of general statement.

i + i - li + i > lí - we/you/they narrate

pi + i > pí - we/you/they give

e + i - ps' + i > pé - we/you/they sob

tè + i > tè - we/you/they are docile

oi + i - lo'i + i > lo'i - we/you/they buy

po'i + i > po'i - we/you/they collect

ai + i - hai + i > hai - we/you/they say

ngái + i > ngái - we/you/they wait

oi + i - ko'i + i > ko'i - we/you/they walk

thói + i > thói - we/you/they win

ui + i - kúi + i > kúi - it lasts long

khúi + i > khúi - it decays

2. 1. 2. 4 *a, o, u + i > a : i, o : i, u : i*

a, o, u + i > a : i, o : i, u : i in the verbal forms in the present indefinite aspect when these three vowels are the final phonemes of the verb roots and —*i* is the marker of general statement.

34—Manipuri Grammar

a+i—cà+i>cà : i-we/you/they eat

pá+i>pá : i-we/you/they read

h+i—hó+i>hó : i-it is hollow

po`+i>po` : i-we/you/they carry (the baby) on the back

p+i—pú+i>pù : i-we/you/they borrow

phù+i>phù : i-we/you/they beat

2. 1. 2. 5. i+i>i : i, iyi

i+i>i : i, iyi in the reduplicated verbal modifiers expressing 'hardly' when the first -i is a primary prefix and the second -i is the initial phoneme of the verb roots.

i`+in+to+no>i` : in indonoi`yin indono-hardly wearing

i`+i`t+to+no>i` : i`t i`tono.....i`y i`t i`tono-hardly mending

2. 1. 2. 6 a, u, oi, ou, oi+i

In a, u, oi, ou, oi+i, this -i may remain or be separated from these five vowels with -y glide when such vowels and -i occur in the compound noun words.

a+i—khà : i` khàyi`,EM bank of the river

ná : ín náyin-ear ring

u+i—ú : ín úyin-a kind of tree

oi+i—lo`i : i lo`iyi-line

ou+i—thóu : i`nsín thóui`nsín-instigation

oi+i—lo` : ín lo`iyín,EM-attendant

2. 1. 2. 7 ou, ao+i

In ou, ao+i, this -i may remain or be separated from these two diphthongs with -w-glide in the verbal forms in the present indefinite aspect when these two diphthongs are the final phonemes of the verb roots and -i is the marker of general statement.

ou+i—kóu+i>kóu : i kóuwi-we/you/they call

tóu+i>tóu : i tóuwi-we/you/they do

ao+i—káó+i>káo : i ... káowi-we/you/they forget

táo+i>táo : i táowi-it floats

2. 1. 2. 8 *i+u, o, oi, ui*

In *i+u, o, oi, ui*, this *-i* may remain or be separated from these four vowels with *-w*-glide in the reduplicated verbal modifiers expressing 'hardly' when *-i* is a primary prefix and these four vowels are the initial phonemes of the verb roots.

i+o—i` : o`k o`ktɔɔ ... i`wo`k o`ktɔɔ being hardly sufficient

i` : o`n o`ndɔɔ...i`wo`n o`ndɔɔ-hardly changing

i+u—i` : ún úndɔɔ...i`wún úndɔɔ-hardly giving anything as do-wry.

i+oi—i : oi oidɔɔ ..iwoi oidɔɔ-being hardly true

i+ui—i` : ùi ùidɔɔ...i`wùì ùidɔɔ-being hardly firm

2. 1. 2. 9 *a, u, oi, oi+i>ahi, uhi, oihi, oihi*

a, u, oi, oi, -- i>ahi, uhi, oihi, oihi in a few words.

a+i—ná : i`>náhi`-blood coming out of the nose

nóng+yá+i`>nóngyáhi`-rain water

wà+i`>>wàhi` a kind of worm

u+i—cú+i`>cúhi`-juice of sugarcane

kù+i`>kúhi`-a kind of dye

oi+i--lɔ'i+i`>lɔ'ihì`-honey in flower

oi+i--khói+i`>khóihì`-honey

2. 1. 3 *u*

2. 1. 3. 1 *u+u>u ; u*

u+u>u : *u* in a word

ci`ngsú : *ú*-teak

2. 1. 3. 2 *u+u>uhu*

u+u>uhu in a word

lú+úp>lúhùp-cap

2. 1. 3. 3 *e+u>e : u, eyu*

e+u>e : *u, eyu* in a word

khé : *ú* ... *khéyú*-a kind of tree

36—Manipuri Grammar

2. 1. 4 -O

2. 1. 4. 1 o+o>ou

o+o>ou in the verbal forms in the imperative mood when -o is the final phoneme of the two atonic syllables (primary infixes) viz. no and tho and -o is the marker of the imperative mood.

khə̀n+nə+o>khə̀nnə̀u-(you) discuss (imperative)

ú+nə+o>únnə̀u-(you) meet

cíng+thə+o>cíngthə̀u-(you) pull down

cóng+thə+o>cóngthə̀u (you) jump down

o+o>ou in the verbal forms expressing contempt or discourtesy in the imperative mood when -o is the final phoneme of co, atonic syllable (marker of honorific first person) and -o is the marker of imperative mood

cə̀t+cə+o>cə̀tcə̀u-(you) go

kə̀t+cə+o>kə̀tcəu-(you) give

2. 1. 4. 2 i+o>o

i+o>o in the verbal forms in the imperative mood expressing progression of verbal action when -i is the final phoneme of khi, marker of durative aspect end -o is the marker of the imperative mood.

kə̀k+khi+o>kə̀kkhò (you) go on cutting

sə̀k+khi+o>sə̀kkhò-(you) go on singing

phə̀m+khi+o>phə̀mkhò-(you) go on sitting

2. 1. 4. 3 i, e, oi, oi+o

In i, e, oi, oi+o, this -o is separated from these four vowels with -y glide in the verbal forms in the imperative mood when such vowels are the final phonemes of the verb roots and -o is the marker of imperative mood. In such case, -o may also occur as -u:

í+o—pìyò ... pìyù-(you) give

thìyò ... thìyù-(you) count

e+o—kèyò ... kèyù-(you) be neat and clean

tèyò ... tèyù-(you) be durable

- ɔi + c - lɔ̃'yo` ... lɔ̃'iyù-(you) buy
 pɔ̃'yo` ... pɔ̃'iyù-(you) collect
 ai + o - hà'yo` ... hà'iyù-(you) say
 pà'yo` ... pà'iyù-(you) handle
 oi + o - kõ'yo ... kõ'iyù-(you) walk
 thó'yo` ... thó'iyù-(you) win

2.1.4.4 a + o > a : a, awo

a + o > a : a, awo in the verbal forms in the imperative mood when -a is the final phoneme of the verb root -o and -o is the marker of imperative mood.

- cà + o` > cà : o` ... càwo`-(you) eat
 pá + o` > pá : o` ... páwo`-(you) read
 tà + o` > tà : o` ... tàwo`-(you) listen

2.1.4.5 u, o, ɔu, ao + o

In u, o ɔu, ao + o, this -o may be merged with these four vowels or be separated from such vowels with -w glide in the verbal forms in the imperative mood when these vowel are the final phonemes of the verb roots and -o is the marker of imperative mood

- u + o - pù + o` > pù ... pùwo`-(you) borrow
 sú + o` > sù` ... súwo`-(you) work
 o + o - ɔ + o` > ɔ` ... ɔ`wo`-(you) vomit
 pɔ̃ + o` > pɔ̃` ... pɔ̃`wo`-(you) carry the baby on the back
 ɔu + o - kɔ̃'u + o` > kɔ̃u ... kɔ̃uwo`-(you) call
 tɔ̃ + o` > tɔ̃ ... tɔ̃wo`-(you) do
 ao + o - láo + o` > láo ... láowo`-(you) shout
 táo + o` > táo ... táowo`-(you) fry

§.1.4.6 V + o

In V + o, this -o may remain or be separated from V with -w glide in the coordinated noun phrases when V is the final phoneme of the syllables and -o expresses 'and'.

38—Manipuri Grammar

a+o—ngà : o` sà : o` ... ngàwo` sàwo`-fish and meat
i+o—mì : o` láí l ó ... mi`wo` láíwo`-person and god
u+o—cú : o` cà : o` ... cúwo` càwo`-sugarcane and lac
e+o—cè : o` ... cèwo` càwo`-paper and lac
o+o—mo` o` mà : o` ... mo`wo` màwo`-flea and bug
oi+o—ho`i : o` bí : o` ... ho`iwo` lo`iwo`-fruit and flower
ou+o—phou o phi : o` ... phouwophiwo`-paddy and cloth
ao+o—tháo : o` mǎi : o` ... tháowo` mǎiwo`-oil and fire
oi+y—khói : o` mà : o` ... khóiwo` màwo`-bee and bug
ui+o | hùi : o` kǎi : o` ... húiwo` kǎiwo`-dog and tiger

2. 1 4 . 7 i, oi, ai+o

In i, oi, ai+o, this -o may remain or separated from these three vowels with -w glide or -y glide in the compound noun words.

i+o—mì : óng ... mi`wóng ... mi`yóng-the particular person
oi+o—lǎi : ónbǎ ... lo`iwónbǎ ... lo`iyónbǎ-play in the mud
ai+o—sái : ón ... sáiwón ... sáiyón-incarnation

2. 1 . 5 —oi

2. 1 . 5 . 1 o+oi>oi

o+oi>oi in the emphatic verbal forms in the durative and perfect durative aspects of the present and past tenses and general statement when -o is the final phoneme of po, atonic syllable (marker of the infinitive) and oi is a copula verb.

lèp+li+po+ói>lèplibói-you/they are standing
no`k+li+po+ói>no`klibói-you/they are laughing
tǎk+lo`m+li+po+ói>tǎklo`mlibói-you/they were teaching

2. 1 . 5 . 2 i, oi+oi

In i, oi+oi, this -oi may remain or be separated from these two vowels with -w glide or -y glide.

i+oi—mì : ói ... mi`wói ... mi`yói-the particular person
oi+oi—kǎi : óibǎ ... ko`iwóibǎ ... ko`iyóibǎ-name of a legendary hero, 'kǎbui kǎiyóibǎ'.

2.2 INTERNAL MORPHOPHONEMIC CHANGES

Internal morphophonemic change is an important feature of the vowels (both monophthongs and diphthongs). Such changes occur within the morphemes of the words. Vowels are changed into other vowels. Some vowels are in free variation with other vowels.

2.2.1 ɔ

2.2.1.1 ɔ > a

Initial -ɔ followed by -ɔ, -a and -e > a.

ɔ/ɔ pɔ'n + tɔ + cɔ'nbo + mɔwɔng > pánzɔ'n—a goal scored in a game
pɔ'n + tɔ + tɔ'mbo + mɔwɔng > pándɔ'm-aim

ɔ/a ɔ + làppɔ + tɔ + páibɔ + khùtlái > aràmbái a weapon of Manipuri cavalry

ɔ/e hɔ'nyéngdɔbo > hàléngdɔbo-indifferent

Final -ɔ preceded by -o and -ai > a

o/ɔ - pónkhrɔ'ng > pólláng-basket

ai/ɔ - láipɔ'n > láibár-ambassador

ngáikho`k > ngo'hàk-a little while

Medial -ɔ preceded by -a, -u, -o and -ɔi > a.

a/ɔ - màitá tɔ'mbo > màitábo-wash face

u/ɔ - kundo, LW + loi > kundalo-i-a kind of flower

o/ɔ - motho`k lo`kpo > motho`k kàro`kpo-attain full growth

ɔi/ɔ - mɔ`i hɔ'nbo > mɔmɔ`i sángbo-have a long tail

2.2.1.2 ɔ > i

Initial -ɔ followed by -u, -ɔi and -ao > i.

ɔ/u - mɔrúng > lì`rúng-bow

ɔ/ɔi - ɔsɔ`i > i`sɔ`i-song

ɔ/ao - ɔsáo > i`ngà-name of a Manipuri month

Final -ɔ preceded by -ɔ and -a > i

ɔ/ɔ - hɔ'nù hɔ'nbo > hɔ'nù hɔ'nthi`-old person

a/ɔ - márho'n > márzing-name of a sylvan deity

40 – Manipuri Grammar

Medial -o preceded by -o, -i, -u, -o and -oi>i.

o/o—oʔt' owánthá>osi't owánthá-windy season

lo/mko'nbo>úrông khínbo-fix boundary pillar

i/c—mí to'mbán>mí thi'bo'ng-worthless person

u/o—púra'n,LW+po>púríbo-multiplication

o/o—cóngda'mbo>cóngsinbo-rush forward

oi/o—langgoi conbo>koinbo-surround

2.2.1.3 o -u

Final -o preceded by -o and -ao>u.

o/o—go'ngdho'k,LW>ko'ntrúk-sulphur

ao/o—kúrao ho'ng>kúrao húng-a kind of hand cuff

Medial -o preceded by -o, -a, -i, -oi and -ao>u.

o/o—omə+lo'k>omúk-once

a/o—kházo'ngnəbo>khúrumbə-bow down

náco'ngdəbo>nácùngdəbo-indifferent

i/o—phógizo'go'i>phágizúgəi joke

oi/o—lo'to'nggəi>lo'itəm-clod

ai/o—sáigo'ng lo'ihə'nbo>so'gúntəùbə-burg'ary

2.2.1.4 o>e

Medial -o preceded by -a and -ao>e

a/o—məhək phə'ngbo>həkthéngnəbo-physical contact

ao/o—wəro'k tho'náo to'mbo>wəro'k watembo-exercise control
and supervision

2.2.1.5 o>o

Initial -o followed by -o, -i, and -ai>o.

o/o—mə'ngləbo+so'ngləbo+məphəm>móngso'ng-thicket

no'm+no+ngábo+məphə'm>nómngá-back support of bed-
stead

o/i—bondi,LW>bóndi-prisoner

mə'ng+ki+mə+phə'm>móngphə'm-graveyard

o/ai—lo'ngmáizi'ng>nóngmáizi'ng-Sunday

Final ɔ preceded by -a and -ai > o

a/ɔ—mákhɔ'n, LW > mákhón-butter
mi'tphátɔ'm > mi'húttho'ng-window

ai/ɔ—kháibo`k > kháibo`k-half

Medial ɔ preceded by -a, and -u > o.

a/ɔ—càhɔ`tpɔ > càtho`kpɔ-eat up
kángtho'ng kángzáibo > kángkhóng cáibo-disorder
lăimàngphɔ`mbo > láitóngbo-be in communion with the sylvan deity

u/ɔ÷cɔ'bútɔ'rá, LW > cɔ'bútórá-a brick platform growing tulasi plant

2.2.1.6 ɔ > oi

Initial ɔ followed by -i > oi.

sɔ'yí > sɔ'í-a kind of tree

Final ɔ preceded by -i > oi

kɔ'rbír, LW > kɔ'bíró'i-a kind of flower

Medial ɔ preceded by -a > oi

ɔ'mábo'syá, LW > ámábo'ísá-new moon

2.2.1.7 Free variation of ɔ with oi

Initial ɔ followed by -y is in the free variation with -oi.

oyuk ~ oiýuk-morning

moyái ~ mo'iyái-impact

moyám ~ mo'iyám-many

moyán ~ mo'iyán-mixture

moyéng ~ moi'y g'éng-quantity

moyo'm ~ mo'iyò'm-bundle

moyo'n ~ mo'iyò'n-bud

sɔ'yèng ~ sɔ'iyèng-arm

2.2.1.8 ɔ > ou

Medial ɔ preceded by -oi > ou.

sáigong lo'ihò'nbo > sɔ'gún tɔu'mbo-burglary

42—Manipuri Grammar

2 . 2 . 1 . 9 Free variation of -o with -u

Initial -o followed by -w is in free variation with -u.

əwàbo ~ əúwàbo-sorrow

əwáng ~ əúwáng-north

əwúnpo't ~ əúwúnpo't-dowry

əwóibo ~ əúwóibo-truth

hə'wái ~ həúwái-pulse

thə'wái ~ thə'uwái-soul

thə'wán ~ thəúwán-name of a Manipuri month

2 . 2 . 1 . 10 Loss of -o

EM -o is lost due to elision of the following unstressed morphemes :—

cə't—cə'tlə'm>lə'mbi'-road

hə'k—to'knəhə'kpo>to'kpo-stop

kho'm—kho'mnə'u>nə'u-oar

kho'n—kho'nngə'kpo>ngə'kpo-guard

kə'nphə'ibo>phə'ibo-place breadthwise

kho'nggə'n>kho'ng-leg

lə'ng—pə'nlə'nglə>pə'n-bund

mə'n—məthə'umo'n>məthə'u-duty

mə't—ni'ngmə't>məni'ng-backside

ngə'm—ngə'mdə'incə>tá'incə-have contact with

ngə'mthə'ngnə>thə'ngnə-contiguous

lə'ingə'mbə>lə'ibo-live

thə'nggə'm>məthə'n-storey

phə'm—ko'tphə'm>ko't-barn

lùkphə'm>lùk-meal (honorific)

pə'n—pə'nei>ci'dái-corner

sə'm—sə'mpo'k>po'k-gray hair

tə'm—lə'ptə'm>lə'p-height

pə'tə'm>pə't-thing

tə'ng—tə'nggá'ibo>ngá'ibo-wait

cəthə'ngnə>cəbo-eat

2.2.2 a

2.2.2.1 a > ɔ

Initial -a followed by -a, -i, and -u > ɔ.

a/a—khàibán > mɔpán—exterior

sàmàng > mɔmàng—front side

a/i—pháni`k > pho`nèk—woman's garment

sà + kí + kài > sɔ`gài—a raised platform

a/u—cànùra > cɔ`nù—woman

sàmùk > sɔ`mùk—cow, bull

Final -a preceded by -a, -u, -oi and -ai > ɔ.

a/a—man + cà > mánzɔ`—husband

nàkpán > nàkko`n—side

táng + cà > tángzɔ`—snake, EM

thá + cà > tházɔ`—moon, EM

yo`kcà > yo`kco`bi`—nurse

u/a—nàmúngsà > mùkso`n—hybrid

oi/a—lɔ`i + mà > loi`mo`—queen

pái + mà > páimo`—mind, EM

ai/a—i`kàikhàng > kàngkho`n—mosquito net

Medial -a preceded by -a, -oi and -ai > ɔ.

a/a—càk + càbo + kí + mɔmàng > càkco`màng forenoon

khà + phàkpo + ngà > khàbo`k—a kind of fish

lɔ`ipúng yàkàbo > lɔ`ipúng pho`mbo—sit in the open ground

ngà + ɔphàklobo + zàt > ngàpho`k—a kind of dried fish

oi/a—lɔ`i lángho > loi`ko`tpɔ—offer flower to the deity

yùm + ko`i + sábo + númi`t > yùmsɔ`ko`iso`—wednesday

ai/s—lái + hàtnobo + lo`n > láihɔ`tlo`n—black magic

2.2.2.2 Free variation of -a with -ɔ

Initial -a followed by -ɔ and -ai is in free variation with -ɔ.

a/ɔ—kángnànbì ~ ko`ngnànbì—a kind of pitcher

khábráng ~ kho`bráng—both sides

khára ~ kho`rá—a small bamboo platform on the pond

a/ai—kángráibi ~ ko`ngráibi—a kind of worm

44—Manipuri Grammar

Medial -a preceded by -u is in free variation with -ɔ.
púcàlùk,EM ~ púzò`rùk,EM-basket

2.2.2.3 a>i

Initial -a followed by -a, -i and -oi>i.

a/a—sàfà>píbà-son

a/i—càni`gkhàk>ci`khàk-remnant of food.

káiri`>li`ri`-bow string

a/oi—págo`i>pisùm-eye brow

Final -a preceded by -ɔ, -a and -i>i.

ɔ/a—lò`mdáng>lò`mbi`-road

a/a—náyán>náyín-ear ring

i/a—álmíráh,LW>ɔ`mbári

mòbi`ngà>mòbàni`-both of them

Medial -ɔ preceded by -ɔ, and -u>i.

ɔ/a—li`rén pàgo` tíngbo>li`tíngbo-fix up a row of canes

u/a—núng cánbo>núngsibo-love

2.2.2.4 a>u

Initial -a followed by -ɔ, -i and -oi>u.

a/ɔ—kházò`ngnbo>khúrúmbò-bow down

a/i—tàmdi`>ɔdùdi.-that (emphatic)

a/oi—tàloi>mòtù-wife

Final -a preceded by -u, -oi and -ɔu>u.

u/a—cúná,LW>súnú-lime

oi/a—phò`irá>phò`irú-thigh

ɔu/a—lò`upàk>lòúbùk-paddy land

Medial -a preceded by -ɔ, -i, -o; -oi and -ɔu>u.

o/u`—hò`ná hò`nú>hò`nú hò`nthi`-old person

i/a—lò`sìng tánbo>lò`mò`n khúmbò-revenge

o/a—nóngbánthá>nóngzúthá-rainy season

oi/a—màkláng:hò`i cámbò>khùt cúmbo-expert in shooting

eu/a—lòúmànnòbo>lòúrúnòbo-conspiracy

2. 2. 2. 5 a > e

Initial -a followed by -i, -u and -e > e.

a/i—lángthì'nóbò > yéngthì'nóbò-inimical

a/u--wánglùk > mérùk-a small basket for measuring rice

a/e—àrè > mэрà-name of a Manipuri month

Final -a preceded by -o, -a and -u > e.

o/a—sò'myá > sò'mzet-comb

a/a—khángkhà > khámén-brinjal

lái wángià > láirén supreme god head

u/a—nùngngàcà > nùngzrèng-small stone pieces

Medial -a preceded by -u > e.

mò'iréng kàngbò > mómò'i thèkkòtpò-raise tail

2. 2. 2. 6 a > o

Initial -a followed by a and -i > o.

u/a—sáwà > só-key

a/i—kwá : i' > kóráng-spittle coming out of chewing betel nut and leaf

khári' > khóng'ò'm-canal

Final -a preceded by -o and -u > o.

o/a—mì'tò'mbán > mì'thì'bo'ng-worthless person

a/a—nápá > ná'kóng-ear

Medial -a preceded by -o, -u and -ou > o.

o/a—mò'ràkci'n > tho'ngzi'n door frame

u/a—húndànbo > húndo'kpo-throw away

ou/a—láinoútábo > láitóngbo-be in communion with the sylvan deity

2. 2. 2. 7 a > oi

Initial -a followed by -u and -e > oi.

a/u—lángbùm > lo'ipún-union

a/e—kàngde > cò'itèk-pieces of broken stick

46—Manipuri Grammar

Medial -a preceded by -o and -i>oi.

o/a—lo'n màbi>lo'n lo'ibi`-a rich woman

i/a—mi`rángcán>mi`ro`riho`-t-rogue

2. 2. 2. 8 a>ou

Initial -a followed by -a and -i>ou.

a/a—tháyâng>tho'unà-courage

a/i—càk+kí+mopi`>co`ubri`-break fast meal for children

Medial -a preceded by -a>ou.

a/a—lân kâbo>lân ho`ubo-revolt

2. 2. 2. 9 a>ai

Initial -a followed by -o, -e, and -o>ai

a/o—phánzo' ho'ibo>páibo ho'ibo-skilful in flying

a/o—lāngphèt>háiphèt-a little

a/o—láng:ón>sái:ón-incarnation

Final -a preceded by -u>ai

lùkláng>lùkmài-a kind of basket

Medial -a preceded by -o>ai.

po'ncáyo`t,LW>po'ncái-a local self governing body

2. 2. 2. 10 a>ui

Initial -a followed by -ai>ui.

háwáiro`i>hùiro`i-scout

2. 2. 2. 11 Loss of -a

-a in the unstressed morphemes of some EM words is lost due to the elision of these morphemes. Such elided morphemes are shown below :—

cà—cèngzà>cèng-rice

pho`kcă>pho`k-mat

há—hátho`ibo>tho`ibo-divert

hátho`kpo>tho`kpo-go out

- khà—khàzɔ'ngbo>ɔ'ngzɔbo-take shelter
 ùtkhà>ùt-ash
- là—línlà>lín-snake
 yángko'klà>yángko'k-winnowing fan
- mà—màláng>láng-net
 tángmà>táng-limb
- nà—nàkɔ'mbo'ng>kɔ'mbo'ng-edible fruit of a plant
 nàtɔ'mbo>tɔ'mbo-learn
- pà—ci'bà>úci'-rat
 kúmbà>kúm-year
- phà—phàhunbo>húnbo-throw
- càk—càkli'k>li k-necklace
- kàng—kàngdén>ten-bow
- láng—li'kláng>li'k-necklace
- mán—mántho'uri>tho'uri-rope
- nám—námtù>tùrén-river
- sán—sán kho'ngbo>kho'ngbo-know
 sánsɔmbo>səmbɔ-mend
- tán—tánmùlɔ'ng>lɔ'ng-yarn
 tánphɔ'ngbo>phɔ'ngbo-get

2. 2. 3. i

2. 2. 3. 1 i>ɔ

Initial -i followed by -ɔ, -i, -u, -oi and -ɔu>ɔ.

- i/ɔ—ní+tɔ+lɔ+kɔ>nɔ'trɔɔ or
 ní+tɔ+nɔ>nɔ'ttɔnɔ-except
 ní+tɔ+pɔ>nottɔbo-other than
 phí+tɔgi+thókɔ+mothí>phɔ'di-rags
- i/i—i'ci'knúng>ɔci'kɔ-calm
- i/u—i'núng>ɔhíng-night
 mi'súngláng>mɔ'súngláng-for one's own sake
- i/oi—mi'rɔ'i mi'púng>mɔ'rbák-foreign country
- i/oi—krithói>othói ɔhén-surplus
- i/ɔu—li'rɔúwà>mɔrɔ'i-argument

Final -i preceded by -u, -o and ai > ɔ.

u/i—khùtín > khúdo'm-example

o/i—sùmmi' > sùmbò'n a mould for pounding paddy with pistle

ai/i—láiyi'm > láiso'ng-temple

Medial -i preceded by -ɔ, -a, -u, -o, ou and -ai > ɔ.

o/i—ɔsi' + wái + to > ɔswáido-over here

moni'nglo'n > monò'mmo' elder brother's wife (a word used only by the women)

a/i—ngàngpi'yá > ngàngbyà a talkative fellow

tho'wánmi'càk > tho'wánmo'càk-star

i/i—i'sing + si'tnobo + to'k > i'sto'k-a basket for scooping water

u/i—cùmmi'thàng > cùmthàng-rainbow

úringkón > úmo'ng-forest

o/i—ɔpo'k li'hùi > ɔpo'kasi-birth and death

nótini > lóto'ni-whore

ou/i—pho'mdo'u níngtho'u > ɔngò'm-ɔtho'u-high officials

ai/i—i'káithi'bi' > i'káitho'bi'-a medicinal herb

2 2. 3. 2 Free variation of i with ɔ

Initial -i followed by -i, -u, -o and -oi is free variation with -ɔ

i/i—i'míntho'ng ~ moníngtho'ng-back door

khízi'k ~ kho'zi'k-a little

i/u—i'yi'm, EM ~ oyùm, EM-we

i/o—i'bo'k ~ obo k-grand mother

i/oi—mi'rò'ibák ~ mo'rò'ibák-foreign country

Medial -i preceded by -ɔ, -i, -oi and -ai is in the free variation with -ɔ:

o/i—mòrìphù ~ mo'rphù-eighty

i/i hízigang, EM ~ hizɔgang, EM-boat house

ai/i—hò'izíngpo't ~ ho'izo'po't-a ceremoney on the day of betrothal

ai/i—laiyingthou, EM ~ laibongthou, EM-good

-i in the two primary infixes viz. ci'n and ci'nnə is also in free variation with -o.

thə'kci'nbo ~ thə'kco'nbo-gulp down

thə'kci'nnəbo ~ thə'kco'nnəbo-pretend to drink

2. 2. 3. 3. i > a

Initial -i followed by -u and -e > a.

i/u—li'thúbo>lángdo thúbo-fall in the net

i/e—timén>tá-spear

Final -i preceded by -o, -u and -ə > a.

o/i—dho'mki,LW>dho'mká-threat

mothi'k>móthá-breast

u/i—trúti,LW>túká-fault

o/i—móti,LW>múktá-jewel

Medial -i preceded by -o, -a, -i, and -ə > a.

o/i—othi'di>wathi'-gossip

mobi'ngà>móbàni'-both of them

a/i—pàiri siri'>mocà mósù-offspring

i/i—hizi'gáng>higàsò'n_g boat house

əu/i—thə'usi'bo>thə'udábo-assign a duty

2. 2. 3. 4 Free variation of -i with -a

Initial -i followed by the sound group -ya is in free variation with -a.

kiyámlo'i ~ kiyámlo'i-a kind of flower

kiyámbo ~ kiyámbo-name of a Manipuri king

kiyám li'kpháng ~ kiyám li'kpháng-a kind of neck/aca

kiyár,EM ~ kyár,EM pillow

thiyáng,EM ~ tháyáng,EM-courage

Final -i preceded by -a is in free variation with -a.

kumbi,EM ~ kumza,EM-year

50—Manipuri Grammar

2. 2. 3. 5. i>u

Initial -i followed by -i and -u>u.

i/i—dibiyá, LW>túbiyá-a small vessel for keeping tobacco

i/u—tíncumbó>tùkó'cóbó-hate

Final -i preceded by -i, -o, -oi and -oi>u.

i/i—cínbi>so'zibù-name of a Manipuri month

o/i—lónyi'm>yúm-house

oi/i—móinín>mó'ihúm-fire brand

oi/i—móiri'k>móibùng-conch

Medial -i preceded by -o, -i and -e>u.

o/i—osi'+kúm+nó>osúmno thus

osi'+mùk+to>osùkto-this much

osi'+ngo'i+to>osùngido-at this time

mócí oíbo>morù oíbo-basic

mónin náibo>núngáibo-happy

i/i—monúng li'tingbo>loútúnobó-conspiracy

to'u:i'gidí>to'u i'gúmbosùng-but

e/i—hé i'khù>i'bùngo'-gentleman

moréng si'nbo>morì'k cùmbó-rich in details

2. 2. 3. 6 i>e

Initial -i followed by -i, -u and -o>e.

i/i—bhindí, LW>bhélo'ndrí-lady's finger

cì'n+ki'+lò'ibàk>cèrbàk-edible rock pieces

i/u—sínbù+lúngbó+mí>séllúngbó, EM-name of a post

i/o—kiko't>kékù-an indoor game

Final -i preceded by -o, -a, -i, -e and -o>e.

a/i—mósín>mósén-each other

póring>póréng-line

a/i—kámbi>kálén-summer

pháni'k>pho'nèk-women's garment

i/i—si'ngmi't>si'ngcèp-wedge

e/i—hébi`>i`bémo`-lady

sèkpin>pé-a kind of umbrella

o/i—khómsi>so`mzet-comb

Medial -i preceded by -o, -a, -e and -o>e.

o/i—lo`mbi`+lén>lo`mbèn-road

sənm thitpə>sadə thetpə-fix flower etc on animal's back.

a/i—khági+ngə`mbə>khágémbə-name of a Manipuri king

e/i—hébi`>i`bémo-lady

sekpin>pé-a kind of umbrella

o/i—khómsi>səmət-comb

2 . 2 . 3 . 7 i>o

Initial -i followed by -o and -a>o.

i/o—mircá' LW>móro`k-chilly

i/a—kiyáng>kórèk-water pot made of dried gourd

níngráng>nóngnáng (hórínóngnáng)-a kind of insect

Final -i preceded by -a and -u>o.

a/i—ákil, LW>ákón-intelligence

u/i—pàri` pùri`>pàrón pùrón ancestors

Medial -i preceded by -o>o.

osi`+lóm+to>oso`mdo-towards this side

2 . 2 . 3 . 8 i>oi

Initial -i followed by -o, -i and -u>oi.

i/o—phi+no+sábo+po`t>pho`izá-fold of cloth supporting head load

i/i—sin+ki+mo+càk+oíbo+po`t>so`izàk-fruit of a tree used in starching yarn

i/u—phi+pu+thadoklōbo+mi>phoida-eunuch

Final -i preceded by -o, -a and -e>oi

o/i—sàyi`>so`i-a kind of tree

a/i—nàmi`>məmo`i-tail

e/i—ténbi`>ténzo`i-arrow

52—Manipuri Grammar

Medial -i preceded by -a and -oi>oi.

a/i—kàptíngcà>kàkpho'i-leech

oi/i—so'íringwái>so'ilo'ipho'm-site for laying fishing trap

2.2.3.9 *i>ou*

Initial -i followed by -a and -i>ou.

i/a—thi'yáng>tho'unà-courage

i/i—li'tíngbo>lóutúnobó-conspiracy

Medial -i preceded by -o>oi.

mohísá>mohó'usá-nature

2.2.3.10 *i>ai*

Final -i preceded by -o>ai,

dóli,LW>dólái-palanquin

Medial -i preceded by -i>ai.

f'áing + ki + co'phù>i'sáiphù-a pitcher for storing water.

2.2.3.11 *i>ao*

Medial -i preceded by -o>ao.

otíngbo>otáobó-fickle

2.2.3.12 *Loss of -i.*

-i in the unstressed syllables of same EM words is lost due to elision of these syllables. Such elided syllables are shown below :—

ci'—ci'khro'ng>khúnúkhro'ng-hawk

f'—i'káikhàng>kàngkho'n-mosquito net

i'núng>núngdáng-night

ki—kiyo'mbo>yo'mbo-fold up

krithói>othoi chen-surplus

ti'—ko'ucàli'bo>ko'ucobo-call

séri'>sén-money

pi`—pi`bùk>pùk-belly
 si`ngbi`>si`ng fuel
 thi`—linláthi`>lin-snake
 so`ngyáthi`>so`ng-hut
 so`udi>so-obstacle
 ci`ng—ci`ngco`ro`i>co`ro`i-a kind of bird
 hi`k—hàihikpo>hàibo-say
 kàp;hi`kpo>kappo-shoot
 mi`t—tángmi`t>táng-limb
 nin—phùnínsing>lóúsing-intelligence
 sik—tòusi`kpo>tòubo-dig

2.2.4 u

2.2.4.1 u>ɔ

Initial -u followed by -a, -ai and -oi>ɔ.

u/a—húngngà>hó`ngngà-crying of the babies
 sùcà>mocà-offspring
 u/ai—lúwái>ló`wái-forehead
 u/oi—cùkó`i>zo`gói-dance

Final -u preceded by -ɔ, -u, -o, -oi and -ou>ɔ.

o/u—mò`nglùk>mòro`m-reason
 to`ndún>to`ndo`n-glow worm
 u/u—lútúng>lúkhó`m-backside of the head
 mòkhùtkhún>khùtphó`m-imprint of the hand
 o/u—nóngbùm>nóngmò-the whole day
 oi/u—mòro`ipùng>ló`iphó`m-residence
 ou/u—lóúthùp>lóúno`m-deceit

Medial -u preceded by -ɔ, -u and -o>ɔ.

o/u—mòtúyá>mòphó`m-place
 o/u—níngón-sùcà>níngónmocà-children of the daughter

kúno, EM marker of the negative imperative mood and
 súno, EM marker of 'let do' (third person) are changed into kò`nò
 and so`nò respectively in the modern Manipuri.

54—Manipuri Grammar

cə̀tkúno` > cə̀tkə`nú, (you) don't go (imperative)

cə̀tsúno` > cə̀tsə`nú-let him/they go

2. 2. 4. 2. Free variation of -u with -ə

Final -u preceded by -ə, -a, -əu and -oi is in the free variation with -ə.

ə/u—tə'yúm, EM ~ tə'yo`m, EM-servant

a/u—i`sing yáphùm ~ i`sing yáphə`m-a kind of disease

kho`ido`u yáphùm ~ kho`idoù yáphə`m-peace of mind

əu/u—thə`umú náomú ~ thəúmə` náomə`-contemporary

oi/u khóiyúm, EM ~ khóiyə`m, EM-god

Medial u preceded by -ə, -o is also in free variation with -ə.

ə/u—ədùwáido ~ ədwáido over there

ə/u—yo`sùbi` ~ yo`tsə̀bi` a three legged utensil

2. 2. 4. 3 u > a

Initial -u followed by -ə and -u > a.

u/ə—cúnbə > cánbə-kind

pùkkhə`n > wàkkhə`n-idea

u/u—khúmú cə̀ppə > khàmén cə̀tpə-a kind of finely embroidered dhoti

phùrúp > kànglúp-group

Final -u preceded by -a and -i > a.

a/u—lə`mmàcúm > lə`msáng-street

i/u—míə`i mi`pùng > mə̀rbàk-foreign country

Medial -u preceded by -ə, -i and -oi > a.

ə/u—lə`mmùknəbə > lə`màngnəbə-lose one's way

sə`ndúbə > sə`nhàtpə-killing of the cow

tə`ngtúbə > tə`ngtábə-emerge a clear picture

i/u—mí`t cúbə > mí`t cà`nəbə-look each other eye to eye

mí`túphə`m > mí`hàtpə`m-scaffold

mí`túyà > mí`hàtpə`ə-murder

oi/u—kho ngdói húnbə > kphə`ng sánbə-start

2. 2. 4. 4. *Free variation of -u with -a*

Final -u preceded by -ɔ is in free variation with -a.

məpúm,EM ~ momán,EM-maternal uncle

2. 2. 4. 5 *u>i*

Initial -u followed by -ɔ, and -i>i

u/c—ünthə'mthá>ínthə'mthá-winter

únthə'mbɔ>ínthə'mbɔ-feel cold

u/i—cùpci>ci`thèk-corner

Final -u preceded by -a, -i -u and -oi>i

a/u | lánbùm>lánmi-soldier

i/u—i`núng>ɔhíng-night

u/u—pùnúng>phùri`t-shirt

oi/u—khóiyú>khóihì-honey

Medial -u preceded by -ɔ, -e and -o>i.

ɔ/u—lɔ'n kúɔ>lɔ'n pi`bɔ-giving of money

nɔkhúngɔ'i>oíríngɔ'i-while he/she is

c/u—sínglén cúnɔ>lɔ'i cínɔ-fix flower on the ear

o/u—nóngbùmlén>númi`tcùppo-the whole day

2. 2. 4. 6 *Free variation of -u with -i*

Initial -u followed by -a, -i and -e is in free variation with -i.

u/a—cùkhàk ~ ci`khàk-remnant of food

núngsá ~ níngsá-breathing

nùpà ~ ni`pà-man

úyán ~ íwán-pot for cooking curry

u/i—nùpĩ ~ ni`pĩ-woman

nútĩ ~ nítĩ-every day

u/e—cúthèk ~ ci`thèk-corner

múngsén ~ míngsén-mirror

Final -u preceded by -oi is in free variation with -i.

khóiyùm,EM ~ khóiyɔ̃m,EM-god

36—Manipuri Grammar

2. 2. 4. 7 *u > e*

Medial -u preceded by -u and -oi > e:

u/u—khúmmú cə̀ppə > khámén cə̀tpə—a kind of finely embroidered dhoti

oi/u—lòibúnái > məbén—grand mother

2. 2. 4. 8 *u > o*

Initial -u followed by -u, -e and -o > o.

u/u—khùyú > khóng—leg

u/o—túrén + kí + məpàn > tórbàn—bank of the river

túrén + nə + lòibo + məphə́m > tórə̀i—zigzag course of river

u/o—lúthóng > kòkthóng—head load

khùdón > khòngdón—tip toe

Final -u preceded by -a, -i, -u and -o > o.

a/u—lángbùm > məpə́k—birth

yìmpùk > yùmkòk—each house

u/u—thúmlùk > thúmmòk—basket

o/u—thúmsóbùng > thúmkhóng—salt-well

Medial -a preceded by -ə and -i > o.

ə/u—ə̀dù + lóm + tə > ə̀dòmdə—towards that side

i/u—ìbùngò + ə̀tónbo > ìbòtón—a personal name

2. 2. 4. 9 *u > i*

Final -u preceded by -a > i.

lòmmárù > lòmkhòi—boundary

súngnə, EM-diminitive primary infix is changed into lòina in the modern Manipuri

ngàngsúnobo > ngànglòinobo—reddish

2. 2. 4. 10 *u > ao*

Medial -u preceded by -i > ao.

ìnúngsiyòm > náoyòm—amnion

2. 2. 4. 11 *u > oi*

Medial -u preceded by -i > oi

i`phùbo > i`ro`ibo-swim

2. 2. 4 12. *Loss of -u*

-u in the unstressed syllables of some EM words is lost due to the elision of these syllables. Such elided syllables are shown below :—

khu—yùmkhù > yùm-house

mu—i`mù > i`-blood

loi`mù > i`ro`i-buffalo

tármúló`ng > ló`ng-yarn

phu—phù`nín`sing > ló`úsing-intelligence

kum—tò`ukúmbò > tó`úbò-do

lum—mò`rùmpán > mópán-help

muk—kò`n`mì`kpo > kò`nbo-erect a temporary shed

2. 2. 5. 1 *e > ə*

Initial -e followed by -e and -əu > ə.

e/a—lén`gno tén`bò > møyám tén`bò-gathering of the people

e/i—sè`kni`ng > mənì ng-bottom

e/əu—lè`plo`u sín`bò > mòhùt sín`bò-substitute

sé`dòu > sò`dò`u-pulpitation

Final e preceded by -ə > e.

wà`rə`mlén > wámocə`ng-gist

Medial -e preceded by -i and -oi > ə.

i/e—ci`kthémno > ci`kthə`no-calmly

oi/e—lói`kénba > lói cə`nbo-conquer a foreign country

te. EM locative marker is changed into to in the modern Ma-

nipuri.

nì`ngde > mənì`ngdə behind

2. 2. 5. 2 *e > a*

Final e preceded by -ə, -u, -o and -oi > a,

58—Manipuri Grammar

o/e—hə'kcéng>hə'kcàng·body

u/b—cùmlén>cùbá·both sides of the face

khùzéng>khùdáng·wrist

o/e—pónlén>pónláng·basket

oi/e—məmóiréng>móithàp·spine

Medial -e preceded by -a, -i and -oi>a.

a/e—mə'iri` pónnà thémbo>mə'i thàto·set fire

f/e—

oi/e—mə'i cénno·bo>mə'i càkpo·burn

2. 2. 5. 3 Free variation of -e with -a

Medial -e preceded by -o is in free variation with -a.

b'plénká,EM ~ b'pwánká,EM—a room of the house

2. 2. 5. 4 e>i

Initial -e followed by -i, -u, -o, -ai and -oi>i.

e/i—hèbi`>i`bémə·lady

hèbi`khù>i`búngo`·gentleman

e/u—hémkhù>hi·boat

e/o—hèkto`kpo>hi`kto`kpo·disobey

e/ai—hèkngáibə>hi`kpo·loose

e/oi—sén:góibə>i`kàibə·shame

Final -e preceded by -a, -i and -o>i.

a/e—yáren>yári`·gum

i/e—i`khéng>i`ri`k·drop of blood

o/e—nóngdréng>núti·everyday

Medial -e preceded by -o>i.

məcém + mənào>məci`n mənào·brothers and sisters

məcém + məúpwà>məci`n məúpwà·elder sister and younger brother

mənəm + məmə'u>məni` məməu·mother-in-law and daughter-in-law

mərəng si`nbə>məri`k cùmbə·rich in details.

yáthə'ng cénbə>khà ci`kpo·bite lip

2 . 2 . 5 . 5 *Free variation with -e with -i.*

Initial -e followed by -a, -i and -ou is in free variation with -i.

e/a -phə̀nàt ~ phinàt-sandal
 séphà.EM ~ siphà EM-cloud
 yènnàk khúnbo ~ i`nàk khúnbo-rich
 yènsáng ~ i`nsáng curry

e/i - céngzhì ~ cìng-hì-shampoo
 yèrì ~ i`rì-soup

e/ou—théłhó`u théłhó`u ~ thínhó`u thínhó`u-often

Final -e preceded by -o, -u and -oi is in free variation with -i.

o/e—osè ~ o`si`-this
 u/e—kúmzég,EM ~ kúmzing,EM-turban
 oi/e—khoi`zén,EM ~ khoi`zing,EM-mind

Medial -e preceded by -o, i and -oi is in free variation with -i.

o/e - mophèto`i,EM ~ mopi`zà,EM-friend
 i/e—pi`rénhó`i ~ pi`rinhó`i-a kind of fruit
 oi,e—moidengu,EM ~ moidingu,EM-king of the Meiteis.

2 . 2 . 5 . 6 *e>u*

Initial -e followed by u>u.

sèkcùp.>úcùp-spigot

Final -e preceded by -o and -oi>u

o/e - sònglén>so`rù-bone
 oi/e—lò`iko`irén>kónnúng-royal palace

Medial -e preceded by -u, -ou and -ao>u.

u/e—nóngbùmlén>númi`tcùp-the whole day
 púnémbo>khúrúmba-bow down

ou/e—lò`u cénbo>lò`u kùmba-going to the paddy land for ploughing

ao/e—náothémsò`i>náosúm i`so`i cradle song

yèkno,EM diminutive primary infix is changed into lúnó in the modern Manipuri.

60—Manipuri Grammar

ngo'uyèkbo>ngourùnobo-a little white

2. 2. 5. 7. *e>o*

Final -e preceded by -a and -u>o

a/e—lo'mmàthèt>lo'mdón-suburb

u/e—úrèk>úro`k-eqret

Medial -e preceded by -o>o.

o/e—ko'rélá,LW>káron-a kind of fruit

2. 2. 5. 8 *e>oi*

Final -o preceded by -a>oi.

málém>lo`ibàk-earth

Medial e preceded by -a>oi.

làpthètpo>nàtho`iba conceal

2. 2. 5. 9 *e>ao*

Final -e preceded by -u>ao.

yùmlén>yùnzáo great house

2. 2. 5. 10 *Loss of -e*

-e in the unstressed syllables of some EM words is lost due to elision of these syllables. Such elided syllables are shown below :—

khén—nùngkhén>nùng-stone

lén—khóirénhi`>«hóihì`-honey

pirén>pí-tear

pùnggo`irén>pùng mound

ném—sèmnémbo>sémbo-mend

téng—mò`itréng>mò`i-fire

thet—lo'mdáithèt>lo'mdái-outskirt

yeng—ho'yéngsi`t>ho`ngci`t-day after tomorrow

míyéngsén>míngsén-mirror

2.2.6 -o

2.2.6.1 -o>ɔ

Initial -o followed by -a, -i, -ou and -ai>ɔ.

o/i—khómsí>sò'mzèt-comb

o/ou—sónglò'u>sò'rù-bone

o/ai—kónggài>tò'ngkhài-half

Final -o preceded by -o>ɔ.

sàyo`kkón>sàyo`kso`ng-zoo

Medial -o preceded by -ɔ, -a, -i, -ou, -ai and -ao>ɔ.

ə/o—kò'bó+no+lo`ibo+lo`ng>kò'bro`ng-silk

lóngno+khóngdo+loúbo+mowóng>lóngkhrò'u- a technique of wrestling

a/o—wàhómbo>wà hò'ngbo-ask

i/o—sò'nági+khóng+yá+khá>sò'nákhwa-a term of address to a Manipuri Rajkumar

séri`so`nbo>wà sò'kpo-oath

ou/o—lo`u;ónbo>loúnombó-deceive

ai/o—láiro`klèn>láiro`mlén-heaven

ao/o—paóhómbo>paótho`ngnobo-make allegations

2.2.6.2. Free variation of -o with -ɔ

Initial -o followed by -ɔ, -a and -o is in free variation with -ɔ.

o/ɔ—póróm ~ pò'rò'm-plan

o/ɔ—póllángkho`k ~ pò'llángkho`k-cloth stand

póthàp ~ pò'thàp-rule

o/o—tóróngkhóngcàk ~ tò'róngkhóngcàk-a medicinal herb

Final -o preceded by -e is also in free variation with -ɔ.

khénzóng,EM ~ khénzo`ng,EM-vestibule

2.2.6.3 o>a

Initial -o followed by -o, and -oi>a.

o/o—dóctór,LW>dàktór

o/oi—yómlo`i>moyám-many

62—Manipuri Grammar

Final -o preceded by -ɔ and -e > a.

ɔ/o—pho'mdo'ng > pho'mbàk-a raised platform
to'mlón > to'mpàk-valley

e/o—téngko'k > téngpàk-clod

Medial -o preceded by -ɔ, -a and -o > a.

ɔ/o—pho'madngkho'ng > pho'mbán-throne
wàro'm photto tho'kpo > phottobo- tábo-misrepresent one as
being unreasonable

a/o—wà pho'ngbo > wà tàkpo-disclose

o/o—kwágo'k hónbo > kwágo'k hánbo-give bribe
po'tho'kpo > po'tthábo-take rest

2. 2. 6. 4 o > i

Initial -o followed by -a, -ou and -oi > i.

o/a—lónvámbi'cà > úri't-tailor bird

o/ou—nóngtho'u > níngtho'u-king
nóngtho'urén > níngtho'urén-emperor
nóngtho'úro'ibàk > níngtho'úro'ibàk-sky
nóngtho'utúrénn > níngtho'utúrénn-milky way

o/oi—ko'nggo'i > kisi-knot

Final -o preceded by -ɔ > i.

konglon > kangsi-bell

Medial -o preceded by -i, -u and -ou > i.

i/o—i'rónnúnn > i'síng mənúnng-inside the water
thi'bo'ngbi' > thi'ri'n-intestine

u/o—núnn:ónbo > núnn:sibo-love

ou/o—tho'udóngbo > tho'uzínbo-incite

2. 2. 6. 5 Free variation of -o with -i

Final -o preceded by -oi is in free variation with -i.
moidon,EM ~ moining,EM-heel

2. 2. 6. 6 o>u

Initial -o followed by the simple vowels (monophthongs) and -oi>u.

o/ɔ—kho'ng+to+lo'ubo+məwóng>khurə'u-obstacle

kho'ng+no+nətpə+po't>khunət-pedal

kho'ng+no+tábo+məphə'm>khùbo'm-abode

thóngbo>thúngbo-reach

o/a—nóngzà>númit-day

nóngsá>núngsá-sunshine

o/i—kho'ng+ki+ɔcéngbo+sə'rək>khuzéng-ankle

nóngthín>núngthín-day time

o/u—khong+pu+tengnəbo+pot>khudeng-tray

o/e—nóngdréng>núti-every day

o/o—tóngbón>túnggón-a small basket for keeping fish

o/oi—kho'ngdə'iphi>khudə'i-towel

Final -o preceded by -ɔ, -i, and -ai>u.

o/o—no'm+to+póbo+po't>no'mbùt-a bundle of thatch

i/o—kiko't>kékù-an indoor game

yaisa+ki+kon>yaiskun-name of a division of Imphal

ai/o—páibóm>páitú-bag

kúno',EM marker of negative imperative mood and súno',EM marker of 'let do' (third person) are changed to kə'nù and sə'nù respectively in Modern Manipuri.

cə'tkúnù>cə'tkə'nù-(you) don't go (imperative)

cə'tsúno'>cə'tsə'nù-let him/they go

Medial -o preceded by -ɔ, -i, -əu and -oi>u.

o/o—sə'gólno+cəbo+həwái>sə'gúlái-horse bean

i/o—yì'm,EM+móngbo,EM>i'múng-family

əu/o—kə'dəúnóngi>kə'rínúngi-for what reason

oi/o—láiko'i thóngbo>láiko'i thúngbo-suffering from ring worm

2. 2. 6. 7. Free variation of -o with -u

Initial -o followed by -a, -u, -e and -ao is in free variation with -u.

64—Manipuri Grammar

o/a—mórá ~ múrá, LW—a kind of stool
nóngnáng, EM ~ núngnáng, EM—sky

o/u—póng:hút ~ púng:hút—pincers
o/e—tóngzég, EM ~ túngzég, EM—boat
o/u—kóráo ~ kúráo—a kind of tree

Final -o preceded by -ou is also in free variation with -u.
mothoubong, EM ~ mothoubung, EM—court yard

2. 2. 6. 8 o > e

Final -o preceded by -o and -oi > e.

o/o—ko'ktho'n > kokyèt—turban
oi/o—lo'iróng > lo'iténg—ornament

2. 2. 6. 9 Free variation of -o with -e

Initial -o preceded by -a is in free variation with -e.
lónggà ~ lénggà—contemporary

2. 2. 6. 10 -o > oi

Initial -o followed by -o > oi.
lónkho'ng yètpo > mro'i yètpo—argue

Final -o preceded by -o > oi.
po'tho'm > po'ro'i—knot

2. 2. 6. 11 -o > ou

Initial -o followed by -u > ou.
róhú, LW > ro'u—a kind of fish

Medial -o preceded by -i > ou.
mi'róngkho'n > tho'ugo'n—attendance

2. 2. 6. 12 -o > oi

Medial -o preceded by -oi > oi.
wàro'm lo'ikho'i lómbo > wà lóibo—settle a matter

2.2.6.13 Loss of -o

-o in the unstressed syllables of some BM words is lost due to elision of these syllables. Such elided syllables are shown below :—

- ko't—cèpko'tlóng>lóng-a fishing trap
 túngko't>mótung—afterwards
 khón—lánbáokhón>lánbáo-report on the battle
 páotàkkón>páotàk-advice
 lón—lónlù>lù-a fishing trap
 lónyĩm>yùm-house
 móm—mómnu>nùpi'-woman
 nóng—nóngso'gón>so'gón-horse
 óng—khó'nóng>khó'n-a weighing implement
 nó'u:óng>nó'u-oar
 só—thúmsóbúng>thúmkhóng-salt well
 sóng—sóngkíbo>kíbo-fear
 tón—tón phángnobo>phángnobo-bifurcate
 wándón>i'wán-a pot for cooking curry
 thong—lùktho'ng>lùk-meal (honorific)
 só'kpántho'ng>só'k-countenance

2.2.7 oi

2.2.7.1 oi>>o.

Initial -oi followed by -o>>o.
 co'itho'ng>motho'ng-next

Final -oi preceded by a>>o.
 khàlo'i>khónglò'm-ditch
 mómánho'i>mómánnobo-companion

Medial -oi preceded by -i>>o
 cing+ki+loibak>cerbak-edible rocks pieces

2.2.7.2 Free variation of -oi with -o

Initial -oi followed by -a, -i, -e, -o, -oi and -ai is in free variation with -o.

66—Manipuri Grammar

oi/a—oi'hāk ~ yo'hāk-I

loi'káng ~ lo'káng-soot

oi/i—ho'ri'khágo'k ~ ho'ri'khágo'k-stone apple

lo'iyí ~ lo'yí-line

oi/e—ho'yèn ~ ho'yèn—a kind of fruit

ko'ithén ~ ko'thén-market

lo'iyéng ~ lo'yéng-tongue

oi/o—lo'iyón ~ lo'yo'n-stem of young bamboo plant

oi/oi—co'iro'i,EM ~ co'ro'i,EM-cloth

co'ikho'i ~ co'kho'i-full stop

lo'yo'i ~ lo'yo'i—a mallet for levelling floor

oi/ai—ho'iyái ~ ho'yái—a kind of fruit

Medial -oi preceded by -o and -i is in free variation with -o.

oi/oi—lo'ngyo'izoi ~ lo'ngyo'zo'i-an implement for washing yarn

i/oi mi,tó'ilo'ibák ~ mo'itro'bák-country of the Meiteis

mi'ro'ibák ~ mo'rbák-foreign country

2. 2. 7. 3 oi > a

Final -oi preceded by -e and -oi > a

e/oi—yèttro'i > yètnà-right hand side

oi/oi—óitro'i > oínà-left hand side

Medial -oi preceded by -u > a.

u/oi—khúnkho'iwái > khúndápho'm-area of colonisation

2. 2. 7. 4 Free variation of -oi with -a.

Final -oi preceded by -a is in free variation with -a.

ko'nglo'i,EM ~ ko'nglà-capital

2. 2. 7. 5 oi > i

Initial -oi followed by -i > i.

kho'ibi'k > khíbi'k-many

Final -oi preceded by -o and -a > i.

o/oi - okábo + cōi > káci`-crook
 oko`nbo + cōi > kóci-hook
 khùtno + pàibo + cōi > khúrzi`-rein

a/oi - làk:hōi > cō`hi`-year
 mábo`i > dári`-varandah

khō'ing, EM-primary infix expressing association is changed into minno in Modern Manipuri.

síkhō'ingbo > síminnoobo-die with a person

2. 2. 7. 6 Free variation of -oi with -i

Initial -oi followed by -i, -oi and -ou is in free variation with -i.

oi/i—mō`ithínzōi ~ mi`thínzōi-an implement for taking out burning charcoal

oi/oi—mō`itō'i ~ mi`tō'i-the Meiteis

mōitōilōibak ~ mi`trō'ilō`ibāk-the country of the Meiteis

oi/ou—mō`ihō'urón ~ mi`hō'urón-genealogy

Final -oi preceded by -a is in free variation with -i.

khàlō'i, EM ~ khàri`, EM-canal

wánglō'i, EM ~ wángbi`, EM-wine

2. 2. 7. 7 oi > u

Initial -oi followed by -u > u.

lōikhūm > lukhūm-portion of the bed towards the head

2. 2. 7. 8 oi > o

Medial -oi preceded by -a > o.

làrō`i làthùp > o`rō`n othùp secrecy

2. 2. 7. 9 oi > ai

Initial -oi followed by -oi > ai.

lō`ikhō`itábo > láikhái tábo emerge a clear picture

Final -oi is preceded by a > ai.

lángmō i > mōmài-face

68—Manipuri Grammar

66—

Medial -oi preceded by -a > ai

ai/a- yáko'ibo > yákaíbo-awake
yáko'irón > yákaírón—a kind of song

oi/i- 2. 2. 7. 10 oi > oi

oi/e- Medial -oi preceded by -o > oi.

lo'ndo'inobo > lo'nkhóibo-speak with improper accent.

oi/o 2. 2. 7. 11 Loss of oi

oi/o. oi in the unstressed syllables of some EM words is lost due to the elision of these syllables. Such elided syllables are shown below :—

oi/a co'i—co'iro'tpo—interval
co'irèppo > lèppo—stop
co'iro'inobo > lo'inobo—associate

o/oi co'izénnoobo > cénnobo—involve

i/oi wáico'i > wái—work
cf. yáiso'ngbo free from work

ho'i—ho'iko'ubo > ko'ubo—short (as of cloth)

2. kha'i—kha'kkha'i > makhok handle

khúngkho'ibo > khóngbo—cry of the bird

e/o khóngkho'iwái > khóngpho'm—site for playing musical instrument
oi/

lo'i—lèptro'i > lèp—height

u/c mo'i—naómo'i > hináo—canoe
núngsámo'i > núngsá—sunshine

2. no'i—ngáono'ibo > ngáobo—mad

ko 2. 2. 8 ou

2. 2. 2. 8. 1 ou > o

Medial -ou preceded by -o > o

ti pho'mdo'u ningtho'u > ongo'm otho'u high officials

2. 2. 8. 2. Free variation of -ou with -o

Initial -ou followed by -i, -u, -a and -oi is in free variation with -o.

ou/i—louwái ~ lo'wái-forehead

ou/u—lo'ubúk ~ lo'búk-paddy land

ou/o—kho,ubo'm ~ kho'bo'm-throat

lo'uhón ~ lo'hón-young paddy plants for transplantation

ngo'ubóng ~ ngobóng-a kind of shawl

to'uwo't ~ to'wo't-a weaving implement

ou/oi—tho'uwóidobo ~ tho'wóidobo-indifferent

Final -ou preceded by -a is in free variation with -o.

wánglo'u.EM ~ wángbo'n,EM-sky

Medial -ou preceded by -e and -oi is in free variation with -o,

o/ou—ténno'uwà ~ téno'wá-parrot

oi/ou—ho'ino'uzóm ~ ho'no'zóm-a kind of fruit

ko'do'u-marker of 'must' may also occur as 'ko'do'.

co'tko'do'uboni ~ co'tko'do'boni-we/you/they must go.

so'kko'do'uboni ~ so'kko'do'bo'boni-we/you/they must sing.

2. 2. 8. 3 ou > a

Initial -ou followed by -o > a.

koúro'ng > káro'ng-crook

Initial -ou followed by -o, and a > a.

o/ou - ko'nglo'u > ko'ngphán-dry land

a/ou - cáml'o'u > là-plantain leaf

Medial -ou preceded by -o, -i and -oi > a.

o/ou—moh'o'u phobo > mosà phobo-healthy

i/ou—mi'tko'ri' ho'ubo > mi'tko'ri' kabo-angry with blood red eyes

oi/ou—lo'itòyo't > yo'tpàk-spade

2. 2. 8. 4 Free variation of -ou with -a

Final -ou preceded by -oi is in free variation with -a.

hoíro'u,EM ~ háyá,EM-a hymn sung in Laiharaoba dance

70--Manipuri Grammar

2. 2. 8 5 -ɔu>i.

Final -ɔu preceded by -ɔ>i.

kə̀nhə̀'u>kən`thi`-spirit

tə̀klò'u>tə̀ksi`-sign of impatient rage

Medial -ɔu preceded by -ɔ>i.

kə́'də́unóngi>kə́'rinúnggi-for what reason

ho`ungái,EM primary infix expressing 'worth doing' is changed into ni`ngái in Modern Manipuri.

hàihə̀'ungái<hàini`ngài-worth saying

yéng:hə̀'ungái>yéngni`ngái-worth seeing

2. 2. 8. 6 -ɔu>u.

Final -ɔu preceded by -o>u.

sónglò'u>sə̀rù-bone

Medial -ɔu preceded by -e>u.

lèplò'u sínbo>məhùt sínbo-substitute

2 2. 8. 7. Free variation of -ɔu with -u

Initial -ɔu followed by -i is in free variation with -u.

hə̀'uzi`k ~ húzi`k-now

2. 2. 1. 8 -ɔu>o.

Initial -ɔu followed by -e>o.

hə̀'urén>hórén-after a little while

2 . 2 . 8. 9. Free variation of -ɔu with -o.

Initial -ɔu followed by -o and -ai is in free variation with -o.

ɔu/o--pə́'uro`n ~ pórə`n-bolt

əu/ai--óuráibo ~ óráibo-read

2. 2. 8. 10 *ou>oi*

Final -ou preceded by -o>ei.

mərə'u>mərə'i-argument

Medial -ou preceded by ou>ei.

mərəu ləubə>mərəu lə'ibə-have mental reservation.

lə'unə,EM primary diminutive infix is changed into lə'inə in Modern Manipuri.

ngàngləunəbə>ngànglə'inəbə reddish

2. 2. 8. 11 *ou>ao.*

Initial -ou followed by -o>ao.

sə'umánbə>sáobə-angry

2. 2. 8. 12 *Loss of -ou*

-ou in the unstressed syllables of some EM words is lost due to the elision of these syllables. Such elided syllables are shown below :—

kə'u—kə'utrángko'nə>ko'nə-bend

lə'u—màklə'urén>məmək-son-in-law,

páilə'urén>məbái-elder sister's husband

sənə'urén>məsèn-younger sister's husband

sə'u—kàosəú>kàə-a fishing trap

thə'u—thə'ukáobə>káobə-forget

thə'ukhámbə>khámbə dissuade

thə'unəkpə>nəkpə-hire

thəuthingbə>thingbə-prevent

məbúng thə'u>məbúng-elder brother (a term used by the females)

ti'nthro'k yángdə'u>ti'nthro'k-earth worm

ɣə'u—khəyə'u>kho'ng-leg

2. 2. 9 *ai*

2. 2. 9. 1 *ai>ə*

Initial -ai followed by ə, -e and -oi>ə,

72—Manipuri Grammar

ai/ɔ—ngáikho`k>ngo`hàk-for a little while
sáigo`ng lo`i ho`nbo>sogúntɔubo-burglary

ai/ɔ—khàicèt>mocèt-piece

ai/oi—háimo`i>momo`i-tail

Final -ai preceded by -a and -oi>ɔ.

a/ai—càktáwái>càktápho`m-shelter of the birds

i`rànwái>i`rànphe`m-ferry

khúndáwái>khúndápho`m-area of colonisation

oi/ai—khóngkho`iwá>khóngpho`m-site for the playing of musical instruments

2. 2. 9. 2 ai>a.

Final -ai preceded by -ɔ, -a and -u>a.

ɔ/ai—ɔràì>lì`klà-dew

a/ai—thángwái>ɔwáng-north

u/ai—sùmài>sùmàng-court yard

Medial -ai preceded by -i, and -oi>a.

i/ai—i`kàikhàng>kàngkho`n-mosquito net

momi` páibo>pakho`tɔo-nervous

oi/ai—sàgo`i ngáiro`ng>sàko`i náto`i-kinsmen

2. 2. 9. 3 Free variation with -a.

Initial -ai followed by -ɔ, -e, -o and -ou is in free variation with -a.

ai/ɔ—yáingo`ng ~ yángo`ng-tarmaric

ai/e—láiyéng ~ láyéng-medical attendance

láiyengso`ng ~ láyéngso`ng-hospital

yàirèkɔ ~ yàrèkɔ-halt the night

yàirèkso`ng ~ yàrèkso`ng-restaurant

ai/o—màiyò`k ~ màyo`k-opposite

màiyò`knobi ~ màyo`knobi-assistant midwife

màiyò`m ~ màyo`m-screen

ai/ou—yáingo`u ~ yángo`u-a medicinal plant

Medial -ai preceded by -i and -u is in free variation with -a.

i/ai—phingáirùk ~ phingárùk-a covered basket

u/ai—thoraimoca ~ thoramoca-son of a whore

2. 2. 9. 4 ai>i

Final -ai preceded by i>i.

ti`klái>li`kli-glass

sínnái>sínmí worker

2. 2. 9. 5 ai>u.

Final -ai preceded by -o>u.

khóngnái>khóngdrúm-gourd

2. 2. 9. 6 ai>e

Final -ai preceded by -a>e.

tángdái>làkyén-joint

Medial -ai preceded by -o>e

lò'mháibo>lò'mhénbo-obstinate

2. 2. 9. 7 Free variation of -ai with -e

Initial -ai followed by -o is in free variation with -e.

táibo'ngbán ~ téngbán-universe

2. 2. 9. 8 ai>o

Final -ai preceded by -o and -oi>o.

o/ai—nóngmái>nóngdón-sky

oi/ai—lò'ikù loirái>lò'ikùt lò'ito`ng-unlevelled ground

Medial -ai preceded by -o, -i and -oi>o.

o/ai—ko'dáiro'm>ko'dómdo-where

i/ai—niyáipi`>ningtho'u óngbi`-wife of the king

oi/ai—lò'ikù loirái>lò'ikùt lò'ito`ng-unlevelled ground

74—Manipuri Grammar

2. 2. 9. 9 *ai > oi*

Final -ai preceded by -o and -a > oi.

o/ai—ci'ngno + kháibo + lo'm > ci'ngkho'i-north-east
khwàngdo + ngáibo + cáng > khàngo'i-half, middle
a/ai—wàhài > wàho'i word

Medial -ai preceded by -a and -i > oi.

a/ai—wàhàipo'réng > wàho'ipo'réng-sentence
i/ai—sibogi + kàidóngpho'mdo + co'nlabo + mi' > sígo'izo'n— a person
on the point of death

2. 2. 9. 10 *Free variation of -ai with -oi.*

Initial -oi followed by -u is in free variation with -oi.
màimútón,EM ~ moi'mútónsón,EM—a kind of head gear

Medial ai preceded by -o is also in free variation with -oi,
ko'dáidogi ~ ko'idogi—from where
ko'dáidono ~ ko'idono—where

2. 2. 9. 11 *Loss of -ai*

-ai in the unstressed syllables of some EM words is lost due to the elision of these syllables. Such elided syllables are shown below :—

cái—cáico'tpa > co'tpo—wet
hái—háimo'i > mómoi—tall
háisi'tpo > si'tpo—sweep
lái—ti'nái > ti'n—worm
ngái—ngáikhàngbo > khàngbo—endure
ngáino'knabo > no'knabo—mock at
tái—sùngdái > mósung—one fourth
wái—wáiphàtpo > phàtpo—make a passage
wáithúngbo > thúngbo—reach

2. 2. 10 ao

2. 2. 10. 1 ao > a.

Final -ao preceded by -ɔ > a.

ɔsáo > i'ngngà name of a Manipuri month

Medial -ao preceded by -e > a.

pirén táobo > pítábo-shed tear

2. 2. 10. 2 Free variation of -ao with -a

Initial -ao followed by -a, -u, -o, -ɔi and -ɔu is in free variation with -a.

ao/a—na'owà, EM ~ náwà, EM-baby

yáowà, EM ~ vávà, EM-voice

ao/u—khaobúnái ~ khábúnái-attendant

ao/o—kháo'on ~ kháwón—a kind of shawl

náohóng ~ náhóng-cloth for comforting baby on the back

páokhón ~ pákhón-errand

páokho'ng ~ pákho'ng-riddle

ao/ɔi—tháomò'i ~ thángmò'i-lamp

ao/ɔu—yáorɔ'u, EM ~ yáorɔ'u, BM-animal

2. 2. 10. 3 ao > u

Final -ao is preceded by i > u.

ci'ngzáo > ci'ngsù:ú-teak

2. 2. 10. 4 ao > ɔu

Initial -ao followed by -i > ɔu.

káobi' sì'nglò'i > kóubi' sì'ngnáng-reed

Final -ao preceded by -ɔ > ɔu.

tho'ráo > háro'u-grass hopper

Medial -ao preceded by -ɔ, -a and -ai > ɔu.

a/ao—ngà + cháobo > ngáho'u-a kind of fish

76—Manipuri Grammar

tádo+acáobo>táco'u-elder brother

thàng+acáobo>thàngzo'u-a kind of dao

a/ao—mài+cáobo+mi>màico'u,EM-scholar

2. 2. 10. 5 Free variation of -ao with -ou

Initial -ao followed by -e is in free variation with -ou.

káožéng ~ ko'uzéng-grass hopper

Final -ao preceded by -u is also in free variation with -ou.

sùknáo sóináó,EM ~ sùkno'u sóino'u,EM-offspring

2. 2. 10. 6 ao>ui

Initial -ao followed by -a>ui.

háokàp>húi-a measure of about eight inches

2. 2. 10. 7 Loss of -ao

-ao in the unstressed syllables of some EM words is lost due to the elision of these syllables. Such elided syllables are shown below :—

háó—tənháo>tə'n-bread

páo—páoho'ngbo>ho'ngbo-ask

páono'knobo>no'knobo-mock at

páothémbo>thémbo-persuade

páoyábo>yábo-agree

2. 2. 11 -oi

2. 2. 11. 1 oi>>o

Final -oi preceded by -a and -e>o.

a/oi—pángso'i>pánggo'n-strength

e/oi—téno'i>ténowà-parrot

2. 2. 11. 2 oi>a

Initial -oi followed by -oi>a.

ko'izo'i>kàngzo'i-hockey stick

Final -oi preceded by -a>a.

ngàto`i>ngò`khà-a kind of fish

Medial -oi preceded by -ɔ>a.

phò`mmóimi`t>phò`mbán-coronation

2. 2. 11. 3. *Free variation of -oi with -a.*

Initial -oi followed by -ou is in free variation with -a.

hoirou,EM ~ naya,EM-a hymn sung in the Laiharaoba dance.

2. 2. 11. 4 *oi>i*

Initial -oi followed by -a>i.

lo`iyá to`myá>ci`ngyá to`myá-areas near the hills and the valley

Final -oi preceded by -ɔ, -a and -o>i.

ɔ/oi—lo`mlo`i>lo`mbi`-road

a/oi—lánlo`i>lánmi`-soldier

o/oi—kónggói>kísi-knot

2. 2. 11. 5 *oi>u*

Final -oi preceded by -ɔ>u.

lo`mlo`i>morùp friend

Medial -oi preceded by -ɔ>u.

moko`i phàbo>mopùm phabo-attain full growth

2. 2. 11. 6 *Free variation of -oi with -u*

Final -oi preceded by -a is in free variation with u.

pàklo`i,EM ~ pàktù,EM-turban

2. 2. 11. 7 *oi>e*

Final -oi preceded by -i>e,

phíro`i>phízèt-dress

Medial oi preceded by -ɔ and -ai>e.

ɔ/yi—lo`m thóibo>lo`m hénbo-obstinate

78—Manipuri Grammar

ai/oi—láithóizínlo`kpo>láiná hénzínbo-be in the critical stage of illness

2. 2. 11. 8 oi>o

Medial -oi preceded by -o, -o and -oi>o.

o/oi—sə`góihi`dák>sə`gónhi`dák-a medicinal plant

o/oi—sə`gón kho`nggóinabo>sə`góntóngbo-to ride horse

oi/oi—lo`iko`irén>kónnúng-royal palace

2. 2. 11. 9. Free variation of -oi with -o

Initial -oi followed by -a, -i, and -u is in free variation with -o.

oi/a—ho`iyá,EM ~ ho`yá,EM-acceptance

lo`iyáro`m ~ lo`yáro`m-areas of Manipur near the hills in the west

oi/i—khóihí` ~ khóihí`-honey

nóiningkhói ~ nóngningkhói-pheasant

oi/u—khóiyùm,EM ~ khóyùm,EM-god

lo`iyùmló`i ~ lo`yùmló`i-a kind of flower

lo`iyùmbó ~ lo`yùmbó,EM-husband

2. 2. 11. 10 oi>>oi

Initial -oi followed by -ou>>oi.

hóihó`u>sə`ihó`u-opening song

2. 2. 11. 11 oi>ai

Final -oi preceded by -i>ai.

phági zə`gói<phági zúgái-joke

Medial -oi preceded by -u and -e>ai.

u/oi—núngói sínóibo>núngái yáiphobo-prosperous

e/oi—sénkóibo>i`káibo-shame

2. 2. 11. 12 Free variation of -oi with -ai

Initial -oi followed by -ɔ, and -i, is in free variation with -ai.

oi/ɔ - moibo,EM ~ ɔmaibo,EM-priest

oi/i - moibi,EM ~ ɔmaibi,EM-priestess

2. 2. 11. 13 Loss of -oi

-oi in the unstressed syllables of some EM words is lost due to the elision of these syllables. Such elided syllables are shown below :—

hói—hóisèmbɔ>sèmbɔ-mend

hóiyáɔ>yáɔ-agree

ko`i—lùkko`i>lùk-meal (honorific)

pùnggo`irén>pùng-mound

sə`kko`i>sə`k-countenance

thóiko`ibo>thóibo-superior

kho`i -kho`isáɔɔ>sáɔɔ-angry

lo`i—yómlo`i>məyám-many

mói - móimi`t>mi`t-eye

sónmóibo>sónɔ-praise

thói—tházɔthóibo>tházɔɔ-belleve

wángthóibo>wangɔ-high

yo i—yo`icanɔ>cánɔ-kind

yo`innɔɔ>cánnɔɔ-intimate

2. 2. 12 ui

2. 2. 12. 1 ui>ɔ

Initial -ui followed by -ai>ɔ.

həiyái>məyái-impact

Final -ui preceded by -i>ɔ.

li`hùi>mori`-link

80—Manipuri Grammar

2. 2. 12. 2 *Free variation of -ui with -oi.*

Initial -ui followed by -i is in free variation with -oi.

púiding,EM ~ phóiding,EM-tkatch

2. 2. 12. 3 *Loss of ui.*

-ui in phúi, an unstressed syllable of some EM words is lost due to the elision of such syllable.

i`nphúi>i`n-fishing net

lùphúi>lù-a fishing trap

2. 3 INTERNAL MORPHOPHONEMIC CHANGES IN LOAN WORDS

Vowels in some loan words undergo morphophonemic changes in accordance with the rules governing these changes of the words in the native words. Such loan words are from the NIA languages.

2. 3. 1 ɔ

2. 3. 1. 1 a>ɔ

Initial -a followed by -a, -i, -e and -o>ɔ.

a/a—badam>bɔ'dám-almonn

cangdal>cɔ'ndál-a chandala

gangza>gɔ'nzá-hemp

a/i—almirah>ɔ'mbári

a/e—flannel>phɔ'láli

a/o—andolon>ɔndolon-agitation

Final -a preceded by -ɔ>ɔ.

ɔmca>cámɔ'c-spoon

Medial -a preceded by -ɔ and -a>ɔ.

ɔ/a—khejana>kházɔ'ná-revenue

mosala>musola-spices

a/a—aratrik>árɔ'ti-waving of lights before a deity

2.3.1.2. *i* > *ɔ*

Final -i preceded by -a and -u > *ɔ*.

a/i—jati > zàt-people

u/i—musti > mùt-handful

2.3.1.3 *u* > *ɔ*

Final -u preceded by -a > *ɔ*.

jamun > zám black berry

Medial -u preceded by -ɔ, and -a > *u*.

ɔ/u—nomuna > nómoná-model

somudro > somodru-sea

a/u—kanungo > káno'ngú-a revenue officer

2.3.1.4 *o* > *ɔ*

Initial -o followed by -a > *ɔ*.

sona > sɔ'ná-gold

2.3.2 *a*

2.3.2.1 *ɔ* > *a*

Initial -ɔ followed by -ɔ and -a > *a*.

ɔ/ɔ--ɔcar > ácar-pickle

ortho > áartho-meaning

koṭoni > káti-scissors

khajana > kházo'ná-revenue

makhon > mákhon-butter

pangkho > pángkhá-fan

ɔ/a--ɔna > áná-a coin

cokka > cákà-wheel

godha > gádhá-ass

jogah > zágá-place

kolanmok > kálánimúk-a kind of rock saít

kotari > kátári-a kind of knife

ronda > rámdár-plane

৯২—Manipuri Grammar

Initial -o followed by -i, -u and -o > a.

o/i—omrito > amrito'-nectr

obir > ábér—a kind of red powder

omin > ámin—a revenue officer

bogica > bágán tea estate

bonsi > bási—flute

o/u—olu > álú—potátto

o/o—dōroga > dárúká—police

Final -o preceded by -o > a.

bondhok > bō'ndhán—mortgage

pongkho > pángkhá—fan

Medial -o preceded by -o, -u and -c > æ.

o/o—olkōtora > o'mpáká—betumen

bondh govi > bō'ndhán kóbí—cabbage

u/o kundo', LW + loi > kúndálō'i—a kind of flower

c/o—tejpotta > tézbāt—bay leaf

2. 3. 2. 2. i > a

Final -i preceded by -o, -u and -o > a.

o/i—dhomki > dhō'mká—threat

u/i—muli > múlá—a kind of edible root

truti > túká—fault

o/i—longoti > léngótá—dress of the wrestler

moti > mùktá—jewel

Medial -i preceded by -o and -a > a.

o/i—bogica > bágán—tea estate

a/i—almirah > ombari

2. 3. 2. 3 u > a

Initial -u followed by -a and -u > a.

u/a—guvak > kwá—betel nut

u/u—hujur > házúr—sire

2. 3. 2. 4 e > a

Initial -e followed by -a > a.

e/a—chhena > sáná-a milk food

Medial -e preceded by i > a.

thikedar > thikádár-contractor

2 3. 2. 5 o > a

Initial -o followed by -o > a.

doctor > dáktór

Final -o preceded by i > -a.

i—rikshaw > ri`ksà

Medial -o preceded by -a > a.

tarpoline > tripál

2. 3. 3 i

2. 3. 3. 1 o > i

Initial -o followed by -a, -i and -e > i.

o/a—nosa > nísá-intoxication

o/i—jønjir > zinzúr-a kind of gold necklace

o/e jølebi > zilibi-a kind of sweet meat

Medial -o preceded by -o, -a, -i and -u > i.

o/o—køtørni > káti-scissors

møndøra > mø'ndilá-a kind of cymbal

tøbla > tøpila-small tambourine

a/o—kølanøøk > kálánimøk-a kind of rock salt

sølgram > sáligrám-a sacred stone worshipped by the Hindus.

i/o—firøngi > firingi-Englishman

u/o—jurmana > zørí-fine

pørøn, LW + pø > púrifo-multiplication

84—Manipuri Grammar

2. 3. 3. 2 *a>i*

Initial -a followed by -a and -o>i.

a/a—chbata>sátin-umbrella

a/o—tarpoline>tripal

Final -a preceded by -o, -i, -u and -o>i.

o/a—jurmana>zorí-fine

i/a—almirah>o'mbári

sikka>síkí-a coin worth twenty five paise

u/a—khuta>khúti-post

o/a—jhola>zhúli-begging bowl

2. 3. 3. 3 *e>i*

Final -e preceded by -a>i

flannel>pho'láli

Medial -e preceded by -e>i.

jolebi>zilibí-a kind of sweet meat

Initial -e followed by -a is in the free variation with -i.

kéráni ~ kírání-clerk

2. 3. 3. 4 *-o>i*

Initial -o followed by -a>i.

kho:a>khírsá-a milk food

Medial -o preceded by -u>i.

purohit>púrit-priest

2. 3. 3. 5 *Some sources of -i*

-i is also obtained from the following words :—

inch>inci

khan>khóni-mine

khar>khó'ri-alkaline

pokhōr>púkhri-pond,

2. 3. 4 u

2. 3. 4. 1 o > u

Initial -o followed by -o, -a and -u > u.

o/o — grōhōn > gūrōn-eclipse

o/a — mōsala > mūsō'lá-spices

prōbal > pūhān-coral

o/u — nōgun > lūgūn-sacred thread worn by the Hindus

Final -o preceded by -o, and -u > u.

o/o — gōngdhōk > kō'ntrūk-sulphur

kōlanōmōk > kālānīmūk-a kind of rock salt

u/c — hukmō > hūkūm-order

sōmudrō > sō'mō'drū-sea

Medial -o preceded by -o, -i -u and -e > u.

o/o — khōnjōri > khō'nzūri-a kind of drum

kōsttōri > kō'sturi-musk

i/o — bījōli > bīzuli-electricity

u/c — gudōri > gūdūli-a kind of quilt

sūrōngō > sūrūng-tunnel

e/o — kētōki > kētūki-a kind of flower

2. 3. 4. 2. a > u

Final -a preceded by -u > u.

cuna > sūnū-lime

Medial -a preceded by -o > u.

mōhōwōt > mō:wut-person in charge of elephant

2. 3. 4 3 i > u

Initial -i followed by -i > u.

dībīya > ūbīyā-a small vessel for keeping tobacco

Final -i preceded by -o and -i > u.

o/i — jōnjir > zinzūr-a kind of gold necklace

i/i — līci > lēcū-a kind of fruit

86--Manipuri Grammar

2. 3. 4. 4 o>u

Initial -o followed by -c, -a and -i>u.

o/c—dholok>dhúlo`p-a kind of drum

mohar>múhór-a measure of one tola of gold

pokhori>púkhri-pond

o/a—godam>gúdam godown

joda>zúra-pair

jhola>zhúli-begging bowl

o/i—goli>gúli-globule

mosi>múzi-cobbler

moti>mùkta-jewel

topi>tùpi-cap

Initial -o followed by -a is in free variation with -u.

mórá ~ múra-a kind of stool

Final and Medial -o preceded by -o>u.

daroga>dárúka-police

jogotmohon>zogó`múhón-a shed attached to the mandab

rosgola>rósgúlá-a kind of sweet meat

2. 3. 5 e

2. 3. 5. 1 o>e

Initial -o followed by -o and i>e.

o/o—kshottriya>khétrí-a kshatriya

khétrímoyùm-name of a Manipuri family

o/i—longoti>léngótá-dress of a wrestler

2. 3. 5. 2 a>e

Initial -a followed by a>e.

byapar>bépár-trade

byabhar>bébhár-good behaviour

2 3.5.3 *i > e*

Initial -i followed by -o, -a, -i and -u > e.

i/o khicori > khécí-a kind of cooked rice.

i/a—divali > dewáli-a Hindu festival

i/i—biri > bérí-a kind of cigarette

bhindi > bhélo'ndri lady's finger

lici > lécú-a kind of fruit

i/u—bigun > bénggún-bugle

Final -i preceded by -o and -a > e.

o/i—obir > ábér-a kind of red powder

kəmij > kə'méz-shirt

təsbir > tə'sbér-photo

aʃi--napit > nápet-barber

2 3.5.4 *Free variation of -i with -e*

Initial -i followed by -a is in free variation with e.

hirá ~ hérá-diamond

kiráni ~ kéráni-clerk

2 3.6 -o

2.3.6.1 *o > o*

Initial -o followed by -o and -a > o.

o/c—omor > ómór-immortality

kəlom > kólóm-pen

nərok > nórók-hell

sərok > sórók road

tələb > tólo`p-salary

o/a—dosa > dósá-critical juncture

jota > zótá-matted hair

kəmla > kómlá-orange

kortal > kórtál-cymbal

səva > sóbhá>assembly

təsla > tóslá-a kind of utensil

təmal > tómál-a kind of tree

88—Manipuri Grammar

Initial -o followed by -i, -u and -o > o.

o/i—bōndi > bōndi-prisoner

bōri > bōri—small lump of powdered pulse

dōkshina > dōkshinā—money given to the participants in a religious function

sōhi > sōi—signature

o/u—bōkul > bōkúl—a kind of flower

mōsuri > mōsóri—a kind of pulse

nōmuna > nōmō'nā—model

o/o—rōsgola > rōsgúliá—a kind of sweet meat

Final -o preceded by -o and -a > o.

o/o jōnggol > zō'nggón—forest

kōngbōl > kō'mpór—blanket

mōkshōn > mákhón—butter

mōnggol > mōnggol—auspiciousness

mōpdōp > mōpdōp—an open hall near the temple

ōmōr > ōmór—immortality

cōrōn > cōrón—leg

kōlōm > kólóm—pen

mōrhōm > mólóm—ointment

nōrōk > nōrō'k—hell

tōlōb > tólōp—salary

a/o—brahmōn < bāmón—a Brahmin

camōr > cāmōr—a fan made of yak tail

gājōr > gázór—carrot

sasōn > sāsón—administration

simhasōn > singásón—throne

Final -o preceded by -i, -u, e, 'o and oi > o.

i/o—kirtōn > kirtón—a samkirtōn

mirca > mōrō'k—chilli

niyōm > niyóm—rule

u/c—kundo > kúndó—a kind of flower

sunyō > súinó—zero

ɕ/ɔ—bɕsɔn>bɛ́sɔn-powdered pulse

resɔm>résóm-velvet

sebɔk>sébo`k-disciple

ɔ/ɔ—dhɔlɔk>dhulo`p-a kind of drum

mohɔr>múhór-a measure of one tola of gold

ɔi/ɔ—ɔinɔk>áno`p-spectacles

ɔ in some monosyllabic words >ɔ.

bɔn>bón-forest

bɔr>bór-boon

kɔl>kón-machine

mɔn>món-mind

thɔg>tho`k-deceit

2. 3. 6. 2 a>ɔ

Final -a preceded by -e>ɔ.

bɛlna>bélón-a pastery roller

-a in some monosyllabic words >ɔ.

khan>khóní mine

sradh>sóràt-saradha ceremony

2. 3. 6. 3. i>ɔ.

Initial -i followed by -ɔ>ɔ.

mirca>móro`k-chilli

Final -i preceded by -a>ɔ.

akil>ákól-intelligence

nabalig>nábálo`k-mirror

2. 3. 6. 4 u>ɔ

Initial -u followed by -a and -i>ɔ.

u/a—dhura>dhórá-axle

jurmana>zóri-fine

u/l—chhuri>sóri-knife

Final -u preceded by -a>ɔ.

sabun>sápôn-soap

90—Manipuri Grammar

2.3 6.5 $e > o$.

Medial -e preceded by -ə > o.

korela > káron—a kind of fruit

2.4 MORPHOPHONEMIC CHANGES IN THE CONSONANTS

Consonants form initial phonemes of the overwhelming majority of Manipuri syllables. Such initial consonants undergo many morphophonemic changes in the compound words. Unspirated voiceless stops and nasals form the final phonemes of a large number of Manipuri syllables. Such final consonants also undergo some important changes.

2.4.1 *Unspirated voiceless stops in syllable initial position*

2.4.1.1 *Voicing of unspirated voiceless stops.*

Unspirated voiceless stops are voiced in the unstressed syllables of the compound words when they are preceded by the vowels and nasals.

$k > g$

hi + kàbo + sà'ng > hígàsà'ng—boat-house

kho'ng + kàobo + məwóng > kho'nggào—kick

nónə + kə'ubo + úcək > nónggə'ubi—pied cuckoo

sàgi + kàj > sà'gàj—a raised platform

sibəgi + kə'ido + cə'nlobə + mi' > sígə'izo'n—a sickly person

cə'i + ə + kə'nbo > cə'go—hook

lə'n + tho'mbo + kə'i > lə'n:go'i—treasure

sə'ng + ə + koibo > sə'nggo'i—an out house

thàng + ə + kə'nbo > thànggo'n—sickle

$p > b$

kháo + pubə + mənáj > kháobúnáj—attendant

thá + pánbo + númít > thábán—date

orəppədo + páiba + khútlái > arəmbái—a weapon of Manipuri cavalry

nə'mdo + póbo + po't > nə'mbó—luggage

lə'udo + nə'mbo + pə'n > lə'nə'mbán—embarkment

mùk + càb + po't > mùkcàbi`-blotting paper
tho'ugi + m + pú > tho'ubú -owner

t > d

kho`ng + táb + maphom > kho`ngdápho'm-shelter
khùn + t + mbo + mawóng > khúdo'm-example
nóngdónno + t + mbo > mawóng + nóngdo'm-fate
po`nno + túppo + motáng > po`ndúp-chapter
ténno + tóngbo + po't > téndóng-quiver
sén + tóngbo > séndóng-profit
sén + tónbo > séndón-debt
thánin:gi + m + túng > nindúng-waning moon

Voiceless unaspirated stops are also voiced in the initial unstressed syllables of a few compound words.

k > g

gúnzá --front tug of dhoti ; gúrung-upturn of the cart ; géhóri-a kind of fruit

p > b

hági--a kind of disease · bèrà-objection ; bo`rà-gunny bag ; bórói-plum.

t > d

dári-verandah ; dúhon-person in charge of water supply ; dó-lán-brick building ; dóná—a water vessel made of plantain leaf ; dósi`-wick

2 4 1. 2. Free variation of unaspirated voiceless stops with unaspirated voiced stops

Unaspirated voiceless stops are in free variation with the unaspirated voiced stops in some EM words when they are preceded by the vowels and nasals.

k ~ g

kángkə't ~ kánggo't-tax

92—Manipuri Grammar

khə'mkón ~ khə'mgón-wind

móikái ~ móigái-lip

únkói ~ ún:gói-mind

p ~ b

i'pingngà ~ i'bingngà-both of us

lə'ipɔ'n ~ láibár-ambassador

lóipi' ~ lóbi'-hill

múngbi' ~ múngbi'-scasamum

únpi' ~ unbi-mind

t ~ d

khùtin ~ khùdin-example

lótám ~ lóidám-month

námtú > námdú-river

phə'mténgbo ~ phə'mdéngbo-sit

Initial -k and -p are in free variation with -g and -b respectively in some Modern Manipuri words when they are preceded by the vowels.

k ~ m

hə'ikrú ~ hə'igrú myrobalan

hə'ikréng ~ hə'igréng-a kind of tree

màiko'i ~ màigo'i-direction

p ~ b

hàpú ~ hàbú-rubbish

lə'ipák ~ lə'ibák-earth

úpák ~ úbák wood plank

Initial -k and -p are also in free variation with -g and -b respectively in the first syllables of a few Modern Manipuri words.

k ~ g

kíhóm ~ gíhóm-pine apple

kúdám ~ gúdám-button

p~b

pártin~bártin-bucket

pàzí~bàzí-father

2. 4. 1. 3 *Aspiration of unaspirated voiceless stops*

Unaspirated voiceless stops are aspirated in a few words when they are preceded by the vowels and nasals.

k>kh

pàmbi`+okónbɔ>pàkhón-a spice plant

yi`m,EM+kónbɔ+lɔ`m>i`ngkhón-homestead land

p>ph

púnúng>phùrit-shirt

sipahi,LW>síphái-soldier

cf., súnúsíphái-name of a village

Unaspirated voiceless stops are aspirated in the verbal forms when they occur as the initial phonemes of the primary infixes and are preceded by the verb roots beginning with the vowels and consonants other than the aspirated voiceless stops, -h and -s.

k>kh

cóng+kɔ`t+pɔ>cóngkhɔ`tpɔ jump up

kɔ`n+kɔ`t+pɔ>kɔ`nkhɔ`tpɔ strong (emphatic)

kùp+kɔ`t+pɔ>kùpkhɔ`tpɔ-make up

p>ph

cà+pàt+pɔ>càphàtpɔ-be sceptic

ká+pàt+pɔ>káphàtpɔ-break open

t>dh

cong+tok+pɔ>conghokpɔ jump out

in+tok+pɔ>inthokpɔ excommunicate

2. 4. 1. 4 *Some changes in unaspirated voiceless stops*

2. 4. 1. 4. 1 *k*

2. 4. 1. 4. 1. 1 *k > p*

k > p in a word when -*k* is preceded by -*ng*
téngko 'k > *téngpák*-clod

2. 4. 1. 4. 1. 2 *k > t*

k > t in a few words when -*k* is followed by the vowels.
kerosine, *LW* > *térsing*
kónggài > *tó'ngkhài* half

2. 4. 1. 4. 2 *p*

2. 4. 1. 4. 2. 1 *p > k*

p > k in a few words when -*p* is preceded by -*a* and -*k*.
ná:pà > *ná:kóng*-ear
nàkpán > *nàkko* 'n-side

2. 4. 1. 4. 2. 2

p > kh in a word when -*p* is followed by -*u*.
púrúmbə > *khúrúmbə*-bow down

2. 4. 1. 4. 2. 3 *Gemination of -p*

-*p* preceded by -*t* may remain with or without -*t* or be geminated causing elision of -*t*.

khùtpài ~ *khùtpài* ~ *khùppài*-almnac
khùtpú ~ *khùtpú* ~ *khùppú*-group
pótpá ~ *po`pá* ~ *po`ppá* pair
po`tpáng ~ *po`páng* ~ *po`ppáng*-donation
yètpù ~ *yèpù* ~ *yèppù*-a weaving implement

2. 4. 1. 4. 3 *t*

2. 4. 1. 4. 3. 1 *t > kh*

t > kh in a few words when -*t* is preceded by -*a* and -*u*.

lútúng>lúkbo'm-occiput
ngátói>ngò`khà-a kind of fish

2. 4. 1. 3. 2 t>ph

t>ph in a word when it is preceded by -p.
kàptingcà>kàkpho'i-leech

2. 4. 1. 5 Retention of unaspirated voiceless stops

Unaspirated voiceless stops remain in the stressed syllables of the compound words even if they are preceded by the vowels and nasals.

k—ho'iko`k-water chest nut ; ho'ikón-orchard ; lo'lkón-garden ;
láikùp-chicken-pox
p—kho`ngpàk-foot ; lo'ipung-mound ; láipo`k-genius ; nùpà—
man ; nùpi`-woman
t—co'ito`p-affix ; ho'itùp-apple ; mi'to`p stranger ; so`ngto`p-por-
tico ; thàngtùp-date palm

Unaspirated voiceless stops remain when they are preceded by the same consonants,

k—khùtkàppi-fillip ; li`kkón-cowry ; mi'tkùp-moment ; pùkko'i-
store ;
p—hi`kpi`-louse ; khùtpài-almanac ; khùtpú-group ; sèkpi-bat
t—khùttùm-fist ; li`kto`m-a kind of necklace ; mùktábi`-fountain
pen ; yèttùm-needle.

2. 4. 2 Unaspirated voiceless stops in syllable final position

Unaspirated voiceless stops form final phonemes of some syllables

final -k

cak-cooked rice ; ko`k-head ; lo`k-cough ; po`k-grey hair ;
to`k-a wooden mallet

final -p

cùp-peg ; hùp-a kind of grass ; kàp-span ; pho`p-a raised
platform ; tho`p-brain

final -t

khùt-hand; mi't-eye; po't-thing; ùt-ash; yo't-iron

2.4.2.1 Final -k

2.4.2.1 Final $k > p$

Final - $k > p$ in some words when - k is preceded by the vowels in the preceding syllables.

co'irák+pi'bo+lo'iso'ng>co'iráp, EM-the highest appellate court
dholok, LW>dhúlo`p-a kind of drum

khùtno+tàk+pɔ+cáng>khùdáp-handful

pó+tàk+pɔ+mɔwóng>pótháp-rule

2.4.2.1.2 Free variation of final k with -p

Final - k is in free variation with - p in some words when it occurs in the last syllables of such words.

odúk~odúp-that much

osúk~osúp-this much

motho'k~motho'p-full growth

núngpo'k~núngpo'p-a kind of disease

phàdo'k~phàdo'p-prisoner

Final - k is also in free variation with - o in a word when - k is followed by - t in the last syllable of such word.

sùktù~sùptù-a beam resting on the posts of the house

2.4.2.2 Final -p

2.4.2.2.1 Final - $p > k$.

Final - $p > k$ in the word when it is followed by - t in medial syllable of such word.

kàptingcà>kàkpho'i-leech

2.4.2.2.2 Final - $p > t$

Final - $p > t$ in a word when - p is followed by the same consonant in the last syllables of such word,

khómú cə̀pə>khámén cə̀tpə-a kind of finely embroidered dhoti.

2. 4. 2. 2. 3 *Free variation of final -p with -m*

Final -p is in free variation with -m in a few words when it is followed by -l in the last syllables of such words.

kòplāk~kòmlāk-opposite side of the knee.

sùplāk~sùmlāk-multiplication table

2. 4. 2. 3. *Final -t.*

2. 4. 2. 3. 1 *Final t>r*

Final -t>r in some words when it is followed by -n.

cə̀t+nə+púngbə+hə̀i>cə̀rphón-a kind of fruit

khùt+nə+pàibə+cə̀i>khürzi-rein

khòt+nə+pə+cə̀i>khorzòi-slate pencil

khòt+nə+pə+mə̀pāk+khòrbāk-slate

kòt+kúmbə+phù>kòrphù-a kind of utensil

2. 4. 2. 3. 2 *Creation of -l glide*

Final -t creates -l glide in the verbal forms in the present indefinite tense and imperative mood when it occurs as the final phoneme of the verb root and is followed by -i, marker of general statement (present tense) and -o, marker of imperative mood.

lìt+i>lìtlì-*we/you/they wear*

sìt+i>sìtlì-*we/you/they sweep*

sòt+o>sotlo-(*you*) *borrow (imperative)*

2. 4. 2. 4 *Gemination of unaspirated voiceless stops in syllable final position.*

2. 4. 2. 4. 1 *Gemination of final -k*

Final -k is geminated in some words when it is followed by -l and -n.

98.-Manipuri Grammar

pik+náo>pi'kko'náo-a small baby
dek,LW+na>tèkná-a kind of utensil
tukna,LW>tùkko'ná-a kind of utensil
thùk+lá>thùkkolá-an insignificant person

2. 4. 2. 4. 2 *Gemination of final -p*

Final -p may remain or be geminated in the verbal forms in the present indefinite tense and imperative mood when it is followed by -i, marker of general statement (present tense) and -o, marker of imperative mood.

kàp+i'>kàp:i' ~kàppi'-we/you/they shoot
kùp+i'>kùp:i' ~kùppi'-we/you/they cover
lèp+o'>lèp:o' ~lèppo'-(you) stand (imperative)

2. 4. 2. 5 *Retention or elision of unaspirated voiceless stops syllable final position*

2. 4. 2. 5. 1 *Retention or elision of final -k*

Final -k may remain or be elided when it is followed by -k and -kh.

k+k

cèkkón~cèkón-brick field
li'kkon~li'kón-cowry
ko'kko'n~ko'ko'n-a kind of tree
thàkko'n~thàko'n-canopy

k+kh

càkkhúm~càkhúm-kitchen
lùkkhàk~lùkhàk-remnant of food taken
o'kkhi'~o'khi'-dandruff
o'kkhàk~o'khàk-a little
o'kkhró'u~o'khró'u-a kind of knot

2. 4. 2. 5. 2 *Retention or elision of final -p.*

Final -p may remain or be elided when it is followed by the same consonant.

sèkpi~sèpi`-a kind of button

yèppú~yèpú-a weaving implement

2. 4 2. 5. 3 *Retention or elision of final -t*

Final -t may remain or be elided when it is followed by the unaspirated voiceless stops, -th and -c.

t+k

khùtkàppi`...khùkáppi`-fillip

mi`tkop ... mi`kòp-wink

mi`tkùp...mi`kùp-moment

t+p

khùtpú...khùpú...khùppú-group

po`tpá...po`pá...po`ppá-pair

po`tpáng...po`páng...po`ppáng-donation

t+t

khùttùm...khùtùni-fist

o`tti...o`ti-deceit

pèttúwà...pètúwà-an insignificant fellow

t+th

mi`tho`u...mi`tho`ù-sty

po`tthí...po`thí-plan

po`ttho`k...po`tho`k-product

t+c

ko`tci`...ko`ci`...ko`cci`-hook

yo`tco`i...yo`co`i...yo`cco`i-iron rode

yo`tcàbi`...yo`càbi...yo`ccàbi`-magnet

2. 4. 2. 6 Retention of unaspirated voiceless stops in syllable final position

An unaspirated voiceless stop remains in the syllable final position when it is followed by the same consonant which is the initial phoneme of the formative affixes.

k+k

càk+kə>càkkə-with the cooked rice

mùk+kúmno>mùkkúmno-like ink

sə`k+kè>sə`kkè-let us sing

p+p

kàp+pə>kàppə-shoot

lèp+pi`+i>lèppi`-you/they stand (honorific)

tho`p+pú>tho`ppú-the brain (accusative)

t+t

khùt+tə>khùtto-to the hand

mi`t+təgi>mi`tto_gi-from the eye

sèt+tə`k+pə>sèitto`kpə-sétto`kpə-tear up

2. 4. 3 Aspirated voiceless stops

2. 4. 3. 1 Deaspiration of aspirated voiceless stops

Aspirated voiceless stops are deaspirated in a few words when they are preceded by vowels and nasals.

kh>k

dorkhast,LW>də`rkás-petition

ko`kto+kho`nbə+pàmbi`>ko`kkə`n-a kind of tree

lakh,LW>làk

lángkhóngzi`>ki`si`-knot

tkə`kto+kho`nbə+po`t>thàko`n screen

ph>p

həfta,LW>hàpta-week

phánzo hə`ibo>páibo hə`ibo-skilful in flying

th>t

osthi, LW>asti-a ceremony before the saradha ceremony
u'tki+mo+thi'>u'tti'-alkaline

-kh and -th are deaspirated in the verbal forms when they occur as the initial phonemes of some monosyllabic primary infixes and are preceded by the verb roots beginning with the aspirated voiceless stops, -h and -s and ending with the unaspirated voiceless stops.

kh>k

pho'k+khài+pɔ>pho'kkàibɔ-break open
sat+khài+pɔ>sàtkàibɔ-blossom
sik+khài+pɔ>si'kkàibɔ-scratch

th>t

hèk+tho't+pɔ>hèkto'tpɔ-pluck
phùk+tho't+pɔ>phùkto'tpɔ-root out
sèt+tho't+pɔ>sètto'tpɔ-tear up

2. 4. 3. 2 Free variation of aspirated voiceless stops.

Aspirated voiceless stops are in free variation with the unaspirated voiceless stops in a few words when they occur as the initial phonemes of the first syllables of such words.

kh~k

khò'idén~kò'ithén-market
khángsi~kángsi-bell

ph~p

phoiding, EM~puiding, EM thatch

th~t

mohàktho'kto~mohàkto'kto-during one's life time
so'náhàktho'kto~so'náhàkto'kto-during the reign of the king

102—Manipuri Grammar

2. 4 3. 2. 2 *Free variation of ph with -th*

-ph is in free variation with -th in a word when it occurs as the initial phoneme of the first syllables of such word and is followed by -a.

pho'izúp~tho'izúp-a shawl used in sleeping

2. 4. 3. 3 *Voicing of aspirated voiceless stops.*

Aspirated voiceless stops are voiced in some words when they occur as the initial phonemes of the first unstressed syllables of such words.

kh>gh

ghi-cyst ; ghúmtí-a canopy on the bullock cart ; ghutí-a kind of kite ; ghór-enthusiasm

ph>bh

bháló-bravo ; bhúm,EM-a ball made of sand ; bhùgo'tí-typhoid fever

th>dh

dhátú-a kind of disease ; dhúmén-a performance by the drummers.
dhútù-sound of blowing conch

2. 4. 3. 4 *Deaspiration and voicing of aspirated voiceless stops.*

Aspirated voiceless stops are deaspirated and voiced in some words when they are preceded by the vowels and nasals.

kh>g

phí+gi+kháo>phígáo-a kind of bag

so'n+ki+khóm>so'nggóm-milk

sén+ki+káo>sénggáo-purse

'thábu+khàibo+mo'wóng>tho'gài-measure of two cubits

khóm+khokpo+láiná>khómgo`klái-ricket

mi'róngkho'n>tho'ugón-attendance on the high officials

si'ng+khàirobo+pàklobo+zàt>si'nggàibàk-fuel of good quantity

ph>b

otángbo + phán>tàngbo'n-seat

níngtho'uno—pho'mbo + phán>pho'mbán-throne

sàphà>pi'bà-son

th>d

hí + thénbo + mapho'm>hícén-wharf

kho`ngdo + thábo + po't>khùdá-seat

lò'mmàthèt>lòmdón-suburb

phàrogo + tho`k:hə'ndəbo + mi`>phàd`ok-prisoner

phi + thàdo`kləbo + ini`>pho'idà-eunuch

phígí + mə + thi`>pho'di`-rags

tho'u + thábo + məwóng>tho'udá-duty

tərádo + chúm + thóibo + məsi`ng>təráhúmdói-thirteen

nóngtho'u>nóngdón sky

sén + thóiro`kpo + cáng>séndói-interest on the invested capital

-kh and -ph are deaspirated and voiced in the emphatic verbal forms when they occur as the initial phonemes of some monosyllabic emphasisers and are preceded by the verb roots beginning with the aspirated voiceless stops, -h and -s and ending with the vowels and nasals.

kh>g

sú + khài + po>súgàibo-pound

thú + khài + po>thúgàibo-break

théng + khài + po>thénggàibo-dash against

th>d

phú + tho't + po>phúdo'tpo-beat

sə'm + tho't + po>səmdo'tpo-make short

sú + thək + po>súdèkpo-pound

2. 4. 3. 5 Deaspiration and voicing or voicing of aspirated voiceless stops

Aspirated voiceless stops may be deaspirated and voiced or voiced in a few words when they are preceded by the vowels and nasals.

kh > g, gh

cíngkhá > zlnggá'...zínggho'-corrugated iron sheet

móséngkhá > mósínggá...mósíngghá-bile

síngkháro'i > sínggáro'i...sínggháro'i-a kind of flower

ph > b, bh

kho'nggi + mǝ + phǝ'm > khúbǝ'm...khùbhǝ'm-abode of sylvan deity

phi;gi + mǝ + phǝ'm > phibǝm...phibhǝ'm-condition

lǎnnǎnbǎ + kho'nggi + mǝ + phǝ'm > ǝrànkhubǝ'm... ǝrànkhubhǝ'm-salvation

th > d, dh

mǝpú + tho'u > mǝbùdǝ'u...mǝbùdhǝ'u-grand father

sǝ'n + kǝ + tho'ng > sǝ'ndǝ'ng...sǝ'ndho'ng-south west

tádo + tho'n > tádo'n...tcdho'n-elder brother

2. 4. 3. 6 *Free variation of aspirated voiceless stops with unaspirated voiced stops and aspirated voiced stops.*

Aspirated voiceless stops are in free variation with the unaspirated voiced stops and aspirated voiced stops in a few words when they are preceded by the vowels and nasals.

kh ~ g ~ gh

hǝ'irángkho'i ~ hǝ'iránggo'i ~ hǝ'iránggho'i-a kind of fruit

f'ngkhón ~ hǝ'nggón ~ hǝ'ngghón-homestead land

thúmkhóng ~ thúmgóng ~ thúmgghóng-salt well

ph ~ b ~ bh

thíphaipot ~ thibaipot ~ thibhaipot-one going to latrine frequently

thi'phǝiphǝ'm ~ thi'bǝiphǝ'm ~ thi'bhaiphǝ'm-latrine

th ~ d ~ dh

khùthǝ'kto ~ khúdǝ'kto ~ khùdhǝ'kto-instantly

khómthrókpi`~khómdro`kpi`~khómdhro`kpi-a medicinal plant
thátho`k~thádo`k~thádho`k-the youngest child

2. 4. 3. 7 Retention or aspirated voiceless stops

Aspirated voiceless stops remain in many words when they are preceded by the vowels and nasals.

kh

mài+khúmba+phi>màikhúm-veil
páo+khúmba+mowóng>páokhúm-reply
wà+khò`nbo+mowóng>wàkhò`n-idea
ho`i+o+khà+po>ho`ikhà-apricot
cùppo+m+khàk>cùkhàk-remnant of food taken
káng+m+khò`ng>kángkhò`ng-wheel
thang+mc+khum>thangkhum-sheath
páo+nínbo+m+khón>paónínkhón-rumour

ph

cò`ino+phùbo+mowóng>cò`iphù-blow
innbo+phi>innphi-a kind of shawl
láino+phábo+wà>láipháo-gospel
thàng+phèngnbo+`nùng>thàngphèngnùng-whet stone
i`sing+lánnbo+m+pho`m>i`rànphe`m-ferry
lá+i`lbo+m+pho`m>láipho`m shrine
náowà+l`lbo+m+pho`m>náopho`m-placenta

th

kho`u+tho`nbo+láiná>kho`utho`nbi`-goitre
i`sing+ko`ngbo+thá>i`ko`ngthá dry season
nóng+cúbo+thá>nóngzúthá rainy season
ko`kto+tho`nbo+phi>ko`ktho`n-turban
ko`kto+thángbo+po`t>ko`kthóng-head load
po`ndo+thúngbo+mapho`m>po`nthúngpho`m destination

2. 4. 4 c

2. 4. 4. 1 c>z

c>z when -c forms the initial phoneme of the unstressed syllables of the compound words and is preceded by the vowels and nasals.

nóng+cúbo+thá>nóngzúthá-rainy season

páo+cénbo+məwóng>páozen-message

po'ndo+cénbo+məwóng-pánzo'n-goat

ci'ng+o+cáobc>ci'ngzáo-mountain

kón:gi+mə+ci'n>kónzi'n-corner

ngà+léngnobo+cə'i>ngaréngzə'i-spit

sà+phù:nobo+cə'i>sàzə'i-whip

téndo:gi+kàplo'kpo+cə'i>ténzə'i-arrow

tho'ng+lo'nnobo+cə'i>tho'nglo'nzə'i-bolt

c>z in a few words when -c occurs in the initial unstressed syllables of such words.

zo'gói-dance; zo'mpho't-a carpentary implement; zo'r zo'r-gradual increase in the water level; zúri-drainage; zúwán-yoke

2. 2. 4. 2 Free variation of -c with -z.

-c is in free variation with -z in some EM words when -c is preceded by the vowels and nasals.

ko'céng~ko'zéng-sword

lài'ci~lái'zi'-direction

núngcén~núngzén-love

ngo'ucà~ngo'uzà-pulse

táo'cín~táo'zín-fruit

tángcà~tángzà-snake

tóngcéng~tóngzéng-boat

2. 4. 4. 3 c>s

c>s in a few words when -c is preceded by the vowels and nasals.

lò'mmácúm>lò'msáng-street

nàkko'ndo+cíthobo+khóng>nàsíkhóng-side channel

pickari,LW>péskári-a kind of pump

-c in the two primary infixes viz., cin and cèk is changed into -s in the verbal forms when -c is preceded by the verb roots beginning with the vowels and the consonants other than the aspirated voiceless stops, -h and -s.

i'n+cín+pó>i'nsínbo-instigate

làk+cín+pó>làksínbo-control

lò'ng+cèk+pó>lò'ngsèkpo-throw away

2. 4. 4. 4 *Gemination of -c*

-c is preceded by -t may remain with or without -t or be geminated causing elision of -t.

khùtcúp~khùcup~khùccúp-an ornament for the babies

ko'tci'~ko'ci'~ko'cc'i-hook

nàtcò'i~nàcò'i~nàccò'i-a weaving implement

pò'tcói'~pò'cói'~dò'ccói-items of small articles

yo'tcò'i'~yo'cò'i'~yo'ccò'i-iron rod

yo'tcàbi'~yocàbi'~yo'ccàbi'-magnet

2. 4. 4. 5 *Retention of -c*

-c remains in the stressed syllables of the compound words even if it is preceded by the vowels and nasals.

kàci'-hook; kùcú,EM-court; nàcò'n-centipede; nácóm-nose-gay; sácá-frame; yácò'n-rein

-c also remains when it is preceded by the unaspirated voiceless stops.

hò'káng-body; kò'kéng-ant; pùkcén-mind; yo'kco'bi-nurse;
yo'tcàbi'-magnet; yo'tcò'i'-iron rod

108—Manipuri Grammar

2.4.5 s

2.4.5.1 s>c

s>c in some words when -s is preceded by the vowels and nasals.

hə'yéngsi't>hə'ngci't-day after tomorrow

khə'dángdə+sətpə+phi>khə'dángcèt-a kind of towel

khwàngdə+sətpə+phi>khàngcèt-dhoti (honorific)

wàdɔgi+səttokpə+sə'rùk>wàcèt-split bamboo

-s in sínno, primary infix is changed into -c in the verbal forms when -s is preceded by the verb roots beginning the aspirated voiceless stops. -h and -s and ending with the unaspirated voiceless stops.

hèk+sínno+pə>hèkcínno-bə-pretend to pluck

pho't+sínno+pə>pho'tcínno-bə-pretend to stitch

so't+sínno+pə>so'tcínno-bə-pretend to borrow

2.4.5.2 s>z

s>z in some words when -s is preceded by the vowels and nasals.

məsà+sénbə+məwóng>sàzén-physical exercise

phi+sètnəbə+zət>phízèt-dress

phi+sùpnəbə+zət>phə'izùp-a shawl used in the sleep

phi:nə+sábə+po't>phə'izá fold of cloth supporting head load

so'n+sénbə+nəhà>so'nzénnohà-cowboy

sùm+si'tnəbə+pə'p>sùmzi't-broom stick

thàng+sábə+yùmnàk>thàngzə'm-blacksmith

2.4.5.3 Free variation of -s with -z.

-s is in free variation with -z in some words when -s is preceded by -t and -n

khùtsi'n tho'uràng~khùzi'n tho'uràng-arrangement

khùtsi't khùnàntho'k~khùzi't khùnàntho'k-incidental fall of something from the hand

khùtsù khùtlái~khùzú khùtlái-weapon
 pùsémbò~dúzémbò·bring
 sénséng~sénzéng·bell metal
 yènsáng~hènzáng·curry

2. 4. 5. 4 Retention of -s

-s remains in many words when it is preceded by the vowels, unaspirated voiceless stops and nasals.

ì'sing + sì'tnòbò + pò't > ì'sto'k-a basket for scooping water
 kòkto + setpò + phi > kòkset-head gear for the women
 khùtnò + súbògi + mòmò'n > khùtsúmò'n-wage
 náowà + sùmbò + mophò'm > náosùm·cradle
 túm + sò'tnòbò + pò't > túmsò't-pincers
 thá + síbò + númì't > thási-new moon
 thàng + ɔ + sángbò > thəngsáng-sword
 càk + thónɡnòbò + sò'ng > càksò'ng-kitchen
 láì + lo'ibò + sò'ng > láìsò'ng temple
 láìno + yéngnòbò + sò'ng > láìyéngsò'ng-hospital
 sà + yo'knòbò + sò'ng - sàyo'ksò'ng-zoe

2. 4. 6 h

2. 4. 6. 1 Occurance of -h with unaspirated voiceless stops

-h preceded by the unaspirated voiceless stops remains without changing such consonants into the aspirated voiceless stops.

k+h
 càk:hàò-a kind of paddy
 càk:hén·fasting
 kò'k:hò'n láìhò'n-eldest son

p+h
 ièp+hò'n + pò > ièp:hò'nò·make stand
 tò'p+hò'n + pò > tòp:hònò·make, slow

t+h

ko't:híng-rust

khùt:híng-smell of hand

yo't:híng-hand cuff

2. 4. 6. 2 Retention of -h

-h remains when it is preceded by the vowels and nasals.

lái+hàtnobo+moro'n>láihò'tlo'n-black magic

lèm+hò'ubo+mòkhàk>lèmhò'ukhàk-remnants

mi'+hàtnobo+mòphò'm>mi'hàtphò'm-execution ground

wà+hò'udo'kpo+mòwóng>wàhò'udo'k-introduction

wà+hò'ngbo+mòwóng>wàhò'ng-question

céngdogi+lò'ubo+mò+hi>céng;hi-shampoo

khóidogi+lò'ubo+mò+hi>khóihì-honey

lò'mdo+lò'ibo+hùì>lò'mhùì-fox

lù+káínobo+hi>lùkáihi-a small canoe

lò'ibàkki+mò+háo>lò'iháo-soil

2. 4. 7 1

2. 4. 7. 1 l>n

-l>n in some words when -l is preceded by -e and -ng.

ko'ubi`si`nglò'i>ko'ubi`si`ngnáng-reeds

séli>sén-money

-l>n in a word when -l occur in the first syllable of such word.

lò'ngmáizi'ng>nóngmáizi'ng-Sunday

2. 4. 7. 2 l>ng

-l in the two secondary suffixes viz., lén and lói is changed into -ng when -l is preceded by the vowels and nasals.

i'+lén>i`ngén-name of a Manipuri month

kháng+lén>kángngén-beam

síng+lén>síng ngén,EM-flower

thing + lén > thingngén-bund

ho'ng + lo'i > ho'ngngo'i-frog

kèng + lo'i > kèngngo'i-an edible herb

lo'i + lo'i > lo'ngo'i sand

ngáng + lo'! > ngángngo'i, EM-another name of Moirang clan

2. 4. 7. 3 Free variation of -l with p, -m and -ng.

-l may remain or be in free variation with -p, -m and -ng in the verbal forms when -l occurs as the initial phoneme of some primary infixes and is preceded by such consonants.

p + l

ko'p + lo + i > ko'ploi ~ ko'ppo'i-he comes and cries

kàp + lo + i > kàplé ~ kàppé-he has been shot

m + l

pho'm + lo'm + i > pho'mlo'mi ~ pho'mmo'mi-he sat

sèm + lo'mdái + to > sèmlò'mdáido ~ sèmmo'mdáido-on the eve of repair

ng + l

ho'ng + lingo'i + to > ho'nglingo'ids ~ ho'ngngingo'ido~ while he is asking

yéng + lú + i > yénglù-i ~ yéngnú-i-he goes and sees

2. 4. 7. 4 l > r

-l > r when -l occurs as the initial phoneme of the unstressed syllables of compound words and is preceded by the vowels

í'sing + lánno'bo + mapho'm > í'rànpho'm-ferry

lo'u + lúngbo + lo'iso'ng > lùrúngso'ng-royal department in charge of agriculture

ngà + làkpo + úcèk > ngàrákpi`-king fisher

ngà + léngno'bo + co'ì > ngàréngzo'i-spit

tho'u + làngbo + mowóng-tho'uràng-arrangement

112—Manipuri Grammar

cóino + lo`nbo + m̄ro`n > cóiro`n-ravings

i`singdo + lo`ibo + m̄wóng > i`ro,i-eddy

i`singgo + lo`inobo + s̄a > i`rc`i-buffalo

kho`ngdo + lo`úbo + m̄wóng > khũro`u-obstacle

s̄ado + síbo + li`k > so`ri`k-bell

-l > r in a few words when -l occur in the initial unstressed syllables of such words.

r̄asi`-beauty ; r̄úi-a kind of shawl ; ro`ro`-a word address to the cattle asking them to stop.

2. 4. 7. 5 Retention of -l

-l remains as the initial phoneme of the stressed syllables of the compound words even if -l is preceded by the vowels.

kábo`i-country liquor ; kálén-summer ; kólí-dwarf ; lólá-ass ; so`láí-clan ; sólá-gunny bag

-l remains when it is preceded by the unaspirated voiceless stops and nasals.

k + l — o`klá-perch ; pho`kláng-wall

p + l — cùpli`-rein ; lèplo`i-screw auger

t + l — khùtlái-weapon ; po`tlói-custom of Rasa dance

m + l — kho`mlo`i,EM-land of death ; khómlén,EM-sleep

n + l — pónláng-basket ; s̄énlèp-capital invested

ng + l — kànglùp-group ; kho`nglo`i-followers

2. 4. 8 r

2. 4. 8. 1 r in syllable final position

-r occurs as the final phoneme of a few EM monosyllabic words.

cár-door ; ghór-enthusiasm ; hár-manure ; már-foot print ; pá-rifle

-r also occurs as the final phoneme of the last syllables of some words.

cínár-milon ; háibár-a kind of ear ring ; láibár,EM-ambassador;

línhár-a medicinal herb ; nóngdár-mica ; úlár upturn of cart ;

úzár-disorder.

2. 4. 8. 2 Intrusive -r

Intrusive -r occurs after the unaspirated voiceless stops, -c and -x when such consonants are preceded by the vowels and nasals.

càk + mɔ + pi > cə`ubri`-break fast for the babies.
 káng + mɔ + khóng > kángkhro`ng wheel
 lo`ibák + ɔkákpo > lo`ikro`k crevice
 lo`ibák + cènggumbo > lo`icrèng-small earth particles
 nùng + cènggumbo > nùngzrèng-small stone particles
 ngà + púmgu`mbo > ngàprúm-mud eel
 pi`kpo`do + tú:gumbo > pi`ktrú a small baby
 ɔso`ngbo + lo`i > so`ngbro`i a kind of flower
 khóm + tho`kpo + pàmbi` > khómthro`kpi` a medicinal plant
 ci`ndo + khado + tho`kpo + mowóng > ci`nthro`k kháthro`k slip of tongue

2. 4. 9 w

2. 4. 9. 1 Elision of -w

-w is elided from some words when it is preceded by the nasals.

càktánwài > càktápho`m-shelter of birds
 i`ránwái > i`ránpho`m-ferry
 so`gónno + càbo + ho`wái > so`gúlái-horse bean
 sáwá > só key

2. 4. 9. 2 Retention of -w

-w remains in some words when it is preceded by the vowels, unaspirated voiceless stops and nasals.

ho`wái-pulse; i`wàn-pot for cooking curry; lo`wái-fore-head; láiwà-gospel; pèttúwà-a small baby; pɔswán-a skirt of muslin; so`twán,EM-name of a post; ténɔ`wà parrot

114. -Manipuri Grammar

2. 4. 10 y

2. 4. 10. 1 Elision of -y

-y is elided from some words when it is preceded by the vowels, unaspirated voiceless stops and nasals.

yì'm,EM+chánbo>i'mphál-name of the capital city of Manipur

yì'm+kónbo+məphə'm>i'ngkhón-home stead land

yì'm+móngbo EM>i'múng-family

ho'yéngsi't>hongci't-day after tomorrow

míyéngsén>míngsén-looking glass

so'yi>so'i-a kind of tree

2. 4. 10. 2 Retention of -y

-y remains in many words when it is preceded by the vowels and nasals.

cáng+yéngbo+məwóng>cángyéng-test

mì'tno+yéngbo+məwóng-mì'tyéng-view

náowà+yo'mbopo't>náoyo'm-amnion

lò'ng+yo'ínobbo+cə'i>lò'ngyo'izo'i-a weaving implement

lái'ná+yéngnəbo+so'ng>láiyéngso'ng-hospital

sà+yo'kpo+so'ng>sàyo'kso'ng-zoo

yùmdo+yo'kpo+sà>yùmyo'ksà-domestic animal

náho'ndəbo+yái>nádo'yái-disease-proof stone

sího'ndəbo+yái>sído'yái-death-proof stone

2. 4. 11 Nasals in syllable initial position

2. 4. 11. 1 Geminanion of nasals.

Nasals may remain or geminated when they are preceded by the vowels (monophthongs).

m ~ mm

càmo ~ càmmo-one hundred

làməi ~ làmməi-leaf of a book

lúmàng~lúmmàng-sinciput
sàmú~sàmmú-elephant

n~nn

khunù~khúnnù-pigeon
mì`nnái~mì`nái-servant
mì`núngsí~m`innúngsí-sympathy
ngànù~ngànnù-duck

ng~ngng

ɔngàng~ɔngngàng-baby
mɔngà~mɔngngà-five
mɔngài~mɔngngái-matrimonial relation
mɔngán~mɔngngán-light

2. 4. 11. 2 n

2. 4. 11. 2. 1 n>m

-n>m in a word when -n is preceded by the same consonant.

sinnnái>sinmi`-worker

2. 4. 11. 2. 2 n>l

-n>l in a few words when -n occurs as the initial phoneme of the first syllables of such words.

nótini,EM>lótini-whore
nɔgun,LW>lúgún-sacred thread worn by the Hindus
nilam,LW>lílám-auction

2. 4. 11. 2. 3 Free variation of -n with -l.

-n is in free variation with -l in a few words when -n occurs as the initial phoneme of the first syllable of such words.

no'hán~lo'hán-day before yesterday

nóngdái~lò'ngdár-mica

nóngmái~lò'ngmái-name of a Manipuri clan

2. 4. 11. 3 Retention of nasals

Nasals remain when they are preceded by the diphthongs and unaspirated voiceless stops.

m

lái'mò'n-chronic disease ; phóúmámbi`-aniseed ; thaómò`i-lamp ;
lùkmài-a round basket ; núngkhàkmò`i,EM-thunderbolt

n

hò`ino`u-mango ; lò`uno`m-deceit ; mainou,EM-disciple ; kò`k-
no`m-fillet, khùtnèk-hired person ; sùpnò`m-violent imposition

ng

hò`ingán-jam ; mò`ingán-light ; yáingò`ng turmeric ; tò`knga-
rumour

-m and -n remain when they are preceded by -ng

ng+m

hàngmò`i-a carpenter's instrument ; lánghmò`i-wild fire ; nóng-
mò`i-rifle

ng+n

khóngnáng-pipal tree ; sì`ngnang-recd ; thàngphèngnùng-whet
stone.

2. 4. 12 Nasals in syllable final position

Nasals occur as the final phonemes of the syllables,

m—cum-lizard ; lò`m-land ; sò`m-hair ; yùm-house

n—kò`n-utensil ; khùn-village ; pàn-arum ; tén-bow

ng—kàng-mosquito ; nóng-rain ; sì`ng-fuel ; yóng-monkey

2. 4. 12. 1 *Final -m*

2. 4. 12. 1. 1 *Final variation or final -m with -ng.*

Final -m may remain or be in free variation with -ng when -m is followed by -kh, -g -p, -ph and -b.

m + kh

i`mkhón ~ i`ngkhón-homestead land

lò'm khùnù ~ lò'ngkhùnù-dove

m + g

kómguṭ ~ kóngguṭ-pit

khómgo`klái ~ khónggo`klái-ricket

m + p

lò'mprái ~ lò'ngprái-a kind of bird

mócómpàk ~ mócóngpàk-etiqate

m + ph

pómpphrí ~ póngphrí-rags

pómpphái ~ púngphái-a medicinal herb

m + b

so`mbro'i ~ so`nbroi'-a kind of flower

so`mbò'nlo'ri ~ so`ngbò'nlo'i-a kind of flower

2. 4. 12. 2 *Final -n*

2. 4. 12. 2. 1 *Free variation of final -n with -m*

Final -n may remain or be in free variation with -m in some words when -m is followed by -p, -ph and -b.

n + p

ko`npak ~ ko`mpàk-a kind of utensil

118—Manipuri Grammar

sénpàk ~ sémphàk-tray
yénpàk ~ yémphàk-a kind of umbrella

n + ph

ci'nphén ~ ci'mphén-gift of the gab
ko'nphù ~ ko'mphù-cistern
sénphù ~ sémphù-coffer

n + b

lánbo'n ~ lámbo'n-fort
pàmbi ~ pàmbi-plant
yémbi ~ yémbi-hen.

2. 4. 12. 2. 2 Free variation of final -n with -ng.

Final -n may remain or be in free variation with -ng when -n is followed by -k, -kh and -g.

n + k

ci'nkùpsén ~ ci'ngkùpsén-spittoon
ténkàpphò'm ~ téngkàpphò'm-arena for shooting competition

n + kh

lánkhóng ~ lángkhón-trench
pò'ngkhó'i ~ pò'ngkhó'i-limit
pàngkhò'k ~ pàngkhò'k-arum

n + g

lò'n:go`i ~ lò'nggo`i-treasure
sò'n:gón ~ sò'nggón-cowshed
sò'n:góm ~ sò'nggóm-milk

2. 4. 12. 2. 3 Free variation of final -n with -l.

Final -n is in free variation with -l in the monosyllabic words.

ci`n~ci`l-mouth
 lán~lál-battle
 pɔ`n~pɔ`l-bund
 sɛn~sɛl-money
 tɛn~tɛl-bow

Final -n is also in free variation with -l when -n occurs in the last syllables of the compound words.

lɔ`ipɔ`n~lɔ`ipɔ`l-earth wall
 lɔ`ipàn~lɔ`pàl-flower plant
 sɔ`mbɔ`n~sɔ`mbɔl-fence
 thánin~thánil-full moon
 tho`nggán~tho`nggál-gate

Final -n is also in free variation with -l when -n is followed by -h.

ci`nhài~ci`lhài-oral statement
 kúnhúmdói~kúlhúmdói-twenty three
 línhà~lílhà-young one of the snake
 mánhɔ`i~málhɔ`i-apricot
 sɛnhá~sɛlhá-price
 wánhɔ`usɔ`ng~wálhɔ`usɔ`ng-kitchen

2. 4. 12. 2. 4 Final -n>nl, ll

Final -n followed by the vowels (monophthongs) may remain or be changed into -nl or ll.

ci`n:ɔ`knɔbɔ...ci`lɔ`knɔbɔ...c`llo`knɔbɔ-meeting of the birds
 lɔ`n:ɔ`nbɔ...lɔ`nlo`nbɔ...lɔ`llo`nbɔ-trade
 pɔ`n:ɔ`nnɔbɔ...pɔ`nlo`nnɔbɔ...pɔ`llo`nnɔbɔ-change of the sides of the two rival teams in a game.
 sin:ɔ`nnɔbɔ...sinlo`nnɔbɔ...sillo`nnɔbɔ-choice of wrong profession

Final -n may remain or be elided or changed into l when -n is followed by -l.

lónlù...lónlù...lólù...lólù-EM-a fishing trap
 lónlém...lólém...lólém,EM house

120—Manipuri Grammar

kónlùp...kólùp ..kóllùp neighbouring area
pó'nlàngkho`k...pó'làngkho`k...pó'llàngkho`k-cloth stand
pónlóí...pólóí...póllóí end
pónláng...póláng . póláng-basket
so`nlùp...so`lùp...so'llùp-herd of cattle

Final -n is changed into -nl or -ll in the verbal forms in the present indefinite tense and imperative mood when -n occurs as the final phoneme of the verb roots and is followed by -i, marker of general statement (present tense) and -o, marker of imperative mood.

cèn+i>cènlí . cèllí-he runs
kho`n+i>kho`nli . kho`lli-he thinks
yén+o>yénlo`...yélló`-(you) distribute

2. 4. 12. 2. 5 Final -n>r.

Final -n>r in a few words when -n is followed by ^{*}-p, -ph, -th and -s.

fansi,LW>phársí hanging by neck till death
ko`n+pándobo+zàt>ko`rphàn a kind of utensil
ko`n+phù+kumbo+zàt>ko`rphù-a kind of utensil
tán+thá:nobo+kángi>tárko`ng,EM a kind of musical instrument

2. 4. 12 3. Final -ng

2. 4. 12. 3. 1 Final -ng>r.

Final -ng>r in a few words when -ng is followed by the unaspirated voiceless stops.

ci`ng+ki+lò`bàk>cèrbàk edible rock pieces
khóng+tàk>khórdàk-name of a river
khóng+po`t>kórbo`t-a kind of plantation
tong+po`t>tórbo`t-white gourd

2. 4. 12. 4. 1 Gemination of final nasals

Final nasals other than -n may remain or be geminated when they are followed by the vowels (monophthongs).

m + v

kóm:ín...kúmin—a kind of woman's dress
 kúm:ón...kummon-annual sradha ceremony
 khóm:ínbi`...khómmínbi`-wet nurse
 ló'mló'k...ló'mmo'k-wild bear

ng + v

ci`ng:ú...ci`ngngú,EM-god
 hóng:ú...hóngngú-elephant's ears
 kho`ng:úp...kho`ngngúp-shoe
 lán:ón...lángngo`n,EM-incarnation
 lóng:úp..lóngngúp-a fishing trap
 níng:ón...níngngón-daughter
 nóng:ín :rónngín-a kind of bird
 sìng:út...sìngngút-a kind of reed

-m and -ng may remain or be geminated in the verbal forms when they are followed by the vowel (monophthongs).

m + v

phó`m + í > phó`m í...phó`mmí-we/you/they sit
 tó`m + o` > tó`m:ó`...:ó`mmo`-(you) learn (imperative)

ng + v

khó`ng + í > khóng:i...khó`ngngí-we/you/they know
 tóng + o` > tóng:o`...tóngngo`-(you) ride (imperative)

2. 4. 12. 4. 2 Retention or elision of final nasals

A final nasal phoneme may remain or be elided when it is followed by the same consonant.

m + m

cómmo`ng...cómo`ng,EM-palanquin
 húmmái...húmaí-fan
 ìmmúng...ìmúng-family
 phó`mmúng...phó`múng-bed
 sùmmàng...sùmàng-courtyard

n + n

ho'nnùbi'...ho'nùbi'-old woman

lo'nnái...lo'nái-private affair

kónnúng...kónúng-royal palace

so'nnáo...so'náo-calf

sinnái...sinái, EM-worker

ng + ng

kángngó'u...kángó'u a kind of dish

kángngà...kángà swan

mómàngngó'i...mómàngó'i-long ago

nùngngó'u...nùngó'u-marble

nùngngà...nùnga-a kind of fish

2. 4. 12. 4. 3 Retention of final nasals

A final nasal phoneme remains when it is followed by the same consonant which is the initial phoneme of some formative affixes.

m + m

ohùm + mùk > ohùmmùk-about three

cò'm + mò'nbo > cò'mmò'nbo-too simple

n + n

lo'n + nò > lo'nnò-secretly

tán + nì ng + pò > tánnìngbò-wish to earn

ng + ng

cèng + ngàk + to > cèngngàkto-only the rice

míng + ngàkto > míngngàkto-only the name

2. 5 MORPHOPHONEMIC CHANGES OF CONSONANTS IN LOAN WORDS

Consonants in some loan words from the NIA languages undergo morphophonemic changes.

2. 5. 1 *k*

2. 5. 1. 1 *g > k*

-g in the initial and final positions > k.

gongdhok > kə'ntrək-sulphur

gufa > kúphá-cave

guvak > kwá-betel nut

govi > kóbi`-cabbage

deg > dèk-a kind of utensil

mug > múk-a kind of pulse

sag > sák-a kind of dish

thag > tho`k-deceit

doroga > daruka-police

2. 5. 1. 2 *Some sources of -k*

There are also the following sources of -k :—

kh > k-dorkhast > dər'rkás-petition

b > k-button > kúdám

t > k-olkotora > ɔmpo'ká-bitumen

2. 5. 1. 3 *Elision of final -k*

Final -k in some words is elided when it is followed by the same consonants.

cəkkɾə > cəkrə-disc

cəkkə > cəká-wheel

cəkki > cə'kri-grinding stone

sikka > siki-a coin worth twenty five paise

tikki > tiki-small round cake made of charcoal powder

2. 5. 2 *g*

2. 5. 2. 1 *k > g*

-k in the initial and intervocal positions > g.

ku:a > gúhá-well

124. -Manipuri Grammar

kumbhir>gúmbhir-alligator

thakur>thágú-a word of address to a Brahman gentleman

2. 5. 2. 2 *kh>g*

There is an instance of -kh>g,

khukhuri>khúgri-a kind of dao

2. 5. 3 *kh*

2. 5. 3. 1 *ksh>kh*

-ksh in the loan words>kh

ksher>khir- milk-rice

kshur>khúr-razor

məkshon>mákhón-butter

poriksha>párikhá-examination

sakshi>sákhī-witness

dokshina>dókhiná-money given to the participants in a religious function

jokshma>zóngkhár-a kind of disease

2. 5. 4 *p*

2. 5. 4. 1 *b>p*

-b in the initial and medial positions >p.

balti>pártin-bucket

babu>bápú-a term of address to Brahmin a gentleman

kəngbəl>kə'mpór-blanket

kəbəz>kə'pə'c-hinges

sabun>sápón-soap

təbla>tə'pilá-a small tambourine

2. 5. 4. 2 *Some sources of -p*

There are also the following sources of -p:—

k>p—əlkətəra>ə'mpə'ká-bitumen

f>p—hofta>háptá-week
t>p - curut>cúrùp-cigarette

2. 5. 5 b

2. 5. 5. 1 p>b

-p in the initial and medial positions >b.

pəkouri>bórá-a kind of fried food
pera>bérá-a kind of sweet meat
tezpotta>tézbàt bay leaf

2. 5. 6 t

2. 5. 6. 1 t>d

-d in the initial and medial positions >t

dof>to'pho't a kind of drum
daku>tákú-robber
dada>tádo-elder brother
deg>tèk-a kind of utensil
dibiya>túbiyá-a small vessel for keeping tobacco
pudina>pútíná-an edible herb

2. 5. 6. 2 Some sources of -t

k>t - kerosine>térsing
th>t—osthi>o'sti-a ceremony before the sraddha ceremony
dh>t—sraddha>sóràt-sraddha ceremony

2. 5. 7 s

2. 5. 7. 1 c>s

-c in the initial and medial positions >s.

cuna>súnú-lime
pickari>péskári-a kind of pump

126—Manipuri Grammar

2. 5. 8 h

2. 5. 8. 1 Elision of -h

-h in the final and medial positions of a few words is elided.

mərḥəm>mólóm liniment

purohit>púri't-priest

səhi>sói signature

kohlu>kó'ú mould

kəcəhri>kə'cə'ri-court

məhavət>mə:ut-elephant-driver

təhsil>tə'sil-a revenue division

2. 5. 9 l

2. 5. 9. 1 r>l

-r in the three positions >l.

rumal>lúmán-handkerchief

rupəya>lúpà rupee, silver

ərḥər>ərḥəl-a kind of pulse

gudəri>gúdúli-a kind of quilt

laru>lálú-a kind of sweet meat

sutəri>sutəli-yarn

darcini>dálcíni-cinnamon

kharij>kho'lás-discharge of the prisoner

mərḥəm>mólóm-liniment

2. 5. 9 2 n>l

-n in the initial position >l.

nəgun>lúgún sacred thread worn by the Hindus

nilam>lílám-auction

2. 5. 10 y

2 5 10 1 Replacement of -y -by -i

-y preceded by -a is replaced by -i. Thus the sound group
-ay is replaced by -ai, one of the six diphthongs.

kayda>káidá-mode
 ray>rái-judgement of a court
 cirayta>círáitá-a kind of spices
 dayitvo>dái-responsibility
 ilayci>yélláici-cardamom
 poncayot>po'ncái-a local self governing body

2. 5. 10. 2 Elision of -y

-y preceded by -o, -o, -b, dh, -s and -n is elided.

oy-rupya>lúpá-rupee, silver
 oy-koyla>kóilá-coal
 by-byapar>bépár-trade
 byabhar>bébhár-good behaviour
 dhy - sandhya>so'ndhá-twilight
 sy-omabasya>ámábo'isá-new moon
 ny-sonyasi>so'inási mendicant
 sunnyo>súinó-zero

2. 5 11 w

2. 5. 11. 1 Elision of -w

-v preceded by -s is elided.

svor>sór-breathing
 svorgo>so'rgo'-heaven
 onusvor>o'núngsár-an alphabet
 isvor>i,ór-god
 nagesvor>nagesór-a kind of flower
 bisvorgo>biso'rgó-a-an alphabet

2. 5. 12 n

2. 5. 12. 1 ng>n

-ng>n when -ng occurs as the initial phoneme of the initial syllables of some compound words and is preceded by -o and -i

o+ng

congdon>co'ndón-sandal

128—Manipuri Grammar

gongdhok > ko`ntrùk-sulphur

gongja > go`nzá-hemp

jongjir > zinzúr- kind of gold necklace

koingci > kánci-wood planks supporting the roof of the house

khongju*i* > khonzúri-a kind of drum

songtori > so`ntri-watchman

i + ng

singdur > sindúr-vermilion

3. MORPHOLOGY

3.0 WORDS

(Parts of Speech)

Some classifications of the Parts of Speech are shown in the text books on Manipuri grammar. The defect of such classifications is the division of Manipuri verbs into the two so-called Parts of Speech viz., Adjective and Verb. This defect is corrected. The following eight fold system of Parts of Speech is used for the sake of convenience :--

- | | |
|---------------|-------------------------------|
| (1) Noun | (5) Adverb |
| (2) Pronoun | (6) Conjunction |
| (3) Verb | (7) Relational (Postposition) |
| (4) Qualifier | (8) Interjection |

3.1 NOUNS

Nouns in Manipuri are declinables. They distinguish the categories of Gender, Number and Case.

3.1.1 GENDER

Gender is a semantic-cum-grammatical category. Nouns are divided into three classes viz , (a) animate human nouns (b) animate nonhuman nouns and (c) inanimate nouns.

Animate nouns both human and non-human are in the masculine, feminine and common genders. Inanimate nouns are considered neuter.

Nouns of masculine gender do not correspond to all the nouns of feminine gender. Only the male denoters have their corresponding female denoters. Thus formation of female denoters from the male denoters is discussed here.

130—Morphology

3. 1. 1. 1 *Male and Female denoters of the human nouns.*

Male denoters in *pə* derived from the primary stems have their female denoters by changing *pə* into *pi`*.

Masculine

opo`kpo-father
ho`nũbo-old man
hĩngcàbo-monster
hũránbo-thief
i`sə`iho`nbo-lead singer
kə`sũbo-man of bad reputation
lo`lo`nbo-trader
lo`mbóibo-monk
lo`imàbo,EM-king
lúcingbo-leader
mə`mánno`bo-friend
pámmúbo-beloved

Feminine

opo`kpi`-mother
ho`nũbi old woman
hĩngcàbi`-monstress
hũránbi`-thief
i`sə`iho`nbi`-lead singer
kə`sũbi`-whore
lo`lo`nbi`-trader
lo`mbóibi`-nun
lo`màbi`,EM-queen
lúcingbi`-leader
mə`mánno`bi`-friend
pámmúbi`-beloved

A few male denoters in *pə* derived from the nominal stems have their female denoters by changing *pə* into *pi`*.

Masculine

oso`ibo,EM-songster
hàobo-hill man
máibo-priest
nũpà-man

Feminine

oso`ibi`-songstress
hàobi`-hill woman
máibi`-priestess
nũpi`-woman

Nouns in *pə* denoting male members of some Manipuri families derived from the primary stems form their female denoters by changing *pə* into *pi`*.

Masculine

élangbo-male member of the
 Elangbam family
khũmɔ`nthémbo-male member
 of the Khumanthem family
láisro`bo-male member of the
 Lassram family

Feminine

élangbi`-female member of the
 Elangbam family
khũmɔ`nthémbi`-female member
 of the Khumanthem family
láisro`bi`-female member of the
 Laisram family

A few proper nouns in *pɔ* derived from the primary stems form their female denoters by changing *pɔ* into *pì* or *nù*.

<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>
ongo'ubo (ngo'u-white)	ongo'ubi/ngo'unù
caobo (cao-great)	caobi/coonù
tonbo (ton, junior in age)	tombi/tónnù

A few proper nouns in *pɔ* derived from the nominal stems have their female denoters by changing *pɔ* into *pì*.

<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>
naobo (naowa, EM-baby)	naobi
yainobo/yaimo (yai-middle)	yaimobi

(2) ngo'u, male and mo, female

Male denoters in ngo'u have their female denoters in mo.

<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>
i'bungó-gentleman	i'bemo-lady
mo'idin'gu, EM-king	mo'ito'i lo'imo, EM-queen

(3) pung, male and mo, female

A few nouns in pung form their female denoters by replacement of pung by mo.

<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>
laibungtho'u, EM-God	lairemmo, EM-Goddess
mobung-elder brother	monomo-wife of the elder brother
yabung-elder brother	matomo-wife of the elder brother

(4) tho'u, male and len, female

A few nouns in tho'u form their female denoters by the addition of len after dropping tho'u.

132~Morphology

Masculine

po'ntho'u, EM-father
láibo'ngtho'u. EM-king
mobùdho'u-grand father

Feminine

po'lém, EM-mother
lo'imo'rén, EM-queen
yomlen, EM-grand mother

(5) i'bùngó, gentleman and i'bémo, lady

Some human nouns distinguish males and females by using i'bùngó, gentleman and i'bémo, lady after such nouns.

Masculine

bámóni'bùngó-a Brahmin
gentleman
láisi'bùngó-god
mocà:i'bùngó-son
monào:i'bùngó younger brother
(honorific)
mosù:i'bùngó-grand-son
so'ná:i'bùngó-a Manipuri
Rajkumar

Feminine

bámón i'bémo-a Brahmin lady
láisi'bémo-goddess
mocà:i'bémo-daughter
monào:i'bémo-wife of younger
brother
mosù:i'bémo-grand daughter
so'ná:i'bémo-a Manipuri
Rajkumari

(6) mocà-male and co'nù/ni'ngón/nùpi'-woman

Male and female members of clans, communities, regions, countries etc. are formed by adding mocà, male and co'nù/ni'ngón/nùpi', woman after such clans, communities etc.

Masculine

mo'itoimocà-male member of
Meitei community
pángo'n mocà-male member of
Muslim community
khùmó'n mocà-male member of
Khuman clan
móirángmocà-male member of
Moirang clan

Feminine

mo'ito'ico'nù/ni'ngón/nùpi'-fe-
male member of Meitei commu-
nity
pángo'n co'nù/ni'ngón/nùpi'-fe-
male member of Muslim commu-
nity
khùmó'n co'nù/ni'ngón/nùpi'-fe-
male member of Khuman clan
móiráng co'nù/ni'ngón/nùpi'-
female member of Moirang clan

Masculine

ĩmphał mōcā-male resident
of Imphal
owā mōcā man of Burma

Feminine

ĩmphał cō'nū/nī'ngón/nūpi'-female
resident of Imphal
owā cō'nū/nī'ngón/nūpi'-woman of
Burma

Male and Female members of Manipuri families are also formed by using mōcā, male and cō'nū/nī'ngón, female after such families.

Masculine

ko'izō'm mōcā-male member
of Koiyam family
lāisrō'm mōcā-male member of
Laisram family

Feminine

ko'izō,m cō'nū/nī'ngón-female
member of Koiyam family
lāisrō'm cō'nū / nī'ngón- female
member of Laisram family

(7) nūpā-male and nūpi'-woman

Some human nouns distinguish males and females by using nūpā-male and nūpi'-female after such nouns.

Masculine

mōcā nūpā-son
monāo nūpā-younger brother
monái nūpā-male servant
mōsū nūpā-grand son

Feminine

mōcā nūpi'-daughter
monāo nūpi'-wife of younger brother
monái nūpi'-maid servant
mōsū nūpi'-grand daughter

(8) Gender of some loan words (human nouns)

Some loan words retain their male and female denoters.

Masculine

bo'isno'p-a Vaisnaba gentle-
máháráz-king
thágú-a Brahmin gentleman

Feminine

bo'isno'pi'-a Vaisnaba lady
máháráni-queen
thóuráni a Brahmin lady

(9) Nouns with different forms in the masculine and feminine

A number of nouns have different forms in the masculine and feminine.

134--Morphology

Masculine

mokù-father in law
 momán, EM; mámo', LW-uncle
 (maternal)
 mōpon-father's elder brother
 mōpù-grand father
 mōto'n; khura, LW-father's
 younger brother
 mōtao'-friend (male)
 mōwà-husband
 pākho'ng-boy
 pákhra-widower

Feminine

mōnēm-mother-in-law
 mōnè-aunt (maternal)
 mōmhan-wife of father's elder brother
 mōbèn-grand mother
 mō'ndón-wife of father's younger
 brother
 mōtā-friend (female)
 mōtù-wife
 lō'isábi'-girl
 lúkhra-widow

(10) Nouns without the corresponding female denoters.

Some nouns have no corresponding female denoters.

híro'i-boatman	mōnàoyo'k, EM-priest
hùiro'i-scout	ózá, LW-teacher
lō'umi-peasant	pánzì astrologer
lánmì'-soldier	sinmì'-worker
màico'u, EM-scholar	wákmo, EM-writer
màino'u, EM-disciple	

(11) Nouns without the corresponding male denoters

Some nouns have no corresponding male denoters.

pkhúngbi'-barren woman	mōpi'-royal nurse
cánno'bi'-beloved (female)	mōrúmbi'-concubine
khàbi', EM-priestess	náoro'ibi-midwife
lónno'bi'-co-wife	yo'kcabi'-nurse
màiyō'knabi'-wid. wife	

(12) Nouns of common gender

There are some nouns of common gender which denote both the males and females.

oho'n-old person	mərùp friend
ongàng-baby	mĩ̀- <i>person</i>
ci'ngmĩ̀- <i>hill tribal</i>	mi'co'ng-supporter
khò'nglo'i-follower	mi'nái-slave
lái-god	rohà-youth
lámhá-rival	pákhónloi-messenger
mónáí-servant	sàgò'i-relative
mápù-cwner	sánnorò'i-player

3. 1. 1. 3 *Male and Female denoters of animate nonhuman nouns.*

Animate non-human nouns are in the common gender.

A few non-human nouns in pə are in the masculine gender. They form their female denoters by changing pə into pi'.

Masculine

kàobə, EM-bull
lábo-male
yénbà-cock

Feminine

mánbi', EM cow
mopi-female
yémbi'-hen

All the animate non-human nouns of common gender distinguish males and females by using lábo, male and omóm/mopi', female after such nouns.

Masculine

hùi lábo-dog
kángo lábo-gender
nóngsà lábo-lion
o'k lábo-boar
so'gón lábo-horse
so'n lábo bull
wàhónglábo-peacock

Feminine

hùi omóm/mopi'-bitch
kángo omóm/mopi'-goose
nóngsà omóm/mopi'-lioness
o'k omóm/mopi'-saw
so'gón omóm/mopi'-mare
so'n omóm/mopi'-cow
wàhóng omóm/mopi'-pea hen

A few animate non-human nouns have entirely different forms in the masculine and feminine

Masculine

céng, EM-cock
kàorén, EM-bull

Feminine

gòidi, EM/thúmbáo, EM-hen
mùkmù, EM-cow

3. 1. 1. 4 *Genders of the inanimate nouns*

Inanimate nouns are in the neuter gender

A few inanimate nouns in po/púng-male marker are considered to be in the masculine gender.

kóro'uhó'nbo, EM-sun

màlo'ngbo, EM-wind

thábúngtón, EM-moon

A few inanimate nouns are also in the masculine gender taking lábo-male.

owáthobi` lábo-papaw plant bearing male flower

úro'iróm lábo—a dye plant bearing male flower

The following inanimate nouns are considered to be in the feminine gender.

lo'ibák-country

málém-earth

lo'ibák-country and málém-earth may be defined by the human nouns in the feminine gender.

mómà lo'ibák mother country

málém lo'imo-mother earth

tho'mbál-lotus and tho'ró-lily are also considered to be in feminine gender. They are used as the proper names of the females. tho'mbál and tho'ró defined and followed by some stative verbal qualifiers (attributive adjectives) in pi', female marker are also used as the proper names of the females.

tho'mbál-lotus

tho'mbál ongoúbi`-white lotus

tho'mbál ongàngbi`-red lotus

tho'mbál oso'ngbi`-green lotus

tho'ró-lily

tho'ró ongoúbi`-white lily

thoró oso'ngbi`-green lily

thorózáobi`-great lily

3. 1. 2 Number

3. 1. 2. 0 *There are two numbers viz., Singular and Plural*

3. 1. 2. 1 *Singular Number*

There is no the marker of the nouns in the singular. Thus the singular of the nouns is shown by the absence of the plural markers.

<i>Singular</i>	<i>meaning</i>	<i>Plural</i>
ongàng	baby	ongàngsing
híngcàbò	monster	híngcàbòsing
lò'mbóibò	monk	lò'mbóibòsing
lò'ipàn	flower plant	lò'ipànsing
nùpi`	woman	nùpi`sing
pàmbi`	plant	pàmbi`sing

3. 1. 2. 2 *Nouns in the plural*

3. 1. 2. 2. 0 *Plural morphemes*

Plural morphemes are shown below :—

- (1) kho`i—(a) epicene plural marker
(b) replative epicene plural marker
(c) emphatic replative plural marker
- (2) mǝkho`i—(a) emphatic replative plural marker
(b) emphatic additive plural marker
- (3) sá — (a) emphatic replative plural marker
- (4) sing—(a) plural marker
(b) emphatic additive plural marker

3. 1. 2. 2. 1 *si'ng, plural marker*

sing, plural marker occurs with many nouns in the following groups—

- (1) human and non-human nouns of both the genders
- (2) human and non-human nouns of common gender
- (3) inanimate nouns in the neuter gender

138—Morphology

Examples :—

- (1) hìngcàbòsing—the moesters
lò'mbóibòsing—the monks
yénbàsing—the cocks
hìngcàbì'sing—the monstresses
lò'mbóibì'sing—the nuns
yénbì'sing—the hens
- (2) hùisingno—the dogs
láisingno—the gods
mì'singno—the persons
thèbòsingno—the rabbits
- (3) hò'ino'asing—the mangoes
thò'bi'singno—the cucumbers
yùbi'singno—the cocoanuts

sing, plural marker occurs with some of the nouns in the following groups :—

- (1) verbal nouns
- (2) suffixed nouns
- (3) honorific nouns

Examples :—

- (1) ohénbòsing—surpluses
opò`nbòsing obstacles
opámboosing—desires
oránbòsing—mistakes
oro`nbòsing—secrets
othìngbòsing—restrictions
owàtpò'sing—deficiencies
- (2) suffixed nouns
ohò`nsing—old persons
ongàngsing babies
conànsing—oats
còrùsingno—straws
mòkùsingno—owls
mòhàsìngno larvae

- (2) torèngsingno-spinning wheels
toyúmsingno,EM-servants
- (3) honorific nouns
khàngcèt'singno-the dhotis
ko'ktho'nsingno-the turbans
mòpùro'ibo'singno-the husbands
mò'mkhàngsingno-the shawls
sò'nggàisingno-the houses
tánlòisingno,EM-the wives

sing, plural marker occurs with a few nouns in the following groups :—

- (1) preduplicated compound nouns
- (2) postduplicated compound nouns
- (3) onomatopoeic compound nouns

Examples :—

- (1) preduplicated compound nouns
oháo othúmsing-sweet meats
owàt opásing-deficiencies
kairen kaizaosing-finely decorated coffins
lò'ug á lò'ngzi'nsing-clues
mòho'i mòróngsing-corns
mòkho'n mòthénsing-varieties
póro'm pómi'tsing-plans
- (2) postduplicated compound nouns
bùdù tètùsing-fools
càron sùrónsing-posteries
sàmarò'k ngàmòro'ksing-hybrids
sónó phónósing-fools
thóúmú naómúsing-contemporaries
- (3) onomatopoeic compound nouns
oho'n lò'mò'nsing-the elders
lái : gúrúsing the superiors
pántho'i páoro'using the proverbs
prò'mán pántho'ising-the proofs

sàgò'i náto'ising the relatives
 sákhi` sáboódsing-the witnesses
 thúmo`k tái:úksing-the baskets

5. 1 2. 2. 1. 2 *Optional deletion of si'ng, plural marker*

sing, plural marker may remain with or deleted from the following nouns : –

- (1) nouns defined by the cardinal numerals, kho`ro'-some, moyám, many, pùmnómok, all etc.
- (2) nouns defined by the reduplicated verbal qualifiers
- (3) nouns coordinated with omósùng. 'and'.

Examples :—

- (1) i`bùngósing mori`no/i`bùngó mori`no-four gentlemen
 i`bémosing kho`ro`no/i`bémo kho`ro`no-some ladies
 məcəasing moyámnoi məcə moyámno-many of his children
 morúpsing pùmnómokno/morúp pùmnómokno- all the friends
- (2) háoro háorobo i`nságsing/i`nság-the delicious curries
 pònglo pònglobo mi`sing/mi`-the foolish persons
- (3) ho`i omósùng lo`ising/ho`i : lo`i-the fruits and flowers
 hùi omósùng yénsing/hùi:yén-the dogs and hens.

3. 1 2. 1. 1. 3 *Deletion of si'ng, plural marker*

sing, plural marker is deleted in the following nouns in the plural :—

- (1) subjective complements followed by ni`/lá, "be".
- (2) nouns used as the direct objects of the verbs like hàp, appoint, kho`n, elect etc,
- (3) nouns coordinated with -o "and".

Examples –

- (1) oi`khài sinmi` ni`-we are workers
 mo`kho`l pò`nóit` lá-are they scholars

- (2) *khúnzásingno mǎ'kho'ibú ho'nzo'bo kho'nlè*-The villagers have elected them *honzobas*.
so'rkárno mǎkho'ibú cúránthábo háplè-The government has appointed them spies.
- (3) *ho'i;ó lo'i: ó*, fruit and flower
hùl;ó yén : ó, dogs and hens

3. 1. 2. 2. 1. 2 *Nouns in the emphatic plural*

Emphatic plural is expressed when sing. plural marker is replaced by the three emphatic plural markers viz , *kho'i*, *mǎkho'i* and *sá*. It is also expressed when sing. plural marker occurs with *mǎkho'i*, emphatic additive plural marker.

(1) *kho'i*, emphatic replative plural marker

kho'i, emphatic replative plural marker may replace sing. plural marker in a few human and personal nouns in the Vocative case.

<i>plural forms</i>	<i>emphatic plural forms</i>	<i>meanings</i>
<i>i'búngósing</i>	<i>i'búngókho'i</i>	oh ! gentlemen
<i>i'bémósingbú</i>	<i>i'bémǎkho'i</i>	oh ! ladies
<i>i'nàosingbú</i>	<i>i'nàokho'i</i>	oh ! younger brother
<i>tádo'singbú</i>	<i>tádo'kho'i</i>	oh ! elder brothers

(2) *sá*, emphatic replative plural marker

sá, emphatic replative plural marker may replace sing. plural marker in a few personal and human nouns in the Vocative case. In such case, these human nouns take *mǎcà*, male.

<i>plural forms</i>	<i>emphatic plural forms</i>	<i>meaning</i>
<i>i'cò'nsing</i>	<i>i'cò'nsá</i>	oh ! my younger sisters
<i>i'càsing</i>	<i>i'càsá</i>	oh ! my children
<i>i'nàosingbú</i>	<i>i'nàosá</i>	oh ! my younger brothers
<i>lo'ibákmǎcàsingbú</i>	<i>lo'ibákmǎcàsá</i>	oh ! citizens

(3) *mǎkho'i*, emphatic replative plural marker

mǎkho'i functions as (a) emphatic replative plural marker and (b) emphatic additive plural marker replacing and occurring with sing. plural marker.

142—Morphology

(3/1) məkho'i, emphatic replative plural marker

məkho'i, emphatic replative marker may replace sing, plural marker when emphasis on the plurality is intended.

<i>plural forms</i>	<i>emphatic plural forms</i>	<i>meaning</i>
lɔ'mhùising	lɔ'mhùì məkho'i	the foxes
nùpi'sing	nùpi'məkho'i	the women
úcèksing	úcèkməkho'i	the birds
wáho'ngsing	wáho'ngməkho'i	the peacocks

məkho'i, emphatic replative plural marker remains with the nouns defined by the cardinal numerals kho'ró', some, mɔyám, many or pùmno'mo'k-all and ɔdù, those/osi', these while sing, plural marker may remain with or be deleted from such nouns.

hɔ'ino'u kho'ró'osi' məkho'ino, some of these mangoes
 lɔ'imɔyám ɔsi' məkho'ino, many of these flowers
 mi'pùmno'mo'k ɔdù məkho'ino, all of those persons
 úcèk mɔri' ɔdù məkho'ino, those four birds

(3/2) məkhoi, emphatic additive plural marker

məkho'i, emphatic additive plural marker occurs with sing. plural marker in the nouns defined by ɔdù, those/osi', these. In such case, məkho'i is preceded by sing and ɔdù/osi'.

<i>plural forms</i>	<i>emphatic plural forms</i>	<i>meanings</i>
hɔ'ising ɔsi'	hɔ'ising ɔsi'məkho'i	these fruits
ising ɔsi'	ising ɔsiməkhoi'	those thatches
lɔ'ising ɔdù	lɔ'ising ɔdù məkho'i	these flowers
ú:sing ɔdù	ú:sing ɔdù məkho'i	those trees

3. 1. 2. 2. 2 Nouns in the epicene plural

Epicene plural expresses one and his group.

kho'i functions as epicene plural marker and replative epicene plural marker.

(1) kho'i, epicene plural marker

kho'i, epicene plural marker occurs with the following types of nouns :—

- (a) a few human nouns of relationship
- (b) human nouns in *pə* and *pi`* denoting male and female members of some Manipuri families
- (c) proper nouns

Examples :—

- (a) *məpəkho`ino*-the father and his group
məwəkho`ino-the husband and his group
- (b) *láisə`bi` kho`ino*-the female member of the Laisram family and her group
to`izámbo kho`ino-the male member of the Toijam family and his group
- (c) *rámkho`ino*-Ram and his group
syámkho`ino-Syam and his group

kho`i, epicene plural marker remains with the nouns of the above types defined by the cardinal numerals, *kho`ro`*, some, *khwà`i*, all, *məyám*, many etc.

məpəkho`i məngàno-the father and five members of his group
láisə`bikho`i khwà`ino-the female member of the Laisram family and all the members of her group
rámkho`i məyámno-Ram and many members of his group

(2) *kho`i*, replacive epicene plural marker

kho`i, replacive epicene plural marker may replace sing. plural marker in a few human and personal nouns when epicene plurality is intended.

<i>plural forms</i>	<i>meanings</i>	<i>epicene plural forms</i>
<i>i`bùngósingno</i>	the gentlemen	<i>i`bùngókho`ino</i>
<i>i`bèmósingno</i>	the ladies	<i>i`bèməkho`ino</i>
<i>məcèsingno</i>	the elder sisters	<i>məcèkho`ino</i>
<i>məyàmbəsingno</i>	the elder brothers	<i>məyàmbəkho`ino</i>
<i>ózásingno</i>	the teachers	<i>ózákho`ino</i>

3. 1. 2. 2. 1 *Nouns in the emphatic epicene plural*

kho'i, epicene plural marker expresses emphatic epicene plural occurring with one or both of the two emphatic additive plural markers viz., (a) **mokho'i** and (b) **sing**.

(1) **kho'i+mokho'i**

kho'i, epicene plural marker occurs with **mo-kho'i**, emphatic additive plural marker and case marker. In such case, **kho'i** is followed by **mokho'i** and case markers

<i>epicene plural forms</i>	<i>emphatic epicene plural forms</i>	<i>meaning</i>
mopàkho'no	mopàkho'imokho'ino	the father and his group
mowàkho'ino	mowàkho'imokho'ino	the husband and his group

(2) **kho'i+sing+osi'odù**

kho'i+sing+osi'odù+mokho'i

kho'i, epicene plural marker occurs with **sing**, emphatic additive plural marker or **sing** and **mokho'i** in the nouns with the case markers defined by **odu**, **that/osi'**, **this**.

(a) **kho'i+sing**

i'bùngókho'ising osi'no-this gentleman and his group

i'bèmkho'ising osi'no-this lady and her group

moyàmbokho'ising odùno-that elder brother and his group

(b) **kho'i+sing+mokho'i**

mocékho'ising osi'mokho'ino-this elder sister and her group

mocò'nkho'ising osi'makh'ino-this younger sister and her group

mámokho'ising odù mokho'ino-that uncle and his group.

3. 1. 3 Case

3. 1. 3. 0 Manipuri nouns express case relations without undergoing any change in their forms. Thus the formal change in the nouns cannot be the basis for deciding the cases in Manipuri, though such change is recommended by the modern descriptive linguists as the basis for case classification.

Supposed relation of the nouns with other words in the sentence is the traditionally accepted basis for deciding the cases. On such basis, cases in the Manipuri are considered to be eight. In such consideration, the case markers are taken as the integral parts of the nouns and thus the case forms are treated as the various forms of the nouns. An attempt is made here to outline the basic features of the eight cases on the basis of the traditionally accepted case systems.

Markers of the cases in the Manipuri other than those of the dative and ablative are the monosyllabic forms. Markers of the dative and ablative are the compounds of the markers of the genitive and locative. Markers of the eight cases are shown below—

<i>Case</i>	<i>marker</i>	<i>meaning</i>
1 (a) nominative	ϕ (zero)	(subject)
1 (b) agentive	nɔ	(subject)
2 accusative	ϕ (zero), pú	(object)
3 (a) Instrumental	nɔ	by, with
3 (b) mediative	nɔ	by, through
3 (c) comitative	kɔ	with
4 genitive	kí	of, 's
5 locative	tɔ	in, at, to
6 Dative		
6 (a) possessive dative	kí	possession
6 (b) intensive dative	kidɔmɔ`k	for
6 (c) purposive dative	kidɔmɔ`k	in order to(do)
6 (d) indirect object-dative	tɔ	to
7 Ablative	tɔgí	from, than
8 Vocative	pú	calling

Nouns in both the numbers do not undergo any change in their forms when they take case markers. Such markers are simply added to the singular/plural forms of the nouns. Thus the case forms of the nouns are simple and regular. Initial consonants of some case markers viz., —k, —p and —t are voiced when these case markers are added to the singular nouns ending with the vowels and nasals. Such consonants are also voiced when these case markers are added to the nouns in the plural.

TYPICAL DECLENSIONS

<i>cases</i>	<i>singular</i>	<i>plural</i>
nominative	mi`/mi`nɔ, person	mi`sing/mi`singɔ, persons
accussative	mi`/mi`bú, person	mi`sing/mi`singbú, persons
instrumental	cèkno-with the brick	cèksingnɔ-with the bricks
genitive	mi`gi-of the person	mi`singgi-of the persons
locative	mi`dɔ-to the person	mi`singdɔ-to the persons
dative	mi`gidomɔ`k-for the person	mi`singgidomɔ`k-for the persons
ablative	mi`dogi-from the person	mi`singdogi-from the persons
vocative	ózábú-oh ! teacher	ózásingbú-oh ! teachers

3. 1. 3 ϕ , *nominative**nɔ, agentive*3. 1. 3. 1 ϕ , *nominative*

ϕ , nominative occurs with the subjects of the stative verbs (predicative adjectives).

hɔ`inɔú thúmi`-the mango is sweet

lólá pɔ`ngi`-the donkey is foolish

lɔ`mhùì singi`-the fox is wise

mádhɔ`p ngàorɔ`mlè-Madhup had been mad

syám làirɔ`l-Syam is poor

ϕ , nominative occurs with the subjects of some transitive and intransitive verbs.

lɔ`i sàtli`-the flower blooms

lɔphù lɔ`ikóndɔ hɔ`uri`-the plaintain tree grows in the garden

sínmi` thɔ-bɔ`k sùri`-the worker is doing the work

syám párà páro`mlè-Syam had read his lesson

ϕ , nominative also occurs with the following :—

- (1) complement of an intransitive verb
- (2) complement of transitive verb
- (3) apposition to anyone to the above

Examples -

- (1) mádho`p ló`umi` ni`-Madhop is a peasant
mósi` yúm ni`-this is a house
- (2) khúnzàsingno rámbú lúcingbo kho`nlè-the villagers have
elected Ram their leader
sò`rkárno syámbú kiráni hàplè-government has appointed
Syam the clerk (1)
- (3) moshàk módhúgi monào gópál ni`-he is Modhu's younger
brother Gopal
mó`ntrínò mōcànùpà syámbú ózá hàplè-the minister has
appointed his son Syam the teacher

3. 1. 3. 1 2 *no, agentive*

no, agentive is obligatory for the subjects of some types of the verbs.

no, agentive occurs with the subjects of the verbs expressing causation and physical contacts and with the subjects of the verbs occurring in the two coordinate clauses of the compound sentences.

(1) causation

módhúnò rámbú cithi odù ího`nli`-Modhu has the letter
written by Syam
mádho`pno syámbú phí sùho`nli`-Madhop gets that cloth
washed by Syam

(2) physical contact

mádho`pno módhúbú kho`ngpàkno kàowi`-Madhop kicks
Modhu
syámno rámbú mùknà thási`-Syam defeats Ram in the
wrestling

-
1. Complement of the transitive verbs never takes the accusative marker. Such complement is different from the nouns in the accusative case with a Φ maker, because in the later case, the ϕ may be replaced by the variant pú. Objective complement is thus considered to be formally in the nominative.

(3) two coordinate clauses

módhúno nò'k:i', mádho`pno kò'ppi`-Modhu laughs and
 Madhop cries
 rámnò mú:i', syámno ngo'uwi`-Ram is black and Syam is
 white

no, agentive occurs with the subjects of following
 verbs :—

- (1) Verbs of the subordinate adjective clauses in po, who/that
 and pogi, of why/where.
- (2) Verbs of the subordinate relative clauses in po odù, what
 and po odúk, as much as.

Examples :—

- (1) módhúno pábo láiri`k-the book that Modhu reads
 mádho`pno sáso'mbo yùm-the house that Madhop built
 rámnò kodáido kò'plo'mbogi wàri`-the story of where
 Ram cried
 syámno koro'mno sáobogi wàri`-the story of how Syam is
 angry
- (2) múhónno hàiribo odù what Muhon is saying
 ózánò tàklo'mbo odù-what the teacher taught
 mádho`pno síngbo odúk rázéndi síngdè-Rajen is not as
 much wise as Madhop is
 rámnò pò'ngbo odúk gópáldi pò'ngdè-Gopal is not as
 much foolish as Ram is

no, agentive also occurs with the subjects of the verbs
 of the subordinate adverb clauses in língo'ido, while, pógúmno, just
 as ... so and pòni`no, since.

mádho`pno gópál kò'uríngò'ido while Madhop is calling Gopal
 mómánnò móbásíngbù ngàk sénobogúmno-just as the mother
 looks after her children

rámnò syámbù phùro'mlobonì`no-since Ram had beaten Syam

(no, is also instrumental marker which will be discussed
 later)

3. 1. 3. 2 *phi, pu', accusative*3. 1. 3. 2. 1 *phi, accusative*

phi, accusative occurs with the objects of the following types of the transitive verbs :—

- (1) many of the transitive verbs of the simple sentences
- (2) transitive verbs of the simple sentences and co-ordinate clauses expressing the Passive Voice without the subject.

Examples :—

- (1) *hùino cāk cā:i*—The dog eats the cooked rice
hō'udo'ngnō sō'nggóm thō'k:i—The cat drinks the milk
mádhúno kói kō'k:i—Modhu shaves his beard
- (2) *hùránbō phārè*—The thief has been caught
hōnùbi' hātlo'mlè The old woman had been killed
lòu yón:goni', íngkhón lō'igoni'—The paddy land will be sold and homestead land will be bought
thō'bō'k sùgoni', khùtsùmo'n phō'nggoni'—The work will be done and the wage will be got

3. 1. 3. 2. 2 *pu' accusative*

pú, accusative occurs with the objects of the transitive verbs of the simple sentences expressing (1) force, (2) encounter and (3) physical contact provided such objects precede the other words in the sentence.

Examples :—

- (1) force
gópálbú rámnō kho'ngpākno káowi'—Ram kicks Gopal
módhúbú syámno cō'ino phū:i'—Syam beats Modhu with the stick
- (2) encounter
kómólbú mádhō'pno kàngzō'i thōi—Madhop defeats Komol in hockey
rámúbú syámno mùknà thā:i'—Syam beats Ram in wrestling

(3) physical contact

mācābú māmāno cūppi`-The mother kisses her child
módhúbú syámno kónli`-Modhu embraces Syam

pú, accusative also occurs with the following types of the objects of the transitive verbs in the simple sentences :—

- (1) objects occurring with the subjective complements
- (2) Indirect objects of the transitive verbs expressing appointment, causation etc
- (3) pronominal direct objects expressing persons

Examples :—

(1) objects with the subjective complements

mádhō`pno módhúbú mōnāo oīno lo`ino`i-Madhōp treats Modhu as his younger brother
rāmno syāmbú pō,ndi`t oīno lōūwi`-Ram treats Syam as a scholar

(2) Indirect objects

khúnzāsīngno módhúbú lúcingbo khs`nlè-The villagers have elected Modhu their leader

lo`ibākmōcāsīngno rāmbú níngtho`u hāplo`mi`-The citizens made Ram the king

módhúno rāmbú cīthī iho`nli-Modhu has the letter written by Ram

syámno gópālbú láiri`k phong:honli`-Syam gets the book published by Gopal

(3) pronominal direct objects

mádhō`pno mōhākpú káurè-Madhōp has forgotten him
módhúno nōhākpú ko`uri-Modhu is calling you

(pú is also Vocative Case marker which will be shown later).

3. 1. 3. 3 *Instrumental, mediative, comitative*

no, instrumental, mediative

ko, ko`lo`ino`no, comitative

3 1. 3. 3. 1 *no, instrumental*

no, instrumental shows the instrument used in the consummation of the verbal action or the parts of body used in performing such action.

módhúno kólómno i-Modhu writes with the pen

mádhopno thàngno ho'i kho'k:i'-Madhop peels the fruit with the knife

múhónno mami'tmo'kno úro'klè-Muhon has seen with his own eyes

máláno gitábú kho'ngpàkno kàowì'-Mala kicks Gita

no, instrumental is used to show the following:—

- (1) cause, reason, origin
- (2) components with which things are made

Examples—

- (1) mádhop kénso'rno si-Madhop dies of cancer
rám mo'ino po'klè-Ram has been burnt with fire

- (2) máláno lo'ibàkno cophù sá:i'-Mala makes the pot with earth
rádháno lo'ngno phi sá:i'-Radha weaves the cloth with yarn

3. 1. 3. 3. 1 b no, mediative

Case marker—**no** has a mediative sense.

mádhopti' so'ngárinó lák:i'-Madhop comes by the bullock cart

rádhádi' hino co'tkhi'-Radha went by boat

syámdi' érópléno lák:i'-Syam comes by aeroplane

3. 1. 3. 2 ko, ko lo'inono, comitative

ko and **ko lo'inono**-comitative show accompaniment of/by non-abstract things or persons. They occur with the verbs in **mi-nno**, accompaniment.

máláno sántigo/sántigo lo'inono co'tmínno'i-Mala goes with Santi.

152—Morphology

mádhò'pno módhúgɔ/módhúgɔ lo'inoɔ lo'imiaɔ'i-Madhòp
lives with Modhu

ko occurs with the verbs in no, interaction.
ràmnno syámgo kbo'tno'i-Ram quarrels with Syam
rázénno gópálgɔ phúnno'i-Rajen fights with Gopal

3. 1. 3. 4 to, locative

to, locative is used in the sense of (1) in, inside, within, (2)
at, (3) on, upon and (4) to.

(1) in, inside, within

i'mà i'múngɔ lo'i-Mother is inside the house
nóngpo'kto númi't tho'ka'-The sun rises in the east.

(2) at

mádhò'p móirángɔ láklè-Madhòp has come Moirang
rám khúráido thúnglè-Ram has arrived at Khurai •

(3) on, upon

módhú cókridɔ tùmlí-Modhu sleeps on the chair
tébo'ldo láiri'k omo lo'i-There is a book on the table

(4) to

mo'nrino módhúɔ hàì-The minister says to Modhu
rámnno Syamdo wàho'ng odu ho'ngi'-Ram asks that ques-
tion to Syam

3. 1. 3. 4. 1 to, mediative

Case marker—to has the mediative sense—'through, along'.
módhúno mi'hùtho'ngɔ lo'ikón yéngi'-Modhu looks at the
garden through the window

so'n:gárinɔ lo'mbi' poringɔ cə'tli-The bullock cart goes along
the road

3. 1. 3. 5 Genitive (possessive and qualificatory)

(a) ki', possessive genitive

(b) ki, qualificatory genitive

3. 1. 3. 5. 1 *ki'*, possessive genitive

ki, possessive genitive precedes the possessed nouns in both the numbers which occur with or without the Case markers.

(1) nouns in *ki* without Case markers

málági láiri`k-Mala's book

mádhobígi li`k-Madhabi's necklace

nohárónsinggi phági-jokes of the youths

sinmi`singgi khùtsùmo`n-wage of the workers

(2) nouns in *ki* with Case markers

cohi` mori`gi ongàngdo-to the four year old child

lùpà oni`gi hò`ido-to the fruits worth two rupees

nùnggi yùmdo-in the house of stone

i`singgi mori`ktogi-from the drop of water

láiri`kki lámàidogi-from the page of the book

ùmo`nggi po`ttho`ktogi-from the product of the forest

ki precedes some Relational words derived from the nominal stems with *mo*, secondary prefix and *to*, locative (See Chapter on Relational words).

kimòhùtto, instead of ; *hò`igi mòhùtto*, instead of fruit

kimòni`ngdo, behind ; *yùngi mòni`ngdo*, behind the house

kimòpándò, outside ; *i`ngkhólgì mòpándò*-outside the homestead land

kimòro`mdo, about, concerning ; *lálgi mòro`mdo*, about the war

kimòri`do, in respect ; *cádinggi mòri`do*, in respect of expenditures

kimòtungdo, after, behind ; *thá omogi mòtungdo*, after one month

kimòtho`kto, on, in addition to, besides ; *mòdùgi mòtho`kto*, in addition to that

kimòtho`ngdo, next ; *rámgi mòthongdo*, next to Ram

3. 1. 3. 5. 2 *ki'* qualificatory genitive

Qualificatory genitive has *ki*.

hò`ikón:gi hò`ising, fruits of the orchard.

khún:gi lóumi'sing, peasants of the village

lò'ikón:gi lóising-flowers of the garden

móiránggi sínmi'sing-workers of Moirang

3. 1. 3. 6 *Dative (possessive, intensive, purposive, indirect object)*

- (a) ki, possessive dative
- (b) kídomò'k-intensive dative
- (c) kídomò'k-purposive dative
- (d) to, indirect object—dative
- (e) to, destinational dative

3. 1. 3. 6. 1 *ki' possessive dative*

ki, possessive dative shows possession which is possessed by a possessor and expressed by such possessive verbs as lò'i, ngài, pán etc. expressing "have, had" etc.

módhúgi kólóm òmo lò'i-Modhu has a pen

mádhò'pki monào koyá lóibogè-How many younger brothers has Madhop ?

rámgi mocê òmòto ngài-Ram has only one elder sister

syámgi məcànùpà òmòto ngài-Syam has only one son

sàmúgi mòmò'i òmo pánli-The elephant has a tail

3. 1. 3. 6. 2 *ki'domò'k. intensive dative*

kídomò'k, intensive dative is a compound of ki, possessive dative, to, only and mò'k, emphasiser.

mádhò'pno məcànùpàgídomò'k ghò'ri òmo lò'i-Madhòp buys a watch for his son

páonà brázò'básino mərə'ibàkkídomò'k mothowài kə'tlò'mi'-Paona Brajabasi laid down his life for the country,

kídomò'k, intensive dative may be compressed into ki when the nouns in kídomò'k is preceded by the subject or object or both of the sentences.

rámno yùm òmo məcàgídomò'k/məcági sáro'mi'-Ram built a house for his son.

syámno thábo'k koyá sinmí'singgi-domo'k nó'mlō'mi'-Syam
did many works for the workers

3. 1. 3. 6. 3 *ki'domək, purposive dative*

kidomək, purposive dative functions as the emphasiser. It may be added to the verbal modifiers in nobo, purpose of verbal action for the sake of emphasis on such modifiers.

cə'tnəbo/cə'tnəbəgigomə'k-in order to go
kə'knəbo/kə'knəbəgidomə'k-in order to cut

kidomək, purposive dative may compressed into ki.

sə'knəbo/sə'knəbəgidomək//sə'knəbəgi-in order to sing
tə'knəbo/tə'knəbəgidomək/tə'knəbəgi-in order to grind

3. 1. 3. 6. 4 *Indirect object-dative*

to, Indirect object-dative occurs with the Indirect objects of some Transitive verbs like kə't/pi', give, sinno, hand over. In such case, direct objects of these transitive verbs take ϕ , accusative.

módhúno khúnzàsingdo lùpà cəmo kə'tli-Modhu donates one
hundred rupees to the villagers

mádho'pno rámdo kómá pi'-Madhop gives an orange to Ram
sə'gónđo sə'zi'k pi'zosi'-Let us give grass/fodder to the horse
syámno məco'ndə só sinno'i-Syam hands over the key to his
younger sister

Indirect object—dative in to occurs with the prominal objects in pú, accusative.

rámno mōhākpú púlisto útli-Ram shows him to the police
syámno məkho'ibú mə'ntrido sinnoro'mi'-Syam left them to
the care of the minister

3. 1. 3. 6. 5 *Destinational dative*

to, destinational dative occurs with the destinational nouns associated with the verbs of motion, like lək, come, thung, arrive etc.

débén ho'yéng káncípúrdó lákkoni`-Deben will come to Kanchipur tomorrow

gópno nohán móirángdo thúnglo'mi`-Gopal arrived at Moirang the day before yesterday.

to, destinational dative may be replaced by ϕ (zero) when the destinational noun in to is associated with a few verbs of motion. This ϕ should be confused with ϕ , accusative because it cannot be replaced by pu, accusative.

zítén ngosi i'mpháldo/i'mphál cō'tkoni`-Jiten will go to Imphal today.

zōtin hoyéng móirángdo/móiráng jo'uro'kpo yái-Jotin may proceed upto Moirang tomorrow.

3. 1. 3 7 Ablative (Separative and Comparative)

togi, ablative is a compound of to, locative and ki, genitive.

- (a) togi, separative ablative
- (b) togi, comparative ablative

3. 1. 3. 7. 1 togi', separative ablative

togi. separative ablative shows spatial or temporal separation.

mádhopno tho'nggándogi cēnlo'mi`-Madhop ran from the gate ú:dogi únà kēnlí-leaves fall from the tree

3- 1. 3. 7. 2 togi', comparative ablative

togi, comparative ablative shows the following :—

- (a) comparison between two persons or things
- (b) comparison with reference to more than two persons or things
- (c) comparison with reference to some adverbs

Examples :—

- (a) mōsi'no mōdūdōgi hēnno phō'i`-This is better than that
- thàngdogi kólómno mōti'k mōgún hēnlí-The pen is mightier than the sword

- (b) comparison with reference to more than two persons/ things
 módhuno ɔngàngsɪngdɔgi i'hén hénno pho'i-Modhu is the best of all boys
 mɔsɪno pùmnɔmo`ktɔgi pɪ`k:i`-This is the smallest of all
- (c) comparison with reference to adverbs
 mádhɔ`pno rázɛndɔgi hánno lák:i`-Madhop comes earlier than Rajen
 rámnno syámdɔgi kónno thúngi`-Ram arrives later than Syam

tɔgi, ablative is used to show the following :—

- (a) components with which things are made
 (b) difference between two persons or things

Examples :—

- (a) mádhɔ`pno sɔ`nggómɔdɔgi ghi` ləuwi` Madhop extracts ghi out of milk
 nùpi`singno lɔ`singdɔgi lɔ`ng náí-Women spin yarn out of cotton
- (b) mɔsi`di` mɔdùdɔgi khénno`i-This is different from that
 i`i`ngdi` sɔ`nggómɔdɔgi khénno`pho`m tho`k:i-Water should be different from milk

tɔgi, ablative is also used to show the following :—

- (a) spatial or temporal starting point
 (b) temporal duration with reference to the continuous verbal action of the present and past tenses

Example :—

- (a) i`mphał:dgi káncipúr pháobɔ débɛno kho`ngno cɔ`tli-Deben goes on foot from Imphal to Kanchipur
 khún ɔsi` bɪsnúpúrdɔgi kho`ro` thàpɪ-This village is at a distance from Bisnupur
- (b) ɔyùktɔgi mádhɔ`p láiri`k páro`klí-Madhop has been reading since morning
 hákúmdɔgi módhú ɔsi`dɔ lɔ`iro`k i-Modhu has been staying here since last year

3. 1. 3. 1 *pu'*, vocative

pu', vocative occurs with the human nouns in both the numbers

i'bùngo'bú, oh ! gentleman

i'beməbú-oh ! lady

mərùpsingbú-oh ! friends

mə'ntrisingbú oh ! ministers

3. 1. 3. 9 *Emphatic Case Markers*

Emphatic Case markers signify emphasis on the meanings of some Case markers without any modification to such meanings. They may be classified into the following groups :—

- (1) Emphatic replacive Case markers replacing the Case markers
- (2) Emphatic additive replacive Case markers occurring with and replacing the case markers

3. 1. 3. 9. 1 *Emphatic Replacive Case markers*

ko, comitative and *tə*, locative/mediative function as the emphatic replacive Case markers. *kho'i/sá*, emphatic replacive plural marker is also used as the emphatic replacive Case marker.

1. *ko*, emphatic replacive Case marker

ko, emphatic replacive Case marker may replace *togi*, ablative when *togi* expresses the difference between the two persons or things.

mosi'di` mədùdɔgi/mədùgə khénno`i-This is different from that

sə'nggómdi` i'singdɔgi/i'singgo khénno'pho'm tho`k:i`-milk should be different from water.

2. *tə*, emphatic replacive Case marker

tə, emphatic replacive Case marker may replace *no*, mediative

módho'pti' sò'on: gá'ino/sò'n gárido lák:i' - Madhop comes by the bullock cart

rádhádi' hí'no/hído cò'tkhi - Radha went by boat

rámdi' éróplénno/éroplendo lak:i' - Ram comes by aeroplane

3. *kho'i/sá, emphatic replacive Case marker*

kho'i/sá, emphatic replacive Case marker may replace *pú* in a few personal and human nouns in the plural. In such case, *sá* occurs with the personal nouns in *mócà*, male.

(a) *pú/kho'i*

<i>general forms</i> <i>in pu'</i>	<i>emphatic forms</i> <i>in kho'i</i>	<i>meanings</i>
i'bùngósíngbú	i'bùngókho'i	oh ! gentlemen
i'bémósíngbú	i'bémòkho'i	oh ! ladies
i'nàósíngbú	i'nàòkho'i	oh ! my younger brothers
tádósíngbú	tádòkho'i	oh ! my elder brothers

(b) *pú/sá*

<i>general forms</i> <i>in pu'</i>	<i>emphatic forms</i> <i>in sa'</i>	<i>meanings</i>
i'cò'nsíngtú	i'cò'nsá	oh ! my younger sisters
i'sènsíngbú	i'sénsá	oh ! husbands of my younger sisters
lò'ibàkmócàsíngbú	lò'ibàk mócàsá	oh ! citizens
khágímócàsíngtú	khágímócàsá	oh ! citizens of China

3. 1. 3. 9. 2 *Emphatic Additive Replacive Case Markers*

nò, agentive/instrumental/mediative and *pú*, Accusative/Vocative function as the emphatic additive replacive Case markers. *dí*, a bound morpheme is also used as the emphatic additive replacive Case marker.

1 *nò*, emphatic additive replacive Case marker

1 (1) *nò* occurring with *pú*, to etc.

nò, emphatic additive replacive Case marker occurs with the nominal forms in the co-ordinate clauses of the compound sentences with the following Case markers:—

160—Morphology

- (a) ϕ , accusative
- (b) $pú$ accusative
- (c) to , locative

Examples :—

- (a) ϕ , accusative + no

$ho'ino'u/hc'ino'uno\ d\acute{a}m\acute{u}no\ c\grave{a}:i'$, $gi'h\acute{o}m/gi'h\acute{o}mno\ d\acute{o}r\acute{e}n-$
 $no\ c\grave{a}\ i'$ -Damu eats the mango and Doren eats the pine-
 apple

$so'ir\acute{e}ng/so'ir\acute{e}ngno\ k\acute{a}bino\ i'$, $w\acute{a}r\acute{e}ng/w\acute{a}r\acute{e}ngno\ po'ndi'tno$
 i' -Poet writes poem and scholar writes prove

- (b) $pú$, accusative + no

$m\acute{o}dh\acute{u}b\acute{u}/m\acute{a}dh\acute{u}b\acute{u}no\ ph\acute{u}r\acute{e}$, $d\acute{e}b\acute{e}nt\acute{u}/d\acute{e}h\acute{e}nb\acute{u}no\ ph\acute{a}r\acute{e}-$
 Modhu has been beaten and and Deben has been arrested
 $r\acute{a}mb\acute{u}/\acute{a}mb\acute{u}no\ ko'nl\acute{e}$, $sy\acute{a}mb\acute{u}/sy\acute{a}mb\acute{u}no\ h\acute{a}tl\acute{e}$ Ram has
 been saved and Syam has been killed

- (c) to , locative + ro

$m\acute{a}l\acute{a}do/m\acute{a}l\acute{a}dono\ s\acute{e}n\ th\acute{a}:i$, $r\acute{a}dh\acute{a}do/r\acute{a}dh\acute{a}dono\ ci\acute{t}hi\ th\acute{a}:i-$
 Money is sent to Mala and letter is sent to Raucha
 $m\acute{o}dh\acute{u}do/m\acute{o}dh\acute{u}dono\ w\acute{a}ho'ng\ m\acute{o}ng\grave{a}\ ho'r\acute{e}i'$, $m\acute{a}dho'p'o/\$
 $m\acute{a}dho'p\acute{t}ono\ ko'ris\acute{u}\ ho'ngd\acute{e}$ -Two questions are asked to
 Modhu and nothing is asked to Madhop

1 (1/2) no , occurring with ϕ , nominative and $to\acute{e}i$, ablative

no may occur with the nominal forms of the simple sen-
 tences with ϕ , nominative and $to\acute{e}i$, ablative

- (a) ϕ , nominative + no

$m\acute{o}dh\acute{u}/m\acute{o}dh\acute{u}no\ c\acute{a}k\ c\grave{a}:i'$ -Modhu takes the meal
 $m\acute{u}h\acute{o}n/m\acute{u}h\acute{o}nno\ p\acute{a}r\acute{a}\ p\acute{a}r\acute{e}$ -Muhon has read his lesson.

- (b) $to\acute{e}i$, ablative + no

$i'mph\acute{a}ldo\acute{e}gi/i'mph\acute{a}ldo\acute{e}gino\ no'mb\acute{o}l\ ph\acute{a}obo\ m\acute{o}dh\acute{u}no\ m\acute{o}-$
 $kh\acute{o}ngno\ co'tli$ -Modhu goes on foot from Imphal to Nam-
 bol.

bisnúpúrdogí/bisnúpúrdogíno káncípúr pháobə mádhə'pno
so'n:garíno lák:i'-Madhop comes by the bullock cart from
Bisnupur to Kanchipur.

no, also occurs with the nominal forms of the coordi-
nate clauses in togí, ablative

káncípúrdogí/káncípúrdogíno mi'hut môngà lák:i'-Bisnúpúr-
dogí/bisnúpúrdogíno omotə láktə-Five representatives come
from Kanchipur but none comes from Bisnupur.

mocədədogí/mocədədogíno kólóm omə phə'ngi', moyàmbədədogí/mo-
yàmbədədogíno korísu phə'ngdə-He gets a pen from his elder
sister and nothing from his elder brother

1 (2) no replacing ka lo'inəno, comitative

no, emphatic additive replative plural marker may re-
place ka lo'inəno, comitative when ka lo'inəno shows accompani-
ment of/by abstract feelings.

módhúno kho'rəng kho'ísəobəgo lo'inəno/kho'rəng kho'i-
səono motəm lənlí Modhu spends his time with anxiety

mádhə'pno nínzgíng mǎngzíngəobəgo lo'inəno / nínzgíng
mǎngzíngəono thəbək tóúwí'-Madhop does the work with
hesitation

rámno korém kotháinəobəgo lo'inəno/korém kotháinəno wə
ngàngi'-Ram speaks with derision

2 pú, emphatic additive replative case marker

pú, emphatic additive replative case marker occurs with
the nominal forms of the interrogative sentences with the following
case markers :—

- (a) φ, nominative
- (b) φ, accusative
- (b) kidəmo'k, intensive dative
- (d) no, agentive
- (e) no, instrumental
- (f) togí, ablative

Examples :—

- (a) ϕ , nominative + pú
 módhú/módhúbú cò'tkòdórá-Will Modhu go ?
 mádhò'p/mádhò'ppú láklò'mbòrá Did Madhop come ?
- (b) ϕ , accusative + pú
 càk/càkpú càròbòrá-Have you taken your meal ?
 párá/párábú páró'mlòbòrá-Had he read his lesson ?
- (c) kídòmò'k, intensive dative + pú
 módhúgídòmò'k/módhúgídòmò'kpú kàrigi ghò'ri lò'igòdògè-
 Why will you buy the watch for Modhu ?
 nòrò'ibàkkídòmò'k/nòrò'ibàkkídòmò'kpú nò'ngnò kòri tòu-
 ròbògè-What have you done for your country ?
- (d) nò, agentive + pú
 mádhò'pnò/mádhò'pnòbú rámbú pángbòrá-Does Madhop
 help Ram ?
 módhúnò/módhúnòbú syám phùrò'mbòrá-Did Modhu beat
 Syam ?
- (e) nò, instrumental + pú
 sòrínò/sòrínòbú kói ko'kpòrá-Do you shave your beards
 with the knife ?
 thàngsángnò/thàngsángnòbú síng khàigòdòrá-Will you cut
 the fuel with the sword ?
- (f) tògí, ablative + pú
 gópáldògí/gópáldògíbú sén phò'nggòdòrá-Will you get
 money from Gopal ?
 mádhò'ptògí/mádhò'tògíbú páotàk lò'uròbòrá- Have you
 taken advice from Madhop

2 (2) pú, replacing kí, possessive genitive

pú, emphatic additive replative case marker may replace kí. possessive genitive when kí precedes the possessed nouns denoting the parts of body.

módhúgi makhút/módhúbú makhút konáno thúdèkpogé-Who breaks Modhu's hand ?

mádho`pki mako`k/mádho`ppú mako`k gópáno thugàirè-Gopal has broken Madhop's head.

syámgi monà/syámbú monà lo`iroborá-Have you squized Syam's ear ?

2 (3) pú occurring with or replacing to, locative

pú, emphatic additive replative case marker occurs with to, locative in the nominal forms of the interrogative sentences.

dámùdò/dámúdóbú cithi thàkhróborá-Had you sent the letter to Damu ?

débéndò/débéndóbú syámno kori hàibogè-What does Syam say to Deben

pú may replace to, locative when to occurs with the nominal adjuncts referring to the objects of the transitive verbs.

mádho`pto/mádho`ppú rá`nno ko`kyèt yètpi`-Ram fixes the turban on Syam's head

mómàno mœàdò/mœàbú túpi ùppi`-The mother fixes the cap on her child's head.

3 di, emphatic additive replative case marker

3 (1) di occurring with kidomò`k, nò, to, togí etc.

di, emphatic additive replative case marker occurs with the nominal forms of the negative sentences with the following case markers :—

- (a) ϕ , nominative
- (b) ϕ , accusative
- (c) kidomò`k, intensive dative
- (d) nò, instrumental
- (e) to, locative
- (f) togí, ablative

Examples —

(a) ϕ , nominative + di

módhú/módhúdi cá tho`ktè-Modhu does not drink tea.

málá/máládi pára pádè-Mala does not read her lesson

(b) Ø, accusative + di

dámúno pho'u/pho'udí wándè, cèng/cèngdí wánli-Damu
does not buy the paddy but buys the rice.

débénno pho'u/pho'udí táidè, thúm/thúmdí táí-Deben does
not sell the paddy but sells the salt.

(c) kídámò`k, intensive dative + di

módhúgidámò`k/módhúgidámò`ktí mɔpàno kòrisù tɔúbí`dè-
The father does not do anything for Modhu

mɔrɔ`bàkkídámò`k/mɔrɔ`bàkkídámò`ktí nóbinno kòrisù
no`mdè-Nobin works nothing for his country

(d) nɔ, instrumental + di

lɔ`ikho`mnɔ/lɔ`ikho`mnodí láidí sáɣnɔdè-No one makes
doll with mud

thàngnɔ/thàngnɔdí kói ko`knɔdè-No one shaves his beards
with knife

(e) tɔ, locative + di

módhúdo/módhúdodí gópálnɔ cithí thàro`mlói-Modhu will
not send the letter to Gopal

múhóndo/múhóndodí dámúno kòrisomoto ho`ngdè- Damu
nothing ask to Muhon

(f) tɔgi, ablative + di

rámɔdɔgi/rámɔdɔgidí` sɛn pho`nglói-You will not get money
from Ram.

syámɔdɔgi/syámɔdɔgidí cithí láklói-No letter will come from
Syam

3 (2) di`, replacing or occurring with kí, nɔ and pú

di`, emphatic additive replacive Case marker may re-
place or occur with kí possessive genitive, nɔ, agentive and pú,
accusative when such Case markers occur with the nominal forms
in the negative sentences.

(a) kí possessive genitive and di`

dámúgi/dámúdí/dámúgidí mɔcànùpà tɔ`itè-Damu has no
son

módhúgi/módhúdi`/módhúgidi` mɔpà lɔ'itè-Modhu has no father

yónggi/yóngdi`/yónggidi` moci` pándè-Monkey has no horn

(b) nɔ, agentive and di`

débénno/débéndi`/débénodi` rámbú phùde- Deben does not beat Ram

dórénnɔ/dóréndi`/dórénnodi` syámbú pángdè-Doren does not help Syam

rámno/rámdi`/rámnodi` modù tɔúdè-Ram does not do that

(c) pú, accusative and di`

múhónbú/múhónbi`/múhónbúdi` hùino c`kìtè-The dog does not bite Muhon

módhúbú/módhúdi`/ módhúbúdi` híngcàbɔno hàtlè- The monster does not kill Modhu

nóbinbú/nóbinbi`/nóbinbúdi` syámno káodè- Syam des not forget Nobin

3.2 Pronoun

Pronouns are a closed class. They do not distinguish genders and are thus used in both the masculine and feminine genders. Pronouns may be classified into the following types :—

- | | |
|---------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. Personal pronouns | 6. Separative pronouns |
| 2. Reflexive pronouns | 7. Distributive pronouns |
| 3. Reciprocal pronouns | 8. Interrogative pronouns |
| 4. Demonstrative pronouns | 9. Indefinite pronouns |
| 5. Determinative pronouns | |

3. 2. 1 Personal Pronouns

3. 2. 1. 1 Personal Pronouns in the singular

Personal pronouns in the singular are monosyllabic forms. They are shown below :—

ɔ`i, I

nɔ`ng, you(singular)

mà, he/she

o`i càk càrì, I am taking my meal

nò`ng hayéng cò`ikédorá-Will you go tomorrow

mà ngosi` lákónì-He will come today

Personal pronouns are declined in the cases other than the instrumental and vocative. Such pronouns in the nominative, accusative, genitive and dative take only the markers of these cases.

o`igi-mine

b`igidomò`k-for me

nò`nggi-your (singular)

nò`nggidomò`k-for you

màgi-his/her

màgidomò`k-for him/her

Personal pronouns in the locative and ablative take ngo`n, secondary infix and markers of these cases.

o`ingo`ndo-to me

o`ingo`ndagi-from me

nòngo`ndo-to you

nòngo`ndagi-from you

mòngo`ndo-to him/her

mòngo`ndagi-from him/her

3 2 1. 1. 1 *Emphatic forms of the personal pronouns in the singular*

Emphatic forms of the personal pronouns in the singular are formed by adding hàk, secondary suffix to the personal pronouns. Such forms are declined in the cases other than locative and ablative.

<i>general forms</i>	<i>emphatic forms</i>	<i>meaning</i>
o`igi	oi`hàkki	mine
o`igidomò`k	oi`càkkidomò`k	for mine
nò`nggi	nòhàkki	your
nò`nggidomò`k	nòhàkkidomò`k	for you

màgi	mohàkki	his/her
màgidomo`k	mohàkkidomo`k	for him/her

3. 2. 1. 1. 2 *Honorific forms of the personal pronouns in the singular*

Honorific form of the first person in the singular is formed by prefixing nonái, your servant to ɔ̀i, I. nonái is used as the honorific form of the third person. ɔ̀so`m (proximate) and ɔ̀do`m (remote) are the honorific forms of the second person.

<i>general forms</i>	<i>honorific forms</i>	<i>meaning</i>
ɔ̀i	nonái ɔ̀i	I
no`ng	ɔ̀do`m/ɔ̀so`m	you (singular)
mà	nonái	he/she

nonái ɔ̀i, I in the locative and ablative take ngo`n and the markers of such cases. ɔ̀so`m/ɔ̀do`m, you and nonái-he/she are declined in the two cases without ngo`n.

nonái ɔ̀i`gi-mine
 nonái ɔ̀i`ngo`ndo-to me
 ɔ̀do`mgi/ɔ̀so`mgi-your
 ɔ̀do`mdo/ɔ̀so`mdo-to you
 nonáigi his/her
 nonáido-to him/her

nonái ɔ̀i`hàk is another honorific form of the first person. It is the extension of nonái ɔ̀i, I with hàk, secondary suffix. It is not declined in the locative and ablative,

nonái ɔ̀i`hàkki-mine
 nonái ɔ̀i`hàkkidomo`k-for me

3. 2. 1. 2 *Personal Pronouns in the plural*

Personal pronouns express plural taking kho`i, epicene plural marker.

<i>singular forms</i>	<i>plural forms</i>
ɔ̀i-I	ɔ̀i`kho`i-we

singular forms

nɔ̀ng-you

mà-he/she

ɔ̀ikho`i párá páré-We have read our lesson

nɔ̀kho`i hoýéng lákkòdórá-will you come tomorrow

mɔ̀kho`i thòbò`k sùrì-they are doing the work

plural forms

nɔ̀kho`i-you

mɔ̀kho`i-they

3. 2. 1. 2. 1 *Emphatic plural forms of the personal pronouns*

Emphatic personal forms of the personal pronouns are formed by adding mɔ̀kho`i, emphatic additive plural marker to the plural forms of such pronouns,

plural forms

ɔ̀ikho`i

nɔ̀kho`i

mɔ̀kho`i

emphatic plural forms

ɔ̀ikho`imɔ̀kho`i

nɔ̀kho`imɔ̀kho`i

mɔ̀kho`imɔ̀kho`i

meaning

we

you

they

3. 2. 1. 2. 2 *Honorific plural forms of the first person*

Honorific plural forms of the first person are formed by prefixing nonái, your servant to the plural and emphatic plural forms of such person.

plural forms

ɔ̀ikho`i

emphatic plural forms

nonái ɔ̀ikho`i

nonáiɔ̀ikho`imɔ̀kho`i

meaning

we

3. 2. 1. 2. 3. *Declension of the personal pronouns in the plural*

Plural forms and emphatic plural forms of the personal pronouns and the honorific plural forms of the first person are declined in the cases other than the instrumental and vocative.

(1) plural forms

ɔ̀ikho`ibú-us

ɔ̀ikho`igi-our

nɔ̀kho`ibú-you (accusative)

nɔ̀kho`igi-your

mɔ̀kho`ibú-them

mɔ̀kho`igi-their

(2) *emphatic plural forms*

ɔi`kho`iməkho`ibú-us
 ɔi`kho`iməkho`gi-our
 nəkho`iməkho`ibú-you (accusative)
 nəkho`iməkho`igi-your
 məkho`iməkho`ibú-them
 məkho`iməkho`igi-their

(3) *honorific plural forms of the first person*

nənái ɔi`kho`ibú/nənái ɔi`kho`iməkho`ibú-us
 nənái ɔi`kho`igi/nənái ɔi`kho`iməkho`igi-our

3. 2. 1. 2. 4 *Occurance of si'ng with the personal pronouns in the plural*

sing, emphatic additive plural marker may occur with the plural forms and emphatic plural forms of the personal pronouns when such forms are defined by ɔsi`, those. In such case, sing is preceded by kho`i plural marker and followed by ɔsi` or ɔsi` and məkho`i, emphatic additive plural marker.

ɔi`kho`sing ɔsi`/ɔi`kho`sing ɔsi`məkho`i those of us
 nəkho`ising ɔsi`/nəkho`ising ɔsi` məkho`i-those of you
 məkho`ising ɔsi`/məkho`ising ɔsi` məkho`i those of them

3. 2. 1. 3 *Denotation of genders*

Personal pronouns do not distinguish genders. In a content, the gender is known from the adjunct which is in accord with such pronouns.

ɔi`nùpà ni`-I am a man
 nɔ`ng nùpi`ni`-you are a woman
 mà nùpà ni`-He is a man

When there are stative verbal qualifiers (attributive adjectives) in pi`, female marker and the verbal nouns in pi` used as subjective complement, their accord with the personal pronouns shows feminine gender

170—Morphology

oso'nbi` o'ikho`ino-those of us who are weak (feminine)
opo'ngbi` makho`ino-those of them who are foolish (feminine)
o`idi` thado`klobi` ni`-I am the one who has given up all (feminine)
makho`idi` ngoráng láklo'mbi` odu` ni`-They are the ones who came yesterday

3, 2. 1. 4 *Personal pronouns and their areas of meanings*

1 o'ikho'i-we

o'ikho'i, we is used to express editorial self
o'ikho`ino hánno háiro'mlolo odu` ni`-We had already said

o'ikho'i is also used when self is identified with a group of persons as family, friends etc.

o'ikho'igi` yúm-our house (meaning 'my house')
o'ikho`idi` osùm tóúdè-We do not act like this

o'ikho'i, we is used to express authoratative self.

o'ikho`ino háibo odu` ni`-We say (by a person of dignity as a chairman of a committee).

2 no'ng, you (singular)

no'ng, you (singular) and nokho'i, you (plural) are terms of intimacy and affection. They are used by the superiors and elders towards the juniors. They are also used between the friends. Use of no'ng and nokho'i towards the elders is considered as low speech,

3 Honorific forms of the personal pronouns

Honorific forms of the personal pronouns are too formal and are thus used in addressing respectable persons.

ongo`m níngtho'u ! nonái o'ikho'i hoyéng lákco'goni`- Oh ! king of the Angoms ! we will come tomorrow.

i'ningtho'u nonái o'ikho'i i`ro'ibákkidomok thowái ko'tco'goni`-Oh King ! we will lay down our lives for our country.

The two honorific forms of the second person (singular) viz., *odo'm* (remote) and *oso'm* (proximate) are used to the persons of the same age in both the genders.

odo'mno oi'bu pángbi'ri-You are helping me

oso'mno hàibi'ribc odu o'i tázori-I am listening to what you are saying

4 *i'bùngó*, gentleman and *i'bémó*, lady

i'bùngó, gentleman and *i'bémó*, lady are added to the personal nouns in the second and third persons to express honorific implications.

i'cébémono syámdno lúpà camo pi'bi'è-She (elder sisiter) has given Syam one hundred rupees

táibùngóno o'ibú pángbi'-You (elder brother) help me

3. 2. 1. 5 *Personal Possessive prefixes*

Personal possessive prefixes are— *i'*, my/our, *no*, your (both the numbers) and *mo*, his/her/their. They may replace the personal pronouns in both the numbers and genitive case used before some monosyllabic and disyllabic nouns.

i'ro'n-my/our wealth

i'yùm-my/our house

no'ro'n-your wealth

no'yùm-your house

mo'ro'n-his/her/their wealth

mo'yùm-his/her/their house

3. 2. 1. 5. *Personal Possessive Prefixes as emphasisers*

Personal possessive prefixes function as the emphasisers occurring with possessed nouns defined and preceded by the personal pronouns in both the numbers and genitive case.

oi'gi yùm/oi'gi i'yùm-my house

oi'kho'igi yùm/o'ikho'igi i'yùm-our house

no'nggi yùm/no'nggi no'yùm your house (singular)

o'kho'gi yùm/o'kho'gi no'yùm-your house (plural)

màgí yùm/màgí møyùm-his/her house

məkho`igi yùm/məkho`igi møyùm-their house

3 2. 1. 5. 2 i, 'my' expressing 'your' (singular)

—i, 'my' expresses 'your' (singular) occurring with the personal nouns of relationship in the vocative case.

i`cègi i`hùngo`-oh ! your elder sister's dearest one

i`màgi ní. mthém-oh ! your mother's king (son)

i`pàgi məní oh ! your father's jewel

3. 2. 1. 5. 3 mɔ, third personal possessive prefix and mɔ, secondary prefix

mɔ, third personal possessive prefix expresses his/her their. mɔ, secondary prefix function as (a) word forming affix and (b) emphasiser. mɔ, third personal possessive prefix may replace mɔ, secondary prefix when mɔ, secondary prefix functions as the emphasiser occurring with some nouns denoting relationship and parts of body.

mɔ, secondary prefix

mɔcè hàibo ɔsi`di` mɔmàgúmbo
ni`-Elder sister is like mother

mɔyámbo hàibo ɔsi`di` mɔpà
gúmbo ni`-elder brother is like
father

módhúdi` kò`k/məkò`k tàngi`-
Modhu is bald

mádho`pti` mi`t/məmi`t tàngi`-
Madhop is blind

mɔ, third personal prefix

mɔcèɔ rámbú kò`uwi`-Ram is
called by his elder sister

mɔyámboɔ syámbú pángi`-Syam
is helped by his elder brother

módhúgi kò`k/məkò`k-Modhu's
head

mádho`pki` mi`t/məmi`t- Ma-
dhop's eye

mɔ, third personal possessive prefix cannot replace mɔ, secondary prefix when mɔ, secondary prefix occurs as the obligatory component of some nouns. mɔ, secondary prefix as the word forming affix is shown below :—

mɔcú-colour ; məkú-owl ; mɔpù-owner ; mərúp-friend ;
mɔtə`m-time.

mō, secondary prefix is mistaken by some writers as, mō, third personal possessive prefix. Such writers thus tell a baseless story that Manipuris cannot conceive a mother except as someone's mother and they add possessive prefixes to such nouns as mother, eye, hand etc.

3. 2 2 REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

3. 2. 2. 1 *Reflexive Pronouns in the singular*

Reflexive pronouns in the singular are formed by adding the personal possessive prefixes to sāmō`k, self.

i`sāmō`k-myself

nosāmō`k yourself (singular)

mosāmō`k-himself/herself

i`sāmō`k cō`tkoni`-I myself will go

nosāmō`kno modū tōugodōuboni` You must do it yourself

mosāmō`k lāklo`mgoni`-He will have come himself

Reflexive pronouns are declined in the cases other than the instrumental and vocative.

i`sāmō`kkidomō`k for myself

nosāmō`kkidomō`k for yourself (singular)

mosāmō`kkidomō`k for himself/herself

3. 2. 2. 1. 1 *Emphatic forms of the Reflexive Pronouns in the singular*

Emphatic forms of the Reflexive Pronouns in the singular are formed by prefixing personal pronouns (singular) or emphatic personal pronouns (singular) to the reflexive pronouns.

Person	meaning	Two forms of the Reflexive pronouns in the singular	
		general forms	emphatic forms
1st persons	myself	i`sāmō`k	ōi` i`sāmō`k ō`ihāk i`sāmō`k
2nd person	yourself	nosāmō`k	ho`ng nosāmō`k nohāk nosāmō`k
3rd person	himself/ herself	mosāmō`k	mā mosāmō`k mohāk mōsā`nō`k

Declension of the emphatic Reflexive Pronouns in the singular is same as that of the reflexive pronouns in this number.

3. 2. 2 Reflexive pronouns in the plural

Reflexive pronouns in the plural are formed by prefixing the plural forms of the Personal pronouns to the reflexive pronouns in the singular.

o'ikho'i i'samo'k-we ourselves

no'kho'i no'samo'k-you yourselves

ma'kho'i ma'samo'k-they themselves

no'kho'i no'samo'kno modu ha'iro'mi'-you yourselves said it

ma'kho'i ma'samo'kno modu to'uro'mgoni' they will have done it themselves.

Declension of the Reflexive Pronouns in the plural is same as the that of reflexive pronouns in the singular.

3. 2. 3 Reciprocal Pronouns :

Reciprocal Pronouns are formed by adding (a) persona', possessive prefixes and sén or (b) mo, third personal possessive prefix and sén to the personal pronouns in the plural.

Personal pronouns in plural meaning Reciprocal pronouns

o'ikho'i

we

o'ikho'i i'sén

no'kho'i

you

o'ikho'i ma'sén

no'kho'i no'sén

ma'kho'i

they

no'kho'i ma'sén

ma'kho'i ma'sén

no'kho'i no'sén/ma'sén kho'tnoba adu táisinnogodo'uboni'-you must settle the dispute among yourselves

ma'kho'i ma'sén lo'n : thum pumamo'k yénno'ro'mi'- They divided the property among the themselves

Declension of the Reciprocal Pronouns is same as that of the personal pronouns in the plural. ma'kho'i ma'sén, reciprocal pronoun (third person) may occur with mo'ho'i mo'ho'i

ma'kho'i ma'sén mo'ho'i mo'ho'i kho'tnore-they have quarrelled among themselves.

3. 2. 4 Demonstrative Pronouns

Demonstrative Pronouns have two forms viz , (a) proximate and (b) remote.

Proximate Demonstrative pronouns are formed by adding *o*, secondary prefix to *si*, this and *tù*, that. Remote Demonstrative Pronouns are formed by adding *mo*, secondary prefix to *si*, this and *tù*, that.

meanings Proximate and remote forms of the demonstrative pronouns			
	proximate forms		remote forms
this		<i>osi</i>	<i>mosi</i>
that		<i>odù</i>	<i>modù</i>

osi/*mosi* *ho'ino'u ni*-This is the mango

odù/*modù* *kólóm lá*-is that a pen ?

3. 2. 4. 1 Declension of the Demonstrative Pronouns

Proximate and remote demonstrative pronouns are declined in the cases other than the Vocative.

osi'no/*mosi'no*-with this

osi'do/*mosi'do*-to this

osi'dogi/*mosi'dogi*-from this

osi'gidomok/*mosi'gidomok*-for this

odùno/*modùno*-with that

odùdo/*modùdo*-to that

odùdogi/*modùdogi*-from that

odùgidomo`k/*modùgidomo`k*-for that

osi'do modù tinsinsi-Let us add that to this

modùdogi mosi`kháido`kkè-Let me subtract this from that

modùdi`gópáldo pí`asonù-let him give that to Gopal

3. 2. 4. 1. 2 Modification of the Demonstrative Pronouns

Demonstrative Pronouns are used to express (a) 'you' (honorific singular), (b) 'it' and (c) 'what'.

176—Morphology

1. modù, it

modù, that (remote) expresses 'it' referring to the following :—

- (a) a lifeless thing
- (b) an idea expressed by a preceding word group or phrase.

Examples :—

- (a) hi odù tóbánda thégzi`nli, modù lùplè—The boat dashes against the bank of the river and it sinks.
- (b) modù thá khorogi wà ni`, còyon khorogi wà nottè—It is a matter of months, not of weeks,

modù, that also expresses 'it' referring to the following:—

- (a) a less close connection between two statements
- (b) a child or baby whose sex is unknown or a matter of inference

Examples :—

(a) no`ngno hòudóng hàtkodo`urinè, modù tóugorú—you are going to kill the cat. Don't do it.

mongóndo cithi omo thási, modù thúno to`usi` let us send him a letter. Let us do it at once

- (b) modùno tóuboni`—it does it

2. osi /odù, what

osi, this (proximate) and odù, that (proximate) express 'what' occurring with the main verbs of the subordinate relative clauses in po, marker of infinitive.

módhúno hàiríbo odù/osi`tási`—Let us hear what Modhu is saying

ózáno tàkló`mbó odù/osi` káogonú—Don't forget what the teacher taught

Syámno pho`nggodo`uríbo odù/osi` lúpà càmorómto ni`—what Syam will get is about one hundred rupees.

3. ɔdɔ̀m/ɔsɔ̀m, 'you' (honorific singular)

ɔdɔ̀m and ɔsɔ̀m are the honorific singular forms of the second person. They are formed by adding lòm 'towards' to ɔdù, that and ɔsì this.

ɔdɔ̀mnɔ/ɔsɔ̀mnɔ ɔ̀ibú pángbì-you help me

ɔdɔ̀mnɔ/ɔsɔ̀mnɔ rámbú káobìraborá-have you forgotten Ram ?

3. 2. 4. 2 *Demonstrative Pronouns in the plural*

Proximate and remote demonstrative pronouns express the plural taking məkhòi, emphatic additive plural marker.

ɔdù məkhòi/modù məkhòi-those

ɔsì məkhòi/mɔsì məkhòi-these

Módhúno modùməkhòi cúsonù, ɔ̀idì ɔsìto càgè-Let Modhu eat those and let me eat this only

ɛyámno ɔsìməkhòi lòusonù, ɔ̀idì modùto lòuzagè-Let Šyam take these and let me take that only

3. 2. 4. 2. 1 *Declension of the Demonstrative Pronouns in the plural*

Demonstrative pronouns in the plural are declined in the cases other than the Vocative.

ɔdùməkhòino/modù məkhòno-with those

ɔdùməkhòido/modùməkhòido-to those

ɔdùməkhòidogi/modùməkhòidogi-from those

ɔsìməkhòno/mɔsìməkhòino-with these

ɔsìməkhòido/mɔsìməkhòido-to these

ɔsìməkhòidogi/mɔsìməkhòidogi-from these

3.2.4.2.2 *Modification of the Demonstrative Pronouns in the plural*

ɔsìməkhòi, these are used to express 'those'. ɔdùməkhòi, those are also used to express 'whoever', 'whatever'

1 ɔsìməkhòi, those

ɔsìməkhòi, these expresses 'those' occurring with emphatic plural forms of the personal pronouns with or without sing, emphatic additive plural marker.

o`ikho`i osi`makho`ino/o`ikho`isingosi` makho`ino, those of us
makho`iosi` makho`ino/nakho`ising osi` makho`ino-those of
you

makho`iosi`makho`ino/makho`isingosi`makho`ino- those of
them

osi`makho`i, those may be compressed into osi` occurring with
sing, emphatic additive plural marker in the above forms of the
personal pronouns.

o`ikho`ising osi`makho`ino/o`ikho`ising osi`no-those of us
makho`ising osi`makho`ino/makho`ising osi`no-those of them

2 odu`makho`i, whoever, whatever

odu`makho`i, those expresses 'whoever, whatever' occurring
with the main verbs of the subordinate relative clauses in po, mar-
ker of infinitive. In such case, odu`makho`i may remain or be
compressed into makho`i.

kancipur u:ruba odu`makho`ino/makho`ino kabi Komol ning-
singi`-Whoever see Kanchipur remember poet Komol.

mado`ppu kho`ngbo odu` makho`ino/makho`ino mabu`
nungsi`-Whoever know Madhop love him.

osabo odu` makho`i/makho`i pura`kasonu`-Let him bring what-
ever is hot.

ohabobo odu` makho`i/makho`i casi`- Let us eat whatever is
delicious.

3. 2. 5 Determinative Pronouns

Determinative pronouns are derived from odu, that,
osi, this, pu`m, inclusive and ya`m, much.

odu`k-that much (personal and impersonal)

osu`k-this much (personal and impersonal)

moyam-many (personal and impersonal)

pu`mnomo`k-all (personal and impersonal)

Determinative pronouns are declined in the cases other
than the instrumental and vocative.

odùkkidomò`k-for that much

odùktòdò-to that much

osùkkidomòk-for this much

osùktòdò-to this much

moyámgidomò`k-for many

moyámòdò-to many

pùmnomò`kkidomò`k-for all

pùmnomò`ktò-to all

momà ni`ngbò odùktòno modù tóugòni`-that much of those
who love their mothers will do it

odùktòno yágoni`-that much will do

pùkcén cáobò osùktòno modù tóugòni`-this much of those
who are noble will do it

osùktò càzàgè Let me eat this much

moyámno mosi` pámi`-many like it

hò`ino`u onì`osi`dò ló`i, moyám omòsù i`múngdò ló`iri`.There
are two mangoes here, many are also in the house.

pùmnomò`k láklè-all have come

pùmnomò`k mànglè-all are ruined

pùmnomòk, all has three synonyms viz., khwai (personal),
lo`inomò`k (impersonal) and ngo`mnomò`k (impersonal). khwài
may be prefixed to pùmnomò`k.

pùmnomò`kno/khwàino/khwài pùmnomò`kno modù pámi` all
like it

pùmnomò`k/lo`inomò`k/ngo`mnomò`k módhúdo pi`gonù-don't
give all to Modhu.

3. 2. 6 Separative Pronouns

Separative pronouns take -ò, secondary prefix.

omò, one (personal and impersonal)

otò`i, other (personal and impersonal)

Separative pronouns are declined in the cases other than
the instrumental and vocative

omògidomò`k-for any one

omòdogi-from any one

otot'igidomok-for others

otot'idogi-from others

omomohèktomodu ho'nglokkoni-any one will ask it

kólóm oni tébo'ldo lo'i, omodi ká osi'do lo'i-There are two pens on the table, one is in this room.

nupàmocà onidi lák:i, otot'idi laktè-Two boys come, others do not come

kómlá onidi osi'do lo'i, otot'idi kodáido lo'ibogè-There are two oranges here, where are others ?

3. 2. 7 Distributive Pronouns

The following are the distributive pronouns :—

omomom every (personal and impersonal)

khúdingmok-each (personal and impersonal)

Distributive pronouns are declined in the cases other than the instrumental and vocative.

omomom'mgidomok-for every one

omomom'ndogi-from every one

khúdingmok'kkidomok-for each

khúdingmok'klogi-from each

omomom'momosà mosàgi wàri'li-Everyone tells his own tale

ká osi'do ho'ino'u mongà lo'iro'mboni, omomom' modhúno càtho'kkhrè-There were five mangoes in this room, every one was eaten up by Modhu.

ombárido phi makhon koyá omo lo'i, khúdingmok' mocú khénno'i-There are many clothes in the almirah, each has different colour

mitindo mō ntri shu'm lák:i, khu'dingmok' wà ngànggoni-Three Ministers came in the meeting, each will speak

3. 2. 8 Interrogative pronouns

The following are the interrogative pronouns :—

koná-who (personal)

kori-what (personal and impersonal)

koyá-how many (numeral)

koro'mbo-which (personal and impersonal, derived from **kori**, what)

Interrogative pronouns are declined in the cases other than the instrumental and vocative.

konágidomo`k for whom

konádagi-from whom

korígidomo`k-for what

korídagi-from what

koyágidomo`k-for how many

koyádagi-from how many

koro'mbogidomo`k-for which one

koro'mbodagi-from which one

odúdo koná lo'ibogè-Who is there ?

nokhùtso kori lo,i-what is in your hand ?

o'igi ho'ino'u oni lo'i, na'ngo'ndo koyá lo'ibogè-I have two mangoes, how many do you have ?

ngoráng mi`mongá láklomi`, ngosi'di` koyá lákkodogè-Five persons came yesterday, how many will come today ?

kádo láiri`k oni lo'i, koro'mbo pámbogè-There are two books in the room which do you like ?

mi`ohum namàngdo lèplí, koro'mbomo na'ngbú pángbogè-Three persons are standing before you, which one help you ?

3. 2 9 Indefinite Pronouns

The following indefinite pronouns are primary forms:—

koyá, many, several (personal and impersonal)

khoro, some (personal and impersonal)

Most of the indefinite pronouns are derived from **koná**, who, **kori**, what and **khoro**, some,

korágumbo omo, some one (personal derived from **koná**, who)

konáno`omo, any body (personal derived from **koná**)

konágumbo amoto, nobody (personal derived from **koná**)

korígumbo omo, something (impersonal derived from **kori**, what)

karino omo, anything (impersonal derived from kari)
 karigumbo omo to, nothing (impersonal derived from kari)
 oto'i khorō, something else (impersonal ; compound of oto'i,
 other and khorō, some)

Indefinite pronouns are declined in the cases other than
 the instrumental and vocative.

koyádo—to many

koyádagi—from many

khōrōdo—to some

khōrōdagi—from some

konágumbo omo do—to some one

konágumbo omodagi—from some one

konáno` omodo—to anybody

konáno` omodagi—from any body

konágumbo omo to do—to nobody

konágumbo omodagi—from nobody

karigumbo omo do—to something

karigumbo omodagi—from something

karino` omo do—to anything

karino` omodagi—from anything

karigumbo omo to do, to nothing

karigumbo omodagi—from nothing

koyá omono mosi` pámdè—many do not like it

khōrono osūmno hāino`i—some say so

modù o`klè, oto'i khorō kho`unesi`—it is enough, let us dis-
 cuss something else

konágumbo omo lākpo yá.i`—some one may come

konáno` omono osūmno hēkto hāiro`kkoni`—any one will say so

konágumbo omo to lāklói—nobody will come

karigumbo omo tho`kkoni`—something will happen

karino` omono hēkto yāgoni`—anything will do

karigumbo omo to tho`klói—nothing will happen

Konágumbo omo to, nothing, has four synonyms viz. ;
 konágumbo omo to sù, konásù, koná omo to and kōrā omo to sù.

Karigumbo omo to, nothing has also four synonyms viz. ,
 karigumbo omo to sù, karisù, kari omo to and kari omo to sù.

3.3 Verb

3.3.0 Verbs express the four aspects of the Present, Past and Future tenses. They also express some or all of the four aspects of the tense forms such as can, may, must, should, etc.

3.3.1 1.1 Two groups of the Verbs

Verbs are classified into the two groups viz., (a) *func-tive* and (b) *stative*.

Func-tive verbs are the transitive and intransitive verbs. They are conjugated for the four aspects of the three tenses.

Stative verbs are the adjectives. They are conjugated for the indefinite and perfect aspects of the three tenses.

Func-tive verbs

pàrè-he has read

sàró'mlè he had made

thàró'mgoni` he will have sent

Stative verbs

pàrè-it has been thin

sàró'mlè-it had been hot

thàró'mgoni`-it will have been
thick

3.3 1.1.2 Four classes of the Verbs

Func-tive and *stative* verbs may be divided according to their structures into the four classes viz., (a) simple verbs. (b) suffixed verbs (c) compound verbs and (d) verbal compounds.

Simple verbs are the monosyllabic forms conjugated for the tenses by adding to them the markers of the tense, aspect and form.

Verb + tense + aspect + form

cò't + ló'm + ló + i` > cò'tlò'mlè-he had gone

Suffixed verbs consist of a simple verb and a primary infix. They are also conjugated for the tenses by adding to them the markers of tense, aspect and form.

Suffixed -

Verb + tense + aspect + form

no`kno + 'lóm + ló + i` > no`knoró'mlè-he had mocked at

Compound verbs consist of two or more monosyllabic components of which the last one is conjugated and other components remain in the root form.

Compound—

Verb + tense + aspect + form

lɔ'isi lɔ'itho'n + lɔ'm + lɔ + i' > lɔ'isi lɔ'ithonlɔ'mlɔ-he had praised

Verbal compounds consist of a main verb and an auxiliary verb. The main verbs in such compounds take po' marker of infinitive or pho'm, primary suffix. The auxiliary verbs in the verbal compounds are conjugated.

main verb + auxiliary verb + aspect + tense + form

cɔ't + po + ngo'm + lɔ'm + kodɔ'u + ni' > cɔ'tpo ngo'm-lɔ'mgoni'-he could have gone

(Verbal compounds will be discussed later in the Morphology. Suffixed verbs and compound verbs will be dealt with in the Syntax.)

3. 3. 1. 1. 3 Verbal base

Considering the formation of the tense forms, Verbal base may be classified into the two groups viz., (a) primary base and (b) infinitive base.

Primary base of the verb is the root itself,

Primary

base + tense + aspect + form

cak + lom + lɔ + i > caklomle-it had burnt

Infinitive base of the verb is the root plus po, marker of the infinitive.

Infinitive base + Auxiliary verb

cɔt + po + yai > cɔtpo ya:i-we may go

3. 3. 1. 2. 1 Gender, Number and person of the verbs

Verbs in the aspects of the Tenses and Tense Forms do not distinguish Gender, Number and Person. They are thus used in all the Genders, Numbers and Persons.

(1) *Genders*

nùpà cò tli-The man is going
nùpi cò tli-The woman is going

(2) *Numbers*

úcék páiri-The bird is flying
úcéksingno páiri-The birds are flying

(3) *Persons*

ò'ì kho'ngi'-I know
nò'ng kho'ngi'-You (singular) know
mà kho'ngi'-He knows

3. 3. 2 *Tenses*

Verbs express the four aspects of the present, past and future tenses taking the markers of (a) tense, (b) aspect and (c) form.

3. 3. 2. 1. 1 *Markers of the four aspects and form for the verbs in the present and past tenses*

1 *Markers of the four aspects*

Markers of the four aspects of the verbs in the present and past tense are shown below :—

- (a) ϕ (zero), indefinite aspect
- (b) ló, perfect aspect
- (c) lí, durative aspect
- (d) ló'kíí, perfect durative aspect

2 *i', marker of form for the verbs in the present and past tenses*

i' is the marker of form for the verbs in the four aspects of the present and past tenses.

3. 3. 2. 2. 1 *Present Tense*

ϕ (zero), marker of present tense is followed by the markers of (a) the four aspects and (b) -i', marker of form. In such case, -i, marker of form is changed into -é due to contact with ló, perfect aspect in the verbs in the present perfect aspect.

Present tense— ϕ . TM+A+i, F

ϕ , A (indefinite aspect)

$\sqrt{+}\phi$, TM+ ϕ . A+i, F

186—Morphology

cə'ngi'-we/you/they enter

hə'ngi'-we/you/they ask

sə'ngi'-we/you/they guard

lɔ, A (perfect aspect)

√ + φ, TM + lɔ, A + i, F

cə'nglɛ-we/you/they have entered

hə'nglɛ we/you/they have asked

sə'nglɛ-we/you/they have guarded

li, A (durative aspect)

√ + φ, TM + li, A + i, F

cə'ngli-we/you/they are entering

hə'ngli-we/you/they are asking

sə'ngli-we/you/they are guarding

lɔ'kli, A (perfect durative aspect)

√ + φ, TM + lɔkli, A + i, F

cə'nglɔ'kli-we/you/they have been entering

hə'ng'ɔ'kli-we/you/they have been asking

sə'nglɔ'kli-we/you/they have been guarding

módúno məkói kɔ'k:i-Modhu shaves his beards

sə'rkárnɔ kházɔ'ná kɔ'k:i-Government exempts the revenue

syámno modù káorɛ Syam has forgotten it,

sántino málábú kho'ngpákno káorɛ-Santi has kicked Mala

sù:éndi' dímapúrdɔ lɔ'iri-Suren is staying at Dimapur

syámno ngà lɔ'ri-Syam is purchasing the fish

nohándɔgi nóng tàrɔ'kli-It has been raining since the day before yesterday.

nóbino wàri' tàrɔ'kli-Nobin has been listening to the story

3. 3. 2. 2. 2 Segmental similarity of the verbs in the two aspects of present tense

When the verbs in the indefinite and durative aspects of the present tense are derived from the same verb roots ending -n or -t, segmental shape of such verbs are same. li, compound of -l glide and -i, marker of form in the present indefinite verbal forms is stressed. li, compound of li, durative aspect and -i, marker of form in the present durative verbal forms is not stressed.

rámnə khonli'-Ram thinks
 rámnə kho`nli Ram is thinking
 rámnə cə`tli-Ram goes
 rámnə cə`tli-Ram is going

3. 3. 2. 3. 1 Past Tense

lo'm, marker of past tense is followed by the markers of
 (a) the four aspects and (b) -i', marker of form. In such case, -i,
 marker of form is changed into -e due to the contact with lo, per-
 fect aspect in the verbs in the past perfect aspect.

Past Tense—lo'm, TM + A + i', F

φ, A (Indefinite aspect)

√ + lo'm + φ, A + i', F

iro'mi'-we/you/they wrote

pi'ro'mi'-we/you/they gave

thiro'mi'-we/you/they searched

lo, A (perfect aspect)

√ + lo'm, TM + lo, A + i', F

iro'mle'-we/you/they had written

pi'ro'mle'-we/you/they had given

thiro'mle'-we/you/they had searched

li, A (durative aspect)

√ + lo'm, TM + li, A + i', F

iro'mli'-we/you/they were writing

pi'ro'mli'-we/you/they were giving

thiro'mli'-we/you/they were searching

lo'kli, A (perfect durative aspect)

√ + lo'm, TM + lo'kli, A + i', F

iro'klo'mli'-we/you/they had been writing

pi'ro'klo'mli'-we/you/they had been giving

thiro'klo'mli'-we/you/they had been searching

módhúno wáho'i khorə háiro'mi'-Modhu said some words

mádhə'pno makhút háiro'mi'-Madhop waved his band

rámnə si'ng kt áiro'mle'-Ram had cut the firewood

rázénno módhúgi eorúk kháiro'mlè-Rajén had given Mo-
dhu's share

khúnú odù páiro'mlí-The pigeon was flying

módhúno sóri odù páiro'mlí Modhu was holding the knife

rámno dáí púro'k lo'mli Ram had been taking the responsi-
bility

syámno sén púro'klo'mli-Syam had been borrowing the
money

3. 3. 2. 3 2 *Markers common to the present and past tenses*

φ marker of the Present Tense and lo'm, marker of the Past Tense are followed by the same markers of aspects and form. Thus the Verbs in the four aspects of the Past Tense are the extensions of the verbs in the four aspects of the Present Tense with the addition of lo'm, marker of the Past Tense.

Present Tense - φ, TM+A+i', F

Past Tense - lom, TM+A+i' F

φ, A (indefinite aspect)

thà:i'-we/you/they send

thàro'mi'-we/you/they sent

lo, A (perfect aspect)

thàrè-we/you/they have sent

thàro'mlè-we/you/they had sent

li, A (durative aspect)

thàri-we/you/they are sending

thàro'mli-we/you/they were sending

lo'kli, A (perfect durative aspect)

thàro'kli-we/you/they have been sending

thàro'klo'mli-we/you/they had been sending

3. 3. 2. 4. 1 *Markers of the four aspects and the form for the verbs in the Future Tense*

1 *Markers of the four aspects*

Markers of the four aspects for the Verbs in the Future Tense are shown below :—

- ϕ, (zero), indefinite aspect
- lo'm-perfect aspect
- khi-durative aspect
- lo'kkhi-perfect durative aspect
- 2 ni, marker of form

ni is the marker of form for the verbs in the four aspects of the Future Tense.

3. 3. 2. 4. 2 Future Tense

Kodo'u, marker of Future Tense is preceded by the markers of the four aspects and followed by ni, marker of form. In such case, kodo'u, marker of future tense is changed into ko in the verbs in the four aspects of the Future Tense.

Future Tense—A + ko, TM (kodo'u > ko) + ni, F

ϕ, A (indefinite aspect)

√ + ϕ, A + ko, TM + ni, F

càgoni-we/you/they will eat

pàgoni-we/you/they will read

tàgoni-we/you/they will hear

lo'm, A (perfect aspect)

√ + lo'm, A + ko, TM + ni, F

cà'o'mgoni-we/you/they will have eaten

pà'o'mgoni-we/you/they will have read

tà'o'mgoni-we/you/they will have heard

khi, A (durative aspect)

√ + khi, A + ko, TM + ni, F

càkhigoni-we/you/they will be eating

pàkhigoni-we/you/they will be reading

tàkhigoni-we/you/they will be hearing

lo'kkhi, A (perfect durative aspect)

√ + lo'kkhi, A + ko, TM + ni, F

cà'o'kkigoni-we/you/they will have been eating

pà'o'kkigoni-we/you/they will have been reading

tà'o'k khi-goni-we/you/they will have been hearing

lɔ'ipàn ɔdù i'singɔ tɔɔgoni-That flower plant will float on the water

módhúno ngà tɔɔgoni-Modhu will fry the fish

máláno mɔdù tɔúro'mgoni-Mala will have done that

mádhɔ'pno kóm tɔ'uro'mgoni-Madhop will have dug the pit-rádhádi' sɔ'nggómɔo i'sing.yáakhigani-Radha will be mixing water with the mi:k

rázénno ú ɔdù yáakhigoni.Rajen will be cutting that tree

rámɔdi' ko'kyèt yètɔ'kkhigoni-Ram will have been wearing the turban

syámdi' mɔro'i yètɔ'kkhigoni-Syam will have been arguing

3. 3. 2. 4. 3 Kɔɔɔ'u, marker of Future Tense in the verbs of the subordinate clauses

while kɔɔɔ'u, marker of future tense is changed into kɔ in the verbs of the simple sentences and coordinate clauses, kɔɔɔ'u remains in the verbs of the subordinate clauses without undergoing any change in its form.

kɔɔɔ'u > Kɔ in the verbs of simple sentences

càgoni-he will eat

íro'mgoni-he will have written

pákhigoni-he will be reading

Kɔɔɔ'u in the verbs of subordinate clauses

rámno càgɔɔ'uribo kómlá, the orange that Ram will eat

rámno íro'mgɔɔ'uribo cithi, the letter that Ram will have written

rámno pákhigɔɔ'uribonino-since Ram will be reading

3. 3. 3 Tense Forms

Verbs and verbal compounds express tense forms like can, may, must, should etc.

3. 3. 3. 1 Tense Forms expressed with the help of markers of aspects.

Verbs express Hortative and Imperative Moods with the help of the the markers of aspects.

Verbal compounds express “can may and should” with the help of the markers of aspects.

Markers of aspects used in expressing the above Tense Forms are shown below :—

- (a) ϕ , indefinite aspect
- (b) lo'm, perfect aspect
- (c) khi, durative aspect
- (d) lo'khi, perfect durative aspect

The markers of aspects shown above are also used in expressing the four aspects of the Future Tense.

1. kè, si'sonù, Hortative Mood

Kè, si' and sonù express Hortative Mood in the sense of 'let do' in the indefinite, perfect and durative aspects. In such case, Kè, si' and sonù follow the markers of the three aspects. Kè is used in the first person and both the numbers, si' expresses first person only in the plural, sonù denotes third person in both the numbers.

- (a) A+kè-hortative first person
- (b) A+si'-hortative first person (plural)
- (c) A+sonù-hortative third person

ϕ , A (indefinite aspect)

- págè let me/us read
- pási'-let us read
- pásonù-let him/them read

lo'm, A (perfect aspect)

- páro'mgè let me/us have read
- páro'msi'-let us have read
- páro'msonù-let him/them read

khi, A (durative aspect)

- pákhigè-let me/us read
- pákhisi'-let us read
- pákhisonù-let him/them read
- oi' hoyéng co'tkè, let me go tomorrow

192—Morphology

o'ikho'i pho'mkhsi'-let us be sitting

mokho'ino phi odù sùro'msonù-let them have washed that cloth

1(2) sonù expressing desire, greeting etc.

sonù, Hortative Mood third person may express desire, greeting etc, occurring with a few verbs.

rám púnsi'sonù may Ram live long

syám pho'mthón kàsonù-may Syám get promotion to the higher post.

2 —o', Imperative Mood

o', Imperative Mood expresses such Mood in the indefinite, perfect and durative aspects. In such case, —o' follows the markers of the three aspects. Khi, durative aspect is changed into kho'.

Imperative Mood —A + o'

φ, A (indefinite aspect)

pá : o'-(you) read

tà : o'-(you) hear

lò'm, A (perfect aspect)

páro'mmù-(you) have it read

tàro'm mù-(you) have it heard

khí, A (durative aspect)

pákho'-(you) go on reading

tàkho'-(you) go on hearing

no'ng hoyéng làk:hù-(you) come tomorrow

nokho'i thobò'k sùkho -(you) go on doing the work

3 ngo'mgoní, can

ngo'mgoní is the future indefinite form of ngo'm, auxiliary verb. It expresses 'can' in the four aspects occurring with the main verbs in such aspects and pə. marker of infinitive.

MV (√ + A + pə, + ngo'mgoní-can

φ, A (indefinite aspect)

MV (√ + φ, A + pə, + ngo'mgoní-can

lɔ̀bɔ ngo'mgoni-we/you/they can write
 li'bɔ ngo'mgoni-we/you/they can narrate
 pi'bɔ ngo'mgoni-we/you/they can give

lɔ́m, A (perfect aspect)

MV(√ + lɔ́m, A + pɔ) + ngo'mgoni, can
 iɾɔ́mbɔ ngo'mgoni-we/you/they can have written
 li'ɾɔ́mbɔ ngo'mgoni-we/you/they can have narrated
 pi'ɾɔ́mbɔ ngo'mgoni-we/you/they can have given

khi, A (durative aspect)

MV(√ + khi A + pɔ) ngo'mgoni, can
 i'khiɔ ngo'mgoni-we/you/they can be writting
 li'khiɔ ngo'mgoni we/you/they can narrating
 pi'khiɔ ngo'mgoni we/you/they can be giving

lɔ̀kkhi, A (perfect durative aspect)

MV(√ + lɔ̀kkhi, A + pɔ) + ngo'mgoni, can
 i'ɾɔ̀kkhiɔ ngo'mgoni-we/you/they can have been writting
 li'ɾɔ̀kkhiɔ ngo'mgoni we/you/they can have been narrating
 pi'ɾɔ̀kkhiɔ ngo'mgoni-we/you/they can have been giving
 mádhɔ'p i'sò'i sò'kpɔ ngo'mgoni-Madhɔp can sing the song
 máláno phi ɔ̀dù sùrɔ́mbɔ ngo'mgoni Mala can have washed
 that cloth

rámno syámno sɛn thàrɔ̀kkhiɔ ngo'mgoni- Ram can have
 been sending money to Syam

4 tho'k : i', should

tho'k:i' is the present indefinite form of tho'k, auxiliary
 Verb. It expresses "should" in the four aspects occuring with the
 main verbs in such aspects and pho'm, primary suffix.

MV(√ + A + pho'm) + tho'k:i', should

φ, A (Indefinite aspect)

MV(√ + φ, A + pho'm) + tho'k:i', should
 sápho'm tho'k:i' we/you/they should make
 iápho'm tho'k:i'-we/you/they should heard
 thàpho'm tho'k:i'-we/you/they shou'd send

194 - Morphology

lɔ'm, A (perfect aspect)

MV(√ + lɔ'm, A + pho'm) + tho'k:i', should

sáɔ'mpho'm tho'k i'--we/you/they should have made

táɔ'mpho'm tho'k:i'--we/you/they should have heard

tháɔ'mpho'm tho'k:i'--we/you/they should have sent

khí, A (durative aspect)

MV(√ + khí, A + pho'm) + tho'k:i' should

sákhípho'm tho'k:i'--we/you/they should be making

tákhípho'm tho'k:i'--we/you/they should be hearing

thákhípho'm tho'k:i'--we/you/they should be sending

lɔ'kkhí, A (perfect durative aspect)

MV(√ + lɔ'kkhí, A + pho'm) + tho'k:i', should

sáɔ'kkhípho'm tho'k:i'--we/you/they should have been

making

táɔ'kkhípho'm tho'k:i'--we/you/they should have been hearing

tháɔ'kkhípho'm tho'k:i'--we/you/they should have been sending

débénno modù khò'ngpho'm tho'k:i'-- Deben should know that

dámúno cíthí ɔdù tháɔ'mpho'm tho'k:i'--Damu should have sent that letter

mádhò'pno tho'bo'k ɔdù súkhípho'm tho'k:i'-- Madhop should be doing that work

5 yá:i', may

yá:i' is the present indefinite form of yá, auxiliary verb. It expresses 'may' in the four aspects occurring with the main verbs in such aspects and pɔ, marker of infinitive.

MV(√ + A + pɔ) + yá:i', may

ɸ, A (indefinite aspect)

MV(√ + ɸ, A + pɔ) + yá : i', may

íbo yá:i'--we/you/they may write

pi'bo yá:i'--we/you/they may give

thíbo yá:i'--we/you/they may search

lɔ'm, A (perfect aspect)

MV(√ + lom, A + pɔ) + yá:i', may

íɔ'mbo yá:i'--we/you/they may have written

pi'ro'mbo yá:i`-we/you/they may have given
thi'ro'mbo yá:i`-we/you/they may have searched

khí, ʔ (durative aspect)

íkhíbo yá:i`-we/you/they may be writing
pi'khíbo yá:i` we/you/they may be giving
thíkhíbo yá:i`-we/you/they may be searching

lo'kkhí. A (perfect durative aspect)

íro'kkhíbo yá:i`-we/you/they may have been writing
pi'o'kkhíbo yá:i` we/you/they may have been giving
thi'ro'kkhíbo yá:i` we/you/they may have been searching
módhú hoyéng lákpə yá:i`-Modhu may come tomorrow
mádho'pno gópálbú pánglo'mbo yá:i`-Madhop may have helped Gopal
Syámno nó'éndə sən thàro'kkhíbo yá:i`-Syam may have been sending money to Noren

3. 3. 3. 2 *Tense Forms expressed with the help of auxiliary verbs*

Conjugated forms of the three auxiliary verbs viz , ngo'm, tá and yá express could, might and obligative tense respectively occurring with the main verbs in pə, marker of infinitive

1 ngo'm lo'mgoní, could

ngo'mlo'mgoní is the future perfect form of ngom, auxiliary verb. It expresses "could" in the perfect aspect.

MV(√ + pə) + ngo'mlo'mgoní, could

co'ngbo ngo'lo'mgoní-we/you/they could have entered
ho'ngbo ngo'mlo'mgoní-we/you/they could have asked
so'ngbo ngo'mlo'mgoní we/you/they could have guarded
débénno gópálbú pángbo ngo'mlo'mgoní-Deben could have helped Gopal
mádho'pno syámbú ngáibo ngo'mlo'mgoní-Madhop could have waited for Syam

2 yáro'mgoní, might

yáro'mgoní is the future perfect form of yá, auxiliary verb. It expresses "might" in the perfect aspect.

MV(√ + pə) + yáɔ'mgoni, might

kho'ngbo yá:ɔ'mgoni-we/you/they might have known
 pho'ngbo yáɔ'mgoni we/you/they might have got
 so'ngbo yáɔ'mgoni we/you/they might have guarded
 débénno syámbú ngáibo yáɔ'mgoni-Deben might have waited for Syam
 dúrénnɔ gópálbú pángbo yáɔ'mgoni-Dorén might have helped Gopal.

3 General and emphatic forms of tá, obligative tense

tá, auxiliary verb expresses obligative in the sense of “(a) have to, (b) had to do and (c) will have to do.” In such case, tá obligative tense takes general forms and emphatic forms. General forms of tá are the conjugated forms of tá for the indefinite aspect of the three tenses. Emphatic forms of tá, obligative tense are the conjugated forms of tá for the perfect aspect of the three tenses.

General and emphatic forms of tá, obligative tense

general forms of tá emphatic forms of tá		meanings
tái	tárè	have to do
táɔ'mi`	táɔ'mlè	had to do
tágoni	táɔ'mgoni	will have to do

MV(√ + pə) + tá:ɪ/tárè, have to do

cúbo tá:ɪ/tárè-we/you/they have to eat
 pábo tá:ɪ/tárè-we/you/they have to read
 sábo tá:ɪ/tárè-we/you/they have to make

MV(√ + pə) + táɔ'mi`/táɔ'mlè, had to do

cágo táɔ'mi`/táɔ'mlè-we/you/they had to eat
 pábo táɔ'mi`/táɔ'mlè-we/you/they had to read
 tábo táɔ'mi`/táɔ'mlè-we/you/they had to make

MV(√ + pə) + ta'goni/ta'ɔ'mgoni, will have to do

cábo ta'goni/ta'ɔ'mgoni we/you/they will have to eat
 pábo ta'goni/ta'ɔ'mgoni-we/you/they will have to read

sábo tágoni/táro'mgoni--we/you/they will have to make.
 débéno syámbú pángbo tá:i'/tárè-Deben has to help Syam
 dámúdi` dimápúr co`tpo táro'mi'/táro'mlè-Damu had to go
 to Dimapur.
 mádhop`pno gópálbú ngáibo tágoni/táro'mgoni-Madhop will
 have to wait for Gopal.

3. 3. 3. 3 Tense Forms expressed with the help of kodo'u

Kodo'u expresses the following tense and tense forms :—

- (a) four aspects of the future tense
- (b) "must" in the four aspects
- (c) "going to do" in the indefinite and perfect aspects

1 (I) Kodo'u, must

Kodo'u, must is preceded by the markers of the four aspects and followed by (a) po, marker of infinitive and (b) ní, marker of form

must—A + kodo'u + po + ní, F

φ, A (Indefinite aspect)

√ + φ, A + kodo'u + po + ní, F

càgodo'uboni-we/you/they must eat

pàgodo'uboni-we/you/they must read

tàgodo'uboni-we/you/they must hear

lo'm, A (perfect aspect)

√ + lo'm, A + kodo'u + po + ní, F

cáro'mgodo'uboni-we/you/they must have eaten

páro'mgodo'uboni-we/you/they must have read

táro'mgodo'uboni-we/you/they must have heard

khi, A (durative aspect)

√ + khi, A + kodo'u + po + ní, F

sàkhigodo'uboni-we/you/they must have eating

pàkhigodo'uboni-we/you/they must be reading

tàkhigodo'uboni-we/you/they must be hearing

lo'kki, A (perfect durative aspect)

√ + lo'kki, A + kodo'u + po + ní, F

cáro'kkhigodo'uboni we/you/they must have been eating

párc'kkigadóboni--we/you/they must have been reading
 tárc'kkhigadó'uboni-we/you/they must have been hearing
 mádhó'p hóyéng cò'tkò'dóuboni-Madhó must go tomorrow
 módhúnc thò'bò'k ódù súrc'mgadó'uboni-Módhú must have
 done that work
 syámdi' párá pákhigadó'uboni--Syám must be reading his
 lesson

1 (2) Kodo'u, must and kodo'u, shall/will

Kodo'u, must and kodo'u, shall/will are preceded by the markers of the four aspects. Kodo'u, must is followed by (a) pə, marker of infinitive and (b) ni, marker of form. Kodo'u, shall/will is followed by ni, marker of form and changed into ko.

must—A + kodo'u + pə + ni, F

shall/will—A + kə (kodo'u > kə) + ni, F

φ, A (indefinite aspect)

igadó'uboni-we/you/they must write

igoni-we/you/they will write

lə'm, A (perfect aspect)

irc'mgadó'uboni-we/you/they must have written

irc'goni-we/you/they will have written

khi, A (durative aspect)

ikhigadó'uboni-we/you/they must be writing

ikhigoni-we/you/they will be writing

lə'kkhi, A (perfect durative aspect)

irc'kkhigadó'uboni-we/you/they must have been writing

irc'kkigoni-we/you/they will have been writing

2 (1) kodo'u, going to do (present tense)

Kodo'u expresses "going to do" in the indefinite and perfect aspects of the present tense. In such case, kodo'u is followed by (a) marker of the present tense; (b) marker of indefinite/perfect aspect and (c) -i, marker of form. The glide is formed in the verbs expressing "going to do" in the present indefinite aspect.

going to do (present tense)—kodo'u + Φ , TM + A + i, F
 Φ , A (Indefinite aspect)

✓ + kodo'u + Φ , TM + Φ , A + i, F
 cagodo'uri-we/you/they are going to eat
 pagodo'uri-we/you/they are going to read
 sagodo'uri-we/you/they are going to make

lo A (perfect aspect)

✓ + kodo'u + Φ , TM + lo, A + l, F
 cagodo'ure-we/you/they have been about to eat
 pagodo'ure-we/you/they have been about to read
 sagodo'ure-we/you/they have been about to make
 modhu ca tho'kkodo'uri Modhu is going to drink tea
 madho'p sigodo'ure-Madhop has been about to die.

2 (2) kodo'u, going to do (past tense)

Kodo'u, expresses "going to do" in the indefinite and perfect aspects of the past tense. In such case, kodo'u is followed by (a) lom, marker of past tense, (b) marker of indefinite/perfect aspect and (c) -i, marker of form.

going to do (past tense)—kodo'u + lo'm, TM + A + i, F
 Φ , A (indefinite aspect)

✓ + kodo'u + lo'm, TM + Φ , A + i, F
 cagodo'uro'mi-we/you/they were going to eat
 pagodo'uro'mi-we/you/they were going to read
 sagodo'uro'mi-we/you/they were going to make

lo, A (perfect aspect)

✓ + kodo'u + lo'm, TM + lo, A + i, F
 cagodo'uro'mle-we/you/they had been about to eat
 pagodo'uro'mle-we/you/they had been about to read
 sagodo'uro'mle-we/you/they had been about to make
 debeno gopalbu phugodo'uro'mi-Deben was about to beat
 Gopal
 modhudi sigodo'uro'mle Modhu had been about to die

2 (3) Kodo'u, going to do, kodo'u, must and kodo'u, shall/will

Kodo'u, going to do is followed by (a) marker of present/past tense, (b) marker of indefinite/perfect aspect and (c) -i

marker of form. Kodo'u, must is followed by (a) po, marker of infinitive and (b) ni, marker of form. Kodo'u, shall/will is followed by ni, marker of form and changed into ke.

càgodo'uri'-we/you/they are going to eat
 càgodo'uro'mi'-we/you/they were going to eat
 càgodo'uboni'-we/you/they must eat
 càgoni'-we/you/they will eat

3 3. 3 4 Tense Forms expressed in the Adverb clauses

Subjective (conditional) Tense and Contingent Future Perfect Tense are expressed by the verbs of the subordinate adverb clauses with the help of the markers of these two tense forms.

1 lobodi', Subjunctive (conditional) tense

lobodi' expresses Subjunctive (Conditional) Tense in the sense of "if do" occurring with the verbs of the subordinate adverb clauses. In such case, these verbs in the lobodi' modify the following verbs of the principal clauses in the indefinite aspect :—

- (a) Verbs in the Future Tense
- (b) Verbs in the kodo'u, must
- (c) Verbs in the hortative mood
- (d) Verbs in the imperative mood
- (e) Verbal compounds with ngo'mgoni, can
- (f) Verbal compounds with thok:i', should
- (g) Verbal compounds with ya:i', may

Subjunctive (conditional) Tense — V+lobodi'

càrobodi'-if we/you/they eat

pàrbodi'-if -we/you/they read

tàrbodi'-if we/you/they hear

rám cò'tlobodi' syámsú cò'tkoni'-If Ram goes Syam will also go

rám cò'tlobodi' syámsú cò'tkodo'uboni'-If Ram goes Syam must also go

rám cò'tlobodi' syámsú cò'tsonú'-If Ram goes let Syam also go

rám cò'tlobodi` syámsù cò'tpo ngo'mgoni-If Ram goes Syam can also go

rám cò'tlobodi` syámsù cò'tpho'm tho'k:i`-If Ram goes Syam should also go.

rám cò'tlobodi` syámsù cò'tpo yá:i`-If Ram goes Syam may also go

2 ló'mlobodi`, Contingent Future Perfect Tense

ló'mlobodi` expresses Contingent Future Perfect Tense in the sense of 'if did' occurring with the verbs of the subordinate adverb clauses. In such case, these verbs in **lámlobodi`** modify the following verbs of the Principal clauses in the perfect aspect :—

- (a) Verbs in the future tense
- (b) Verbal compounds with **ngo'mlo'mgoni**, could
- (c) Verbal compounds with **yáro'mgoni**, might

Contingent Future Perfect Tense—√ + ló'mlobodi`

cáro'mlobodi`-if -we/you/they ate

sáro'mlobodi`-if we/you/they made

táro'mlobodi`-if we/you/they heard

rám cò'tlo'mlobodi` syámsù cò'tlo'mgoni-If Ram went, Syam will also have gone

rám cò'tlo'mlobodi` syámsù cò'tpo ngo'mlo'mgoni-If Ram went Syam could also have gone

rám cò'tlo'mlobodi` syámsù cò'tpo yáro'mgodo'uboni-If Ram went Syam might also have gone

2 (2) Verbs in **kodo'u** "must" expressing "would"

Verbs of the principal clauses in the perfect aspect of 'must' express 'would' in the perfect aspect when such verbs are modified by the verbs in **ló'mlobodi`**, Contingent Future Perfect Tense.

mádhú cò'tlo'mlobodi` syámsù cò'tlo'mgodo'uboni-If Modhu went, Syam would also have gone.

mádhó'pno pánglo'mlobodi` gópátno moná pho'nglo'mgodo'u-boni-If Madho'p helped Gopal would have got the prize.

3. 3. 4. 1. *Stative verbs in the Tense and Tense Forms*

1 Stative Verbs in the Tenses

Stative Verbs express the indefinite and perfect aspects of the three Tenses.

φ, A (indefinite aspect)

ko'ngi'-it is dry

ko'nglo'mi'-It was dry

ko'nggoni'-it will be dry

débéndi' ko'nli-Deben is strong

dámúdl' so'nli-Damu is weak

mádhó'pti' pò'nglo'mi'-Madhop was foolish

módhúdi' snglo'mmi'-Modhu was wise

pámbi' odù ningtho'mthádo ko'nggoni'-That plant will be dry in the winter

úho'i odù thúmgoni'-That fruit will be sweet.

lo/lə,m, A (perfect aspect)

púmlè-it has been rotten

púmlò'mlè-it had been rotten

púmlò'mgoni'-It will have been rotten

ho'ino'u odù púmlè-That mango has been rotten

hámèng odù no'irè-That goat has been fat

honùbo adù ngàoro'mlè-That old man had been mad

módhúdi' to'nlo'mgoni'-Modhu will have been idle

mádhó'pti' li'kio'mgoni'-Madhop will have been miserly

2 Stative verbs in the Tense Forms

Stative verbs express the indefinite and perfect aspects of the Tense Forms.

φ, A (indefinite aspect)

cètkodo'uboni'-it must be firm

cètkodo'uri'-it is going to be firm

cètsnù-let it be firm

cètpo ngo'mgoni'-it can be firm

cètpo tá:i'-it has also to be firm

cètpo'm tho'kai'-it should be firm.

cètpo yá:i` it may be firm
 madù cò'ngodo'uboni`-it must be simple
 masi` ha'godo'uri`-it is going to be delicious
 módhú s'ngsonù let Modhu be wise
 masi` ho'ngci't múnbo ngo'mgoni`-it can be ripe the day after
 tomorrow
 mádhop tho'ubo tá:i`-Madhop has to be brave
 modù khàpho'm tho'k:i`-it should be bitter
 masi` tho'tpo yá:i`-it may be soft

lo/lo'm, A (perfect aspect)

co'tlo'mgodo'uboni`-it must have been wet
 co'tkodo'urè-it has been about to be wet
 co'tlo'msonù-let it has been wet
 co'tpo ngo'mlo'mgoni`-it could have been wet
 co'tlo'mpho'm tho'k:i`-it should have been wet
 co'tlo'mbo yá:i`-it may have been wet
 modù háoro'mgodo'uboni`-it must have been delicious
 modù mótkodo'urè-it has been about to be dirty
 mádhop núngairo'msonù-let Madhop have been happy
 masidi` kálèndo múnbo ngo'mlo'mgoni`-it could have been
 ripe in the summer
 módhúdi` singlo'mpho'm tho'k:i`-Modhu should have been
 wise
 modù pi'klo'mbo yá:i`-it may have been small

3. 3. 4. 2 *Change of the sentences in the active voice into the sentences in the Passive Voice.*

When simple sentences and compound sentences in the active voice are changed into the sentences in the Passive Voice, the following rules are followed :—

(a) Transitive Verbs of the simple (active) sentences in the indefinite and perfect aspects of the three tenses do not undergo any change in their forms in the simple sentences in the passive voice.

(b) Transitive verbs and transitive verbal compound of the two coordinate clauses of the compound (active) sentences in the indefinite and perfect aspects of tenses and tense forms do not undergo any change in their forms in the compound (Passive) sentences.

(c) Subject of the active sentences (both simple and compound) with or without *nɔ*, agentive is deleted in the passive sentences.

(d) Object of the active sentences (both simple and compound) with or without *pú*, accusative remain with or without *pú* in the passive sentences.

Examples:—

(a) Active simple sentences changed into Passive simple sentences

Active Sentences
púlísɔ hùránɔ phàrè The police
 has arrested the thief

ràjénɔ hɔ'udóng ɔdù hàtɔ'mlè-
 Rajen had killed that cat

mɔ'ntrɔnɔ monà hɔ'uzi'k yélgóni-
 The minister will distribute the
 prize now

Passive Sentences
hùránɔ phàrè The thief has
 been arrested

hɔ'udóng ɔdù hàtɔ'mlè- That
 cat had been killed

monà hɔ'uzi'k yélgóni- The
 prize will be distributed now

(b) Active compound sentences changed into the Passive Compound Sentences.

Active compound sentences
débénɔ cithi ɔni` thàré, páo-
khúm pho'ngdrè- Deben has
 sent two letters but has not
 recieved any reply

dámúnɔ lɔ'u yónlɔ'mlè-ing-
khón lɔ'iro'mlè- Damu had
 sold the paddy land and
 bought the homestead land.

Passive compound sentences
cithi ɔni` thàré, páokhúm pho'ng
drè- Two letters have been sent
 but no reply has been recieved

lɔ'u yónlɔ'mlè-ingkhón lɔ'iro'mlè-
 paddy land had been sold and
 homestead land had been bought

gópá'di' tho'bo'k sùrò'mgoní,
khùtsùmò'nsù phò'nglò'mgoní-
Gopal will have done the
work and got the wage

mádhò'pno débénbú pángbo
ngó'mgoní, syámbúdi' pángbo
ngó'míoi-Madhòp can help
Deben but not Syam

pálisra mádhúbú thàdò'kpo
tá:i. gópálbudi' phábo tá:i'-
Police has to release Modhu
and to arrest Gopal

tho'bo'k sùrò'mgoní, khùtsùmò'n
phò'nglò'mgoní-The work will
have been done and the wage
will have been got

débénbú pángbo ngo'mgoní,
syámbúdi' pángbo ngo'míoi-De-
ben can be helped but Syam
cannot be helped

módhúbú thàdò'kpo tá:i. gópálbú
phábo tá:i'-Modhu has to be
released and Gopal has to be
arrested

34 Qualifiers

3. 4. 0. *Qualifiers may be classified into the three groups viz.,*
(a) *Verbal Qualifiers, (b) Prominal Qualifiers and*
(c) *Numerals.*

3. 4. 1 Verbal Qualifiers

Verbal Qualifiers are derived from the roots of the
funtive and stative verbs by adding to such roots -o, primary
prefix and po, marker of the infinitive.

Verbal Qualifiers may also be derived from the roots of
the funtive and stative verbs by adding to such roots -o, primary
prefix and pi', female marker. Such qualifiers in pi' define the
nouns in the feminine gender.

1 (1) Stative verbal Qualifiers in -o and po

Stative verbal qualifiers in -o, primary prefix and po,
marker of infinitive form the overwhelming majority of the Ver-
bal Qualifiers. Some of such qualifiers are shown below :—

oco'mbo lo'umi'-simple peasant

acètpo wàrèp-firm decision

oco'tpo phi wet cloth

oho'abo phi new cloth

oháobò i'nsáng-delicious curry
 oko'nbo nùpà-strong man
 oko'ngbo pàmbi-dry plant
 okhàbò hò'i-bitter fruit
 omò'mbo ká-dark room
 omə'nbo láiri'k-old book
 omúnbo hò'ino'u-ripe mango
 omo'tpo phí-dirty cloth
 omúbò úcèk-black bird
 ono'ibo nùpà-fat man
 ori'kpò mi'-miserly person

1 (2) Stative Verbal Qualifiers in -ò and pi`

Most of the stative verbal qualifiers in -ò, primary prefix and pi`, female marker follow the qualified nouns in such gender.

lúkhrábi` ori'kpì-misery widow
 məcò'n ono'ibi`-fat (younger) sister
 məcè ongàobi`-mad (elder) sister
 mómò'u oto'nbi`-idle daughter-in-law
 mò'u okho'tpi`-licentious woman
 mò'u onə'ubi`-newly married woman
 so'n ongàngbi` red cow
 yén omúbì-black hen

2 (1/1) Funtive Verbal Qualifiers in -ò and pò

Some qualifiers may be derived from the roots of the funtive verbs by adding to such roots -ò, primary prefix and pò, marker of infinitive. These qualifiers express perfect aspect.

ohóngbò phíbo'm-changed circumstances
 okàibo cophù-broken pitcher
 okhàkpò sèn-reserved money
 opho'tpo phí-stitched cloth
 ophùtpò yérúm-boiled egg
 orèppò mómò'n-fixed price
 osàtpò lo'i-blossomed flower

otábo mamo'n-reduced price
 otáobo ngà-fried fish
 otèkpa cò'l-brcken stick

2 (1/2) Funtive Verbal Qualifiers in li and po

Funtive Verbal Qualifiers in po, marker of infinitive
 express durative aspect taking li, marker of such aspect,

càklíbo mǝ'itán-burning charcoal
 cènlibo túrén-running river
 hínglibo zibo-living being
 khàklíbo nóng-roaring cloud
 nóklíbo ongàng-smiling baby
 ngo'nglibo khói-humming bee
 táoríbo ú:ngám-floating raft
 tùmlibo ngóngà-sleeping lion

2 (2/.) Funtive Verbal Qualifiers in lo and pi`

A few qualifiers are derived from the roots of the functional verbs by adding to such roots lo perfect aspect and pi`, female marker. Such qualifiers express perfect aspect.

ì'ràknorobi` lo'isábi`-drowned girl
 lúho`nglabi` nùpi`-married woman
 pènlobi` mobo`k-satisfied grand mother
 sírobi` motà-dead friend (female)
 so`klobi` lúkhra-wounded widow

2 (2/2) Funtive Verbal Qualifiers in li and pi`

A few functional verbal qualifiers in pi`, female marker
 express durative aspect taking li, marker of such aspect,

hínglibi` mocà nùpi`-surviving daughter
 ko`plibi` lúkhra-crying widow
 no`klibi` lo'isábi`-smiling girl
 sánnoribi` motà-playing friend (female)
 tùmlibi` nùpi`-sleeping woman

3. 4. 2 Pronominal Adjectives

Many pronouns function as the adjective without undergoing any change in their forms. Such pronouns will be referred to as the pronominal adjectives.

Most of the pronominal adjectives follow the qualified nouns. A few of such adjectives precede the qualified nouns.

1 Distributive Adjectives

omomo'm, every ; ongàng omomo'mno lúpà mǎngà pho'ng-goni-Every boy will get five rupees
khùdingmo'k, each ; nùpi' khùdingmo'kno mocà núngsi-
Each woman loves her child.

2 (1) Indefinite Adjectives following the qualified nouns

otai khoro, some other ; wapho'm otai khoro khò'nnosi-Let
us discuss some other matters
koyá, several ; mi' koyáno thobo'k pho'ngdè Several persons
do not get employment
khoro, some ; láiri'k khoro-Some books

2 (2) Indefinite adjectives preceding the qualified nouns

konágúmbo omoto, nobody ; konágúmbo mi' omotona modù
pámdè-No person likes it
korinó omo, anything ; korinó láiri'k omo hékto págè-Let
me read any book
korígúmbo omoto, nothing ; módhúdi' korígúmbo thobo'k
omoto to'udè-Modhu does no work

3 (1) Interrogative Adjectives following the qualified nouns

koná what ; kóbi konáno osi'gúmbo so'iréng igadogé-what
poet will write such poem ?
koyá, how many ; mi' koyá lákkodogè-How many persons
will come ?

3 (2) Interrogative Adjectives preceding the qualified nouns

korí, what ; syámdi' korí thobo'k to'uribogè-What work is
Syam doing ?
koro'mbo, which ; koro'mbo láiri'k págodogè-Which book
will you read ?

4 Separative Adjectives

omo, any one, one ; ongàng omomo modù hékto to'ubo
ngo'mgoni'-any boy can do it.

otó'i-other; mi`otó'i-other persons

5 Demonstrative Adjectives

Two proximate demonstrative pronouns viz, odù and osi` are used as the adjectives. They follow the qualified nouns and personal pronouns,

5 (1/1) Demonstrative Adjectives qualifying the nouns in the singular

odù and osi`, express 'that' and 'this' respectively qualifying the nouns in the singular.

ho`i odù-that fruit

lo`i odù-that flower

ni`osi`-this person

o`k osi`-this pig

Demonstrative adjectives may be reduplicated for sake of emphasis when they qualify the nouns in the singular. In such case, the first reduplicated segment of these adjectives take mǎ, secondary prefix and kí, genitive.

<i>singular forms</i>	<i>emphatic singular forms</i>	<i>meanings</i>
mi`odù	mǎdùgí mi`odù	that person
o`k odù	mǎdùgí o`k odù	that pig
sà osi`	mǎsígí sà osi`	this animal
só osi`	mǎsígí só osi`	this key

5 (1/2) Demonstrative Adjectives qualifying the personal pronouns in the singular

odù, that and osi`, this function as the emphasisers without expressing their meanings when they qualify the personal pronouns in the singular. In such case, odù occurs with mà, he/she and osi`, this occurs with all the personal pronouns.

(a) odù as emphasiser

<i>singular form</i>	<i>emphatic singular forms</i>	<i>meaning</i>
mà	mǎhàk odù	he/she

(b) osi` as emphasiser

<i>singular forms</i>	<i>emphatic singular forms</i>	<i>meaning</i>
oi`	oi`osi`/oi`hàk osi`	I

210—Morphology

no`ng
mà

no`ng o`si`/nohàk o`si`
mohàk o`si`

you
he/she

5 (2/1) Demonstrative Adjectives qualifying the nouns in the plural

o`du, 'that' and o`si, 'this' express 'those' and 'these' respectively qualifying the nouns in the plural

hi`sing o`du-those boats

ka`sing o`du-those rooms

lo`sing o`si-these flowers

mi`sing o`si-these persons

5 (2/2) Demonstrative Adjectives qualifying the personal pronouns in the plural

o`du, that express 'those' qualifying moko`i, they.
moko`i o`du those of them

o`si, this expresses 'those' qualifying the personal pronouns in the plural.

oi`kho`i o`si-those of us

no`kho`i o`si-those of you

mo`kho`i o`si-those of them

6 Qualitative Adjectives

Qualitative adjectives are derived from the demonstrative adjectives by adding to these adjectives kumbo, like, Such adjectives precede the qualified nouns.

o`du`gumbo, that like ; o`du`gumbo midi` tangi`-Person of that kind is rare

o`si`gumbo, such, this like ; o`si`gumbo nu`pano` modu` turo`i-
Such man will not do that

7 Determinative Adjectives

o`du`k, that much ; so`nggom o`du`kto-That much milk

o`su`k, this much ; tho` o`su`kto-This much oil

3. 4. 3 Numerals

Numerals may be classified into the four groups viz., (a) cardinal numerals, (b) ordinal numerals, (c) multiplicative numerals and (d) distributive numerals.

3.4.3.1 Cardinal Numerals

Cardinal numerals follows the qualified nouns and personal pronouns. A few cardinal numerals are basic forms with or without the secondary prefixes. Most of the cardinal numerals are compound forms.

1 Basic forms of cardinal numerals

kún, twenty is a basic form without taking any secondary prefix

Basic forms of a few cardinal numerals take the three secondary prefixes viz , -o, mǝ and to.

(a) Forms in -o

omǝ, one ; onì-two ; ohúm-three

(b) Forms in mǝ

mǝrí four ; mǝngà-five

(c) Forms in to

torúk six ; torèt-seven ; torá-ten

2 Compound Forms of cardinal numerals

2 (1) Cardinal numerals for 8, 9, 50 and 1000

Cardinal numerals for 8, 9, 50 and 1000 are compound forms. They are shown below :—

nípán-eight ; mápǝ'n-nine ; yàngkhǝ'i-fifty ; lì'sìng-thousand

2 (2) Cardinal numerals with phù, twenty

Cardinal numerals for 40, 60 and 80 are formed by adding phù, twenty (a hound form) to the numerals from 2 to 4.

nì'phù forty ; hùmphù-sixty ; mǝrí'phù-eighty

2 (3) Cardinal numerals with torà, ten

Cardinal numerals for 30, 70 and 90 are formed by adding torà, ten to the numerals for 20, 60 and 80.

kúnthrà-thirty ; hùmphùtorà-seventy ; mǝrí'phùtorà/mǝ'u-drà-ninety.

2 (4) Cardinal Numerals with máthói, ni'thói and húmdói.

First three ascending numbers from the multiples of tens upto ninety are formed by adding to such multiples of tens máthói,

212 Morphology

ni`thói and húmdói viz , cardinal numerals for 1, 2 and 3 plus thói. exceed.

11	toramáthói	13	toráhúmdói
21	kúnmáthói	23	kúnhúmdói
31	kúnthrá máthói	33	kúnthrá húmdói
41	ni`phú máthói	43	ni`phú húmdói
51	yàngkho`ímáthói	53	yàngkho`ihúmdói
61	húmphú máthói	63	húmphú húmdói
71	húmphútorámáthói	73	húmphú torà húmdói
81	mori`phú máthói	83	mori`phú húmdói
91	mori`phú torà máthói	93	mori`phútorà húmdói

2 (5) Cardinal Numerals with the numeral from 4 to 9

Last six ascending numerals from the multiples of tense up to are formed by adding to such multiples of tens the numerals from 4 to 9.

14	toràmori`	19	torámápo`n
24	kúnmori`	29	kúnmápo`n
34	kúnthrànmori`	39	kúnthrà mápo`n
44	ni`phúnmori`	49	ni`phú mápo`n
54	yàngkho`ímori`	59	yàngkho`i n.ápo`n
64	húmphúnmori`	69	húmphúnmópo`n
74	húmphú torámori`	79	húmphútorámápo`n
84	mori`phú mori`	89	mori`phú mápo`n
94	mó`udrá mori`	99	mó`udrá mápo`n

2 (6) Cardinal numerals expressing hundreds

Hundred are formed by adding cà, tb hundred the numerals from 1 to 9.

100	càmcə	200	cə`ni`
3 0	cə`húm	400	cə`mori`

2 (7) Cardinal Numerals expressing thousands, lakhs and crores

Thousands, lakhs and crores are formed by adding li`si`ng, thousand, làk, lakh and kótí, crore to the numerals from 1 to 9.

lì'si'ng torà ten thousands
 lì'si'ng kún-twenty thousands
 làk torà-ten lakhs
 làk kún-twenty lakhs
 kótí torà-ten crores

3. 4. 3 2 *Ordinal Numerals*

Ordinal numeral for one is ohànbo, first. Other ordinal numerals are formed by adding súbo to the cardinal numerals.

oni` súbo-second	ohúm súbo-third
mori` súbo-fourth	mongà súbo-fifth

3. 4. 3. 3 *Multiplicative Numerals*

Multiplicative numerals are formed by adding sərùk to the cardinal numerals.

sərùk oni`-double	sərùk ohúm-three fold
sərùk mori`-four fold	sərùk mongà-five fold

3. 4. 3. 4 *Distributive Numerals*

Distributive numerals are formed by reduplicating the cardinal numerals.

1 omomo'm	2 oni` oni`
3 ohúm ohúm	4 mori` mori`

3. 4. 3. 5 *Qualificatory Genitive*

Nouns in kí, genitive function as qualifiers. Such nouns may take sing, plural marker. The possessed nouns following kí, genitive may take markers of other cases.

ongàngsinggi phùrì'tkháodo-in the pockets of the boys
 ohó'nsinggi páotàktogi-from the advice of the elders
 lo'isábi` singgi láiri'ktogi-from the books of the girls
 nùpì'sigi momàido-in the face of the women

3.5 Adverbs

3.5.0. *Adverbs may be classified into the two groups viz , (a) primary adverbs and (b) derived adverbs.*

3.5.1 Primary Adverbs

Primary adverbs are monosyllabic and reduplicated forms. Some primary adverbs, both monosyllabic and reduplicated, do not take any markers. Some monosyllabic primary adverbs take *no* form and indefinite/perfect forms. Many primary adverbs, both monosyllabic and reduplicated, function as the emphasisers signifying emphasis on a few particular verbs without taking any marker.

3.5.1.1 Primary Adverbs without any markers

Some primary adverbs, both monosyllabic and reduplicated do not take any markers. They precede the modified verbs. They are shown below :—

1 Monosyllabic primary adverbs without any markers

cò'p, exactly ; mǎsì' cò'p cúmmì'—it is exactly straight
hèk—at once

ho'ì—yes

khò'k, never ; modùdò khò'k cò'tkò'nsì'—let us never go there

mái—no

hèk, at once has four synonyms viz., ko'k, pàk, sò't and tùk. Ko'k and sò't are emphatic forms. pàk modifies negative verbs. tùk modifies the verbs in -o', imperative mood in the coordinate clauses.

módhúnò thobò'k ɔdù hèk/ko'k/sò't tó'uthò'k:i'—Madhop does the work at once.

mádhò'pno thobò'k ɔdù hèk/pàk sùdè—Madhop does not do the work at once.

tùk tó'wo', yéngsi'—(you) do it at once, let us see.

ho'i, yes has three synonyms viz, o'ng, oho'i and ùm. o'ng and ùm are somewhat curt and are thus not used towards the elders and superiors. oh'oi is the polite form.

2 Reduplicated Primary Adverbs without any markers

bro'm bro'm, fast ; dāmúnə bro'm bro'm cənli'-Damu runs fast

pro'p pro'p, quickly ; pro'p pro'p ca'tsi'-let us go quickly
phàk phàk, loudly ; gópálnə mokho'igi mómàngdə phàk
phàk no'k:i'-Gopal laughs loudly before them

3.5.1.2 Primary Adverbs taking no form and indefinite/perfect forms

hén, kúm, láo, phào and yám are monosyllabic primary adverbs. They express adverbial meanings taking the following forms :—

- (a) no form viz , the form in no, instrumental
- (b) po form viz , the form in po, marker of infinitive
- (c) to form viz, the form in to, locative

hén, kúm, láo phào and yám also express (1) adverbial meanings and (2) "be" (verb) in the indefinite and perfect aspects of the three tenses taking the following forms —

- (a) indefinite forms viz , the conjugated forms for the indefinite aspect of the three tenses
- (b) perfect forms viz , the conjugated forms for the perfect aspect of the three tenses

1 hén, more

hén, more takes (a) no form and (b) indefinite and perfect forms. It precedes the stative verbs;

1 (1) hénno, more

hénno, more is no form of hén, primary adverbs. It precedes the stative verbs

hénno pàk:i'-it is wider

hénno pàklo'mi' it was wider

hénno pàkkont'-it will be wider

1 (2) Indefinite and perfect forms of hén, more

Indefinite and perfect forms of hén, more follow the stative verbs in po, marker of infinitive. They are shown below :—

<i>Tense</i>	<i>Indefinite forms</i>	<i>Perfect forms</i>
present tense	hénli	hénlè
past tense	hénlo'mi`	hénlo'mlè
future tense	héngóni	hénlo'mgóni

(a) Indefinite forms

- pàkpò hénli`-it is wider
 pàkpò hénlo'mi`-it was wider
 pàkpò héngóni it will be wider

(b) Perfect forms

- pàkpò hénlè it has been wider
 pàkpò hénlo'mlè-it had been wider
 pàkpò hénlo'mgóni-it will have been wider

2 Kúm, like

Kúm, like takes (a) no form, (b) pò form and (c) indefinite and perfect forms.

2 (1) no form and pò form of kúm, like

no form and pò form of kúm, like follow the nominal forms. pò form has adjectival implications.

- (a) no form—kúmnò-like
 (b) pò form—kúmbò-like

Examples :—

- (a) ɔ̀ngàngúmnò-like a baby
 (b) ɔ̀ngàngúmbò-baby-like
 dámúgúmbò mi`-a person like Damu
 yo'tkúmbò-iron-like

2 (2) Indefinite and perfect forms of kúm, like

Indefinite and perfect forms of kúm, like follow the nominal forms. They are shown below :—

<i>Tense</i>	<i>Indefinite form</i>	<i>Perfect forms</i>
present tense	kúmi`	kúmlè
past tense	kúmlò'mi`	kúmlò'mlè
future tense	kúmgóni	kúmlò'mgóni

(a) indefinite forms

syámdi` pò'ndi` t kúmi`-Syam is like a scholar

syámdi` pò'ndi` t kúmb' mî`-Syam was like a scholar

syámdi` pò'ndi` t kúmgóni` Syam will be like a scholar

(b) perfect forms

syámdi` pò'ndit kúmlè`-Syam has been like a scholar

syámdi` pò'ndi` t kúmb' mî`-Syam had been like a scholar

syámdi` pò'ndi` t kúmb' mgóni` Syam will have been like a scholar

3 láo, completely, entirely

láo, completely, entirely takes (a) no form and (b) indefinite and perfect forms

3 (1) láono, completely, entirely

láono, completely, entirely is no form of láo, primary adverb. It follows the reduplicated stative verbs.

pèt pèt láono ú:i` it seems to be completely soft.

3 (2) Indefinite and perfect forms of láo, completely, entirely

Indefinite and perfect forms of láo, completely, entirely follow the reduplicated stative verbs. They are shown below :—

<i>Tenses</i>	<i>Indefinite forms</i>	<i>Perfect forms</i>
present tense	láowi`	láorè
past tense	láoro` mî`	láoro` mîè
future tense	láogóni`	láoro` mgóni

(a) Indefinite forms

cò't cò't láowi`-it is completely wet

cò't cò't láoro` mî`-it was completely wet

c'ot cò't láogóni` it will be completely wet

(b) Perfect forms

cò't cò't láorè, it has been completely wet

cò't cò't láoro` mîè-it had been completely wet

cò't cò't láoro` mgóni`-it will have been completely wet

4 phào, as far as, upto, through, even

phào, as far as, upto, through, even takes (a) no form and

218—Morphology

po form. Such forms of **phào** follow the nominal forms. They are shown below :—

- (a) **no** form—**phàono**, through
- (b) **po** form—**phàobo**, as far as. upto, even

Examples :—

- (a) **úmó'ng phàono**—through the forest
- (b) **dímápúr phàobo**—as far as Dimapur
lòumi`omo phàobo—even a peasant

5 yám, much. very, less, at least, at most

yám, much, very, less at least, at most takes (a) **no** form, (b) **to** form and (c) indefinite and perfect forms.

5 (1) **no** form of **yám**, very, much, less **no** forms of **yám**, very, much, less precede the modified verbs. They are shown below:—

- (a) **yámno**—very modifies stative verbs
- (b) **yámno** much modifies functive verbs
- (c) **yámdno**—less modifies functive verbs

Examples :—

- (a) **yámno pí'k:i`**—it is very small
- (b) **yámno càrè** he has eaten more
- (c) **syámdi` yámdno pho'ngi`**—Syam gets less

5 (2) **to** forms of **yám**, at most, at least

to forms of **yám**, at most,

at least precede the functive verbs. They are shown below :—

- (a) **yámlobodo**—at most
- (b) **yámdro`bodo**—at least

Examples :—

- (a) **yámlobodo débéanno lupa môngá pho'nggoni**—Deben will get at most five rupees
- (b) **yámdro`bodo gópáino lúpà cámo pí'goda'uri**—Gopal is going to give at least one hundred rupees

5 (3) Indefinite and perfect forms of yám, much

Indefinite and perfect form of yám, much follow the nominal forms. They are shown below :—

<i>Tenses</i>	<i>Indefinite forms</i>	<i>Perfect forms</i>
present tense	yámi`	yámlè
past tense	yámlo'mi`	yámlo'mlè
future tense	yámgoni	yámlo'mgoni

(a) Indefinite forms

cini osi` mi` oni`gidomo`kti yámi`—This sugar is much for two persons

cini odù mi` oni`gidomo`kti yámlo'mi`—That sugar was much for two persons

cini osi` mi` oni`gidomo`kti` yámgoni This sugar will be much for two persons

(b) perfect forms

tháo odù yámlè—that oil has been much

tháo odù yámlo'mlè—that oil had been much

tháo odù yámlo'mgoni—that oil will have been much

3 5. 1. 3 Primary Adverbs used as the emphasisers

Many primary adverbs, both monosyllabic and reduplicated, function as the emphasisers signifying emphasis on a few particular verbs without taking any markers. Such adverbs precede the modified verbs. Some of these adverbs are shown below .—

1 Monosyllabic primary adverbs used as emphasisers

ngèk ; gópáno lo'ibáko ngèk pho'mi`—Gopal sits on the floor

phùk ; mádhopno makhogí momàngdo phùk ho'ugo'tti—Madhop stands up before them

sèt ; cophù odù sèt kàirè—The pitcher has broken

swài ; bhùt odù swài mánglo'mi`—The ghost disappeared

2 Reduplicated primary adverbs used as emphasisers

phùt phùt ; débéno lo'mbi omodo'gi omodo phùt phùt pháowi`—Deben passes from one road to another

sro` sro`; gópalno lophù adù lómbi`dó sro` sro` cingi`

Gopal drags the plantain tree on the road

srù srù; thúmdà` i`singdó srù srù túmmi`-Salt dissolves in the water

thro`k thro`k; mádhopno məkho`igi mómàngdó thro`k

thro`k o`tho`klè-Madhop has vomitted before them

3. 5. 2 *Derived Adverbs*

Adverbs are derived from the stems of the nouns, pronouns and verbs by adding to such stems *no*, instrumental or *to*, locative. Adverbs are derived from such stems by adding to these stems *no/to* and other components.

3. 5. 2. 1 *Adverbs in no, instrumental*

Many Adverbs in *no*, instrumental precede the modified verbs. Some of such adverbs are added to the nouns.

3. 5. 2. 1. 1 *Adverbs in no preceding the verbs*

1 Adverb in *no* derived from the pronouns

A few adverbs in *no*, instrumental derived from *osi*, this and *kori*, what precede the modified verbs.

osùmnó, so; məkho`ino osùmnó hòi They say so

kodo`uno, koro`mno-how

2 Adverbs in *no* derived from the verbs

Some adverbs in *no*, instrumental derived from the verbs precede the modified verbs. Such adverbs may be classified into the following types :—

(a) Adverbs in *no*

(b) Reduplicated Adverbs in *no*

(c) Adverbs in *no* with nominal adjuncts

Examples :—

(a) Adverbs in *no*

hánno-already (hán, precede)

kónno-later (kón, follow)

lápno, thàpno, far (láp/thàp, distant)

pho'no, well (pho', good); məkho'ino syámbú pho'no ngàngno'i-they speak well of Syam

pho'ttono, thi'no, ill (pho', good, thi', ugly); məkho'ino syámbú pho'ttono/thi'no ngàngno'i-They speak ill of Syam

thúno, soon (thú, hasten)

yàngno, fast (yàng, speedy)

(b) Reduplicated Adverbs in no

ho'nno ho'nno, again

i'kho'ng kho'ng:ho'udono, all of a sudden

kábo'k kábo'k, ókhàkno, ók'hàk sákhàkno-to some extent

motho'ng motho'ng-step by step

(c) Adverbs in no with nominal adjuncts

motho'ng monào náino-in order

tóngánno, apart; yo'kho'k odù yo'tpàktogi tóngáno táre-

The handle of the spade falls apart from the spade

thàngo'i séngno, indeed

. 5. 2. 1. 2 *Adverbs in no added to the nouns*

Some adverbs in no, instrumental derived from the verbs are added to the nouns. Such adverbs may be classified into the following types :—

(a) Adverbs in no

(b) Adverbs in no with ko, comitative/no, instrumental

• *Examples :—*

(a) Adverbs in no

natto'no, except (ni', be); módhú natto'no-except Modhu

oino, as (oi, be); mopà oino-as a father

yàodono, without (yào, participate)

syámgi moténg yàodono-without Syam's help

(b) Adverbs in no with ko/no

ko lo'inono, with; gópálgo lo'inono-with Gopal

ko o'nno to'inono, country to; mopàgi páotàkko o'nno-to-inono-contrary to his father's advice

222—Morphology

ne mərə̀m ɔ̀idùno, due to ; nónɡno mərə̀m ɔ̀idùno—due to rain

3. 5. 2. 2 *Adverbs in to, locative*

Some adverbs in to, locative precede the modified verbs. Many of such adverbs are added to the nouns.

3. 5. 2. 2. 1 *Adverbs in to preceding the modified verbs*

1 Adverbs in to derived from the nouns

Some adverbs in to, locative derived from the nouns precede the modified verbs. Such adverbs may be classified into the following types :—

(a) Adverbs in to

(b) Adverbs in to with mɔ, secondary prefix and ngòi-temporal infix.

Examples :—

(a) Adverbs in to

mɔtɔ́m ɔ̀iɓɔ khíbi`kto, mɔtɔ́m pùmnoɔmɔ`kto—always

mɔtɔ́mto, mɔtho`nto—alone

khùdo`kto—at once

(b) Adverbs in to with mɔ and ngòi

mɔci`ngo`ido—at the outset

mɔmàngo`ido, thàino, thàinongo`ido—long ago

2 Adverbs in to derived from the pronouns

Some adverbs in to, locative derived from ɔ̀dù, that, ɔ̀si, this and kɔ̀ri, what precede the modified verbs. Such adverbs may be classified into the following types :—

(a) Adverbs in to

(b) Adverbs in to with ngòi/wáí-temporal infix

Examples :—

(a) Adverbs in to

ɔ̀dùdo—there

osi`do-here

- (b) Adverbs in to with ngo`i/wái
 odùngo`i-in those days
 odùwáido-over there
 osùng`oído-at this time
 osùwáido-over here
 kodáido, kodáiwáido, kodo`mdo-where
 kodo ungo`i, koro`mbo moto`mdo-when
 kodo`ungo`idosù-never ; cf, kho`k, never (primary adverb)
 korigumbodo, occassionally-sometimes ;
 cf-moro`k moro`kto-occassionally (a nominal form)

3 Adverbs in to derived from the verbs

A few adverbs in to, locative derived from the verbs precede the modified verbs. Such adverbs take tho`ng-temporal infix. khàgùtho`ngdo-in vain
 káinotho`ngdo, kóntho`ngdo-at last ; c.f.—momo`itho`ngdo-at last (a nominal form)

3. 5. 2. 2. 2 Adverbs in to added to the nouns

Some adverbs in to, locative derived from the nouns are added to the nouns. Such adverbs may be classified into the following types :—

- (a) Adverbs in to with ki, genitive
 (b) Adverbs in to with kí, genitive and mo, secondary prefix

Examples :—

- (a) Adverbs in to with kí, genitive
 kimàiko`ido, in favour of ; moyàmbogi màiko`ido-in favour of his elder brother
 kimàiyokto, against ; khúnzasi`ngi màiyokto-against the villagers
 ki wángmodo, beyond ; túrelgi wángmodo-beyond the river
 (b) Adverbs in to with ki genitive and mo, secondary prefix.

kí mǎhùtto, instead of ; hǎ'igimǎhùtto—instead of the fruit
 kímǎnìngdǎ, behind ; yúmgi`mǎnì`ngdǎ—behind the house
 kí mǎrì`mdǎ, about, concerning ; láigi mǎrǎ`mdǎ—about the war

kí mǎrì`dǎ, in respect of ; cádinggi mǎrì`dǎ—in respect of the expenditure,

kí mǎtúngdǎ, after, behind ; thǎ ǎmǎgi mǎtúngdǎ—after one month

kí mǎthǎ`ngdǎ, next to ; syámgi mǎthǎ`ngdǎ—next to Syam

kígenitive and mǎ, secondary prefix prefixed to some adverbs in tǎ are deleted when such adverbs enter into compounds with the preceding monosyllabic nouns.

kí mǎmàngdǎ, before, in front of ; láigi mǎmàngdǎ/láimàngdǎ—before the deity

kí mǎrǎ`kto, between ; among ; ú:sínggi mǎrǎ`kto/úrǎ`kto—among the trees

kí mǎyàidǎ, in the midst of, in the centre of ; khúlgi mǎ-yàidǎ/khúnýàidǎ—in the centre of the village

2 Adverbs in tǎ derived from the verbs

A few adverbs in tǎ, locative derived from the verbs are added to the nouns. Such adverbs take kí, genitive and -ǎ/mǎ, primary prefix.

kí ǎko`ibǎdǎ, around , sǎhórgi ǎko`ibǎdǎ—around the city
 kímǎnǎkto, near ; dímpúrgi mǎnǎkto—near Dimapur

3. 5. 3 Relational Words

Many relational words function as the adverbs. They are monosyllabic forms. They are added to the nouns, cardinal numerals and verbs in the indefinite and perfect aspects of the three tenses.

3. 5. 3. 1 Relational words suffixed to the nouns and cardinal numerals

Relational words suffixed to the nouns and cardinal numerals are shown below :—

1 Relational Words suffixed to the nouns

lo`m, towards + to, locative ; dí`mápú`rro`mdo-towards Dí-mapur.

múk, as much as ; syámdi` gópál múk ko`nli`-Syam is as strong as Gopal

sù, too, also ; mádhò`psù co`tkoni-Madhop will go too

to, only ; syámdi` càkto càgi`-Syam eats only the cooked rice

2 Relational words suffixed to the cardinal numerals

kho`k, only ; lúpà oni` kho`k-two rupees only

lo`k, number of times such as twice, thrice etc.

oni`ro`k, twice, ohumlo`k-thrice

lo`m, múk, about, approximately ;

lúpà torúk lo`m/múk-about six rupees

3. 5. 3. 2 Relational words added to the verbs

Many relational words are prefixed, infixed or suffixed to the verbs in the indefinite and perfect aspects of three tenses. Such verbs thus express their verbal meanings and also the meanings of the relational words.

3. 5. 3. 2. 1 Relational Words prefixed to the verbs

Relational words prefixed to the verbs are shown below:—

(a) co, -i`, pùm, sùp, to, completely, entirely

(b) -i`, pong, much, very, seldom, scarcely

The relational words shown above are the synonyms of some primary and derived adverbs. They will be discussed in the Section on the Synonymous Adverbs and Relational Words.

3. 5. 3. 2. 2 Relational words infixed to the verbs.

Relational words infixed to the verbs are shown below :—

(a) cà, lo`l, tá, a little

(b) ci`n, in ; ko`t, on ; to`k, out ; tho-below

(c) ho`u, far, near

(d) minno, together, with

226—Morphology

The relational words other than, ho`u and minno shown above are the synonyms of some primary and derived adverbs. They will be discussed in the Section on the Synonymous Adverbs and Relational words. ho`u, far, near and minno, together, with will be discussed here.

1 (1) ho`u, far, there

ho`u, far, there is infixed to the functive verbs in the aspects of the present tense other than the perfect durative aspect. In such case, these verbs in ho`u are used only in the third person.

caho`uri—they are eating there

pho`mho`uri—they are sitting there

1 (2) ho`u, near, here

ho`u, near, here is infixed to the functive verbs in the indefinite and durative aspects of the future tense. In such case, these verbs in ho`u are used only in the first and third persons.

pa`ho`ugoni—we/they will read here

ta`ho`ukhigoni—we/they will be listening here

2 (1) minno, together

minno, together is infixed to the four aspects of the present and future tenses. It also infixed to the verbs in the aspects of the past tense other than the perfect durative aspect.

lo`iminno`i—we/you/they live together

pho`mminnoro`mgoni—we/you/they will have sat together

2 (2) minno, with

minno, with is infixed to the verbs in the aspects of the tenses shown above (para 2 (1) —). In such case, these verbs with minno is defined and preceded by the nominal forms in ko, comitative.

ra`mno sya`mgo co`tminno`i—Ram goes with Syam

3. 5. 3. 3. 3 Relational Words suffixed to the verbs

Relational Words suffixed to the verbs are shown below :—

- (a) kàk, tìk, to`k, to`ng, completely, entirely
- (b) lo`p, li, to`k, a little
- (c) ni`ngci`t, ni`ng, màng-on the verge of

The relational words other than ni`ngci`t, ni`ng...màng shown above are the synonyms of some primary and derived adverbs. They will be discussed in the Section on the Synonymous Adverbs and Relational words. ni`ngci`t ɔ ni`ng...màng, on the verge of will be discussed here.

1 ni`ngci`t, ni`ng...màng-on the verge of

ni`ngci`t, ni`ng...màng, on the verge of is suffixed to a few functive verbs followed by the conjugated forms of to`u, auxiliary verb for the indefinite and perfect aspects of the three tenses. In such case, the main verbs in ni`ng...màng are reduplicated.

yo`uni`ngci`t to`urè/yo`uni`ng...yo`umàng to`urè-he is on the verge of reaching

3. 5. 4 Synonymous Adverbs and Relational Words

Synonymous adverbs and relational words express the following :—

- (a) a little
- (b) completely, entirely
- (c) in, out, on, below
- (d) most
- (e) seldom, scarcely, often
- (f) much, very
- (g) too, too much

1 a little

“a little” is expressed by the following primary/derived adverbs and relational words :—

- (a) primary adverbs—khorɔ, khorɔto, khozi`kto, khozi`k khoràkto
- ¹(b) derived adverbs—kúm...làkkúm, kúm...to`gúm,
pói...làkpói, pói...to`bói
- (c) relational words—cà, lo`i, tá
lo`p, li, to`k

khoro, khoroto, khozi`kto, and khozi`k khoràkto modify and precede the verbs. khoro occurs only with the affirmative verbs. khozi`k khoràkto occurs only with the negative verbs;

khoro/khoroto/khozi`kto càrè-he has eaten a little

khoroto/khozi`kto/khozi`k/khoràkto càdè-he does not eaten a little

cà, lo`i and tá are infixed to a few stative verbs in no, primary infix. In such case, cà, lo`i and tá precede no.

cà—to`nzàno`rè-he has been a little idle

lo`i—ngànglo`nrè-it is a little red

tá—co`mdánorè-it is a little simple

lo`p, li`, to`k, kúm...làkkúm, kúm . togúm, pói...làkpói, and pói...tobói are suffixed to the main verbs followed by the conjugated forms of to`u, auxiliary verb for the indefinite and perfect aspects of the three tenses. In such case, the main verbs with the adverbs other than lo`p and to`k are reduplicated.

khàro`p to`uwi`		
khàto`k to`uwi`		
khàri` khàri` to`uwi`		
khàgúm làkkúm to`uwi`		it is a little bitter
khàgúm khàdogúm to`uwi`		
khàbói làkpói to`uwi`		
khàbói kha`dobói to`uwi`		

2 completely, entirely

“completely, entirely” is expressed by the following primary/derived adverbs and relational words :—

(a) primary adverb no form and indefinite/perfect forms of láo, primary adverb

(b) derived adverbs—lo`ino, to`inmo`k, ngo`mno, ngo`muomo`k

(c) relational words—co, -i`, pùm, sùp, to, kàk, ti`k, to`k, to`ng

co, -i`, pùm, sùp and to are prefixed to the verbs. In such case, these verbs with the relational words other than co are reduplicated. sùp occurs only with the negative verbs. to occurs only with a few stative verbs.

cobètnorè		
i`pèt pètillè		it has been completely soft
pùmpèt pètillè		

sùkpèt pèt-tè-it has been completely soft

tôngàng tòngànglè-it has been completely red

kàk, tì'k, to'k and to'ng are infixed to a few verbs causing reduplication of these verbs. In such case, kàk occurs with the functive verbs. tì'k, to'k and to'ng occur with the stative verbs.

kàk—pho'igàk pho'irè-it has been placed completely breadth-wise

tì'k—lò'ngtri'k lò'nglè-it has been completely bright

to'k—pàkthro'k pàklè it has been completely wide

to'ng—sángtrong sánglè-it has been completely long

lò'ino, lò'inomò'k, ngo'mno, ngo'mnomò'k precede the functive verbs.

lò'ino càrè |

lò'inmòk càrè | he has eaten completely

ngo'mno càrè |

ngo'mnomò'k càrè |

no form and indefinite/perfect forms of láo, completely, entirely have already been shown.

3 in, out, on, below

"in, out, on and below" are expressed by the following derived adverbs and relational words :—

<i>Relational words</i>	<i>Derived adverbs</i>	<i>meanings</i>
cì'n	kimònùngdò	in, inside, within
kò't	kimothò'ktò	on, upon, upwards
to'k	kimòpándò	out, outside
thò	kimòkhàdò	below, under, downwards

3 (2) cì'n, kò't, to'k, thò

cì'n, kò't, to'k and thò occur with a few functive verbs. They are infixed to such verbs.

(a) cì'n, in, inside

cìngsì'nlòmi'-we/you/they pulled inside

cóngsi'nlo'mi'-we/you/they jumped inside

thángzì'nlo'mi'-we/you/they carried inside

(b) ko't, on, upwards

cíngkho't lo'mi'-we/you/they pulled upwards
 cóngkho't lo'mi'-we/you/they jumped upwards
 thángxgo't lo'mi'-we/you/they carried upwards

(c) to'k, out, outside

cíngtho'k lo'mi'-we/you/they pulled out side
 cóngtho'k lo'mi'-we/you/they jumped out side
 thángxdo'k lo'mi'-we/you/they carried outside

(d) tho, below, downwards

cíngthoro'mi'-we/you/they pulled downwards
 cóngthoro'mi'-we/you/they jumped downwards
 thángxthoro'mi'-we/you/they carried downwards

3 (2/2) ko't and tho/to'k and ci'n with the reduplicated verbs

ko't, on and tho, below or to'k, outside and ci'n, inside may occur with the main reduplicated verbs followed by the conjugated forms of to'u, auxiliary verb for the indefinite and perfect aspects of three tenses,

cóngtho'k cóngsi'n to'uro'mi'-we/you/they jumped outside and inside
 cóngkho't cóngtho to'uro'mi'-we/you/they jumped upwards and downwards.

ko't, upwards and tho, downwards may occur with a few compound verbs consisting of two different verb roots followed by the conjugated forms of to'u, auxiliary verb. In such case, ko't occur with the first verb root and and tho with the second verb root.

kákhə't kùntho to'uro'mi'-we climbed upwards and downwards
 lèpkhə't phə'mtho to'uro'mi'-we stood up and sat down

3 (3) Derived Adverbs expressing in, out, on and below

Derived adverbs expressing in, out, on and below have been shown. They are adverbs in to. locative with ki, genitive and mo, secondary prefix. They are illustrated below ;—

kimə̀nùngdə, in, inside, within ;
 yùmgí mənùngdə-inside the house

kímopánda, out, outside ; i'ngkhólgí' mópánda-outside the homestead land

kímótho'kte, on, upon, upwards ; tébo'lgí mótho'kto-on the table

kímó kháda, below, under, downwards ; ú:gi makháda-below the tree.

Nominal forms with the four derived adverbs in to, locative may modify and precede the functive verbs with their corresponding Relational words :—

lámbo'lgí monúngdo cóngsi'nlo'mi' he jumped inside the fort
lámbo'lgí mópánda cóngtho'kto'mi'-he jumped outside the fort

tébo'lgí mótho'kto cóngkha'tlo'mi'-he jumped on the table
ú:gi makháda cóngtho'cto'mi'-he jumped below the tree

4 most

"most" is expressed by khwàidogi and two different forms.

4 (1) Khwàidogi, most

Khwàidogi, most modifies and precedes the stative verbs.

khwàidogi pho'i-it is the best of all

khwàidogi pho zo'i-it is most beautiful of all

4 (2) khwàidogi modifying the stative verbs in -i, mo, pum,

khwàidogi, most may modify the stative verbs in -i, mo and pum, completely, entirely. In such case, mo is prefixed to the stative verbs in the present perfect, -i and pum are prefixed to the stative verbs causing reduplication of such verbs.

khwàidogi mopho'rè |

khwàidogi i'pho phorè | it has been the best of all

khwàidogi pumpho phorè |

4 (3) khwàidogi with the forms of hén

khwàidogi, most may modify the stative verbs defined by no form and indefinite/perfect forms of hén, primary adverbs. In such case, hén functions as emphasiser without expressing "more".

232 – Morphology

khw`aidagi hénno pho`i		it is the best
phobo khw`aidagi hénli`		of all

khw`aidagi, most may also modify the stative verbs defined by the following forms of hén, primary adverb:—

- (a) no form and indefinite/perfect forms of hén with -i`/pùm, completely, entirely
- (b) indefinite/perfect forms of hén with mo, completely, entirely

Examples :—

(a)	khw`aidagi i`hén héuno pho`i		
	khw`aidagi pùmhén hénno pho`i		it is the best of
	phobo khw`aidagi i`hén hénli		all
	phobo khw`aidagi pùmhén hénli`		

(b) phobo khw`aidagi mohénli`-it is the best of all

4 (4) khw`aidagi replaced by two forms

khw`aidagi, most may be replaced by pùmnomo`ktogi and khw`ai pùmnomoktogi.

khw`aidagi pho`i		
pùmnomo`ktogi pho`i		it is the best of all
khw`aipùmnomo`ktogi pho`i		

5 often, seldom, scarcely

5 (1) often

to`ino, ho`uzo hoúzo, and i`to`tto`ttono express “often”. They are derived adverbs and precede the modified verbs.

to`ino ko`uro`mi`	
ho`uzo ho`uzo ko`uro`mi`	he often called
i`to`t to`ttono ko`uro`mi`	
to`ino pho`mdè	
ho`uzo ho`uzo pho`mdè	he does not sit often
i`to`t to`ttono pho`mdè	

5 (2) seldom, scarcely

to`ino, -i` and po`ng expresss seldom, scarcely. They modify a few negative verbs of motion. to`ino is a derived adverbs

precedes the negative verbs. -i` and po`ng are relational words. They are prefixed to the negative verbs causing reduplication of such verbs.

to`ino láktè

i`rák láktè } he seldom comes

po`nglá k láktè

6 much, very

“much and very” are expressed by the following adverbs and relational words;—

(a) primary adverbs—yámno

(b) derived adverb—thóino

(c) relational words—-i`, po`ng

yámno, thúino, -i and po`ng express “much” occurring with the functive verbs. They express “very” occurring with the stative verbs.

yámno modifies the affirmative and negative verbs (both functive and stative) preceding such verbs. thúino, -i` and po`ng modify only the negative verbs (both functive and stative). thúino precedes the negative verbs. -i` and po`ng are prefixed to the negative verbs causing reduplication of such verbs.

(a) much

yámno càrè he eats much

yámno càdrè

thúino càdrè } he does not eat much

i`cà càdrè

po`ngcà càdrè

(b) very

yámno pi`k:i`-it is very small

yámno pi`ktè

thúino pi`ktè } it is not very small

i`pi`k pi`ktè

po`ngpi`k pi`ktè

6 (2) yámno, much, very occurring with other components

(a) yámno, very modifying the derived adverbs

234—Morphology

yámno, very may modify and precede a few derived adverbs in no, instrumental.

yámno làpno/thàpno-very far

yámno tóino-very often

yámno thúno-very soon

yámno yàngno-very fast

(b) yámno, emphasising the derived adverbs

yámno functions as the emphasiser signifying emphasis on a few derived adverbs in no, instrumental without expressing "much, very".

<i>general forms</i>	<i>emphatic forms</i>	<i>meanings</i>
hánno	yámno hánno	already
kónno	yámno kónno	later
mothò'ng monào	yámno mothò'ng-	in order
náino	monào náino	

6 (3) Emphatic forms expressing "much" and "very"

6 (3/1) hénno and yámno emphatically expressing 'much' and 'very'

hénno yámno are no forms of the two primary adverbs viz, hén and yám. They emphatically express 'much' modifying negative functive verbs when they take -i'/pò'ng or are preceded by thóino.

<i>general forms</i>	<i>emphatic forms</i>	<i>meanings</i>
i'cà càdè	i'hén hénno càdè	
pò'ngcà càdè	pc'ng:hén hénno càdè	
thóino càdè	thóino hénno càdè	he does not
yámno càdè	i'yám yámno càdè	eat much
	pò'ngyám yámno càdè	
	thóino yámno càdè	

hénno and yámno emphatically express 'very' modifying negative stative verbs when they take -i'/pò'ng or are preceded by thóino.

<i>general forms</i>	<i>emphatic forms</i>	<i>meanings</i>
i'cáo cáo cáodè	i'hén hénno cáodè	
pò'ngcáo cáodè	pc'ng:hén hénno cáodè	it is not very
thóino cáodè	thóino hénno cáodè	big

yámno cáodè	i'yám yámno cáde	it is not very
	pò'ngyám yámno cáodè	big
	thóino yámno cáodè	

6 (3/2) Forms of hén emphatically expressing 'very'.

Negative indefinite/perfect forms of hén, primary adverb emphatically express 'very' modifying the stative verbs in pò when such forms take -i/pò'ng or are preceded by thóino.

<i>general forms</i>	<i>emphatic forms</i>	<i>meanings</i>
i'cáo cáodè	cáobo i'hén héndè	
pò'ngcáo cáodè	cáobo pò'ng:hén héndè	it is not very
thóino cáodè	cáobo thóino héndè	big

6 (3/3) Forms of yám emphatically expressing "much"

Negative indefinite/perfect forms of yám, primary adverb emphatically express 'much' following ódù, that/osi, this when such forms take -i/pò'ng or are preceded thóino.

<i>general forms</i>	<i>emphatic forms</i>	<i>meaning</i>
cini ósi` yámde	cini ósi` i'yám yámde	This sugar
	cini ósi` pò'ngyám yámde	is not
	cini ósi` pò'ngyám yámde`	much
	cini ósi` thóino yámde`	

7 too, too much

'too' and 'too much' are expressed by the following derived adverb and relational words:—

- (a) derived adverb—o`ntho`kno
- (b) relational words—khi, mò'n

o`ntho`kno, khi and mò'n express 'too' occurring with the stative verbs. o`ntho`kno and mò'n express 'too much' occurring with the functive verbs.

o`ntho`kno precedes the modified verbs (both functive and stative). khi is infixed to (o stative verbs in the present perfect: mò'n is infixed to the verbs (both functive and stative).

236—Morphology

(a) too

khkàhre`
khàmo`nle` } it has been too bitter
o`ntho`kno khàkhre`

(b) too much

càmo`nle` } he has eaten too much
o`tho`kno càre`

7 (2) Indefinite/perfect forms of yám expressing "too much"

Indefinite and perfect forms of yám, primary adverbs express "too much" following odu, tha/osi, this when such forms take khi'/mo`u, 'too much' or are preceded by o`ntho`kno, "too much".

cini`osi` yámkhre`
cini`osi` yámo`nle` } this sugar has been too much
cini`osi` o`ntho`kno yámle`

7 (3) Emphatic forms expressing 'too' and 'too much'

7 (3/1) mo`nkhì, emphatically expressing 'too', 'too much'

mo`nkhì is the compound of mo`n and khi`, it emphatically expresses 'too' occurring with the stative verbs in the present perfect. mo`nkhì emphatically expresses 'too much' occurring with the functive verbs in the present perfect.

(a) too

<i>general forms</i>	<i>emphatic forms</i>	<i>meanings</i>
khàmo`nle`	khàmo`nkhìe`	it has been too bitter
thàmo`nle`	thàmo`nkhìe`	it has been too thick

(b) too much

<i>general forms</i>	<i>emphatic forms</i>	<i>meanings</i>
càmo`nle`	càmo`nkhìe`	he has eaten too much
pàmo`nle`	pàmo`nkhìe`	he has read too much

7 (3/2) Verbs with khi', mo`n and mo`nkhì emphatically expressing too, too much

Stative verbs with *khi'*, *mò'n* and *mò'nkhi'* emphatically express "too" when such verbs are defined and preceded by the three adverbs viz. *yámno*, "much", "very"; *ò'ntho'kno*, "too" and *ò'ntho'kno+yámno*.

<i>general forms</i>	<i>emphatic forms</i>	<i>meanings</i>
<i>khàkhrè</i>	<i>yámno khàkhrè</i> <i>ò'ntho'kno khàkhrè</i> <i>ò'ntho'kno yámno khàkhrè</i>	
<i>khàmo'nìè</i>	<i>yámno khàmo'nìè</i> <i>ò'ntho'kno khàmo'nìè</i> <i>ò'ntho'kno yámno khàmo'nìè</i> <i>yámno khàmo'nkhrè</i> <i>ò'ntho'kno khàmo'nkhrè</i> <i>ò'ntho'kno yámno khàmo'nkhrè</i>	it has been too bitter

Funcitive verbs with *mò'n* and *mò'nkhi'* emphatically express "too much" when such verbs are defined and preceded by the five adverbs viz. *hénno* "more", *yámno*, "much", "very"; *ò'ntho'kno*, "too much"; *ò'ntho'kno+hénno* and *ò'ntho'kno+yámno*.

<i>general forms</i>	<i>emphatic forms</i>	<i>meanings</i>
<i>càmo'nìè</i>	<i>hénno càmo'nìè</i> <i>yámno càmo'nìè</i> <i>ò'ntho'kno càmo'nìè</i> <i>ò'ntho'kno hénno càmo'nìè</i> <i>ò'ntho'kno yámno càmo'nìè</i> <i>hénno càmo'nkhrè</i> <i>yámno càmo'nkhrè</i> <i>ò'ntho'kno càmo'nkhrè</i> <i>ò'ntho'kno hénno càmo'nkhrè</i> <i>ò'ntho'kno yámno càmo'nkhrè</i>	he has eaten too much

7 (3/3) Forms of *hén* emphatically expressing "too", "too much"

Indefinite and perfect forms of *hén*, primary adverb emphatically express "too" modifying the stative verbs when such forms take *mò'n/mò'nkhi'* with or without *ò'ntho'kno* preceding forms.

288 - Morphology

<i>general forms</i>	<i>emphatic forms</i>	<i>meanings</i>
khàmo`niè	khàbo hénmo`niè	
	khàbo o`ntho`kno hénmo`niè	it has been too
	khàbo hénmo`nkhre	bitter
	khàbo o`ntho`kno hénmo`nkhre	

Indefinite and perfect forms of hén emphatically express "too much" modifying functive verbs when such forms take khi', mo`n and mo`nkhì' with or without o`ntho`kno preceding these forms.

<i>general forms</i>	<i>emphatic forms</i>	<i>meanings</i>
càmo`niè	càbo hénmo`niè	
	càbo o`ntho`kno hénmo`niè	
	càbo hénmo`nkhre	he has eaten
	càbo o`ntho`kno hénmo`nkhre	too much
	càbo hénkhre	
	càbo o`ntho`kno hénkhre	

7 (3/4) Indefinite/perfect forms of yám emphatically expressing 'too much'

Indefinite and perfect forms of yám, primary adverb emphatically express 'too much' following odu, that/osi', this when such forms take khi'/mo`n and was preceded by o`ntho`kno or when these forms take mo`nkhì' with or without o`ntho`kno preceding such forms.

<i>general forms</i>	<i>emphatic forms</i>
éni osi' yámkhre	éni osi' o`ntho`kno yámkhre
éni osi' yámo`niè	éni osi' o`ntho`kno yámo`niè
	éni osi' yómo`nkhre
	éni osi' o`ntho`kno yómo`nkhre

meaning: - This sugar has been too much

3.6 Conjunctions

3.6.0 A few conjunctions are the primary forms. Most of the conjunctions are derived from the stems of the nouns, pronouns and verbs.

3.6.1 Primary conjunctions

Primary conjunctions are the monosyllabic forms. They are added both to the coordinated nouns.

là...là, là...là omo, either.. or ; o'kia yénlà/o'kia yénlà omo either pig or hen

nè, tũ, as well as ; ho'inè lo'inè/ho'isù lo'isù-fruit as well as flower

o', and ; iháng:o tèn:o-sword and bow

3. 6. 2. *Derived Conjunctions*

Conjunctions are derived from the stems of the nouns, pronouns and verbs by adding to such stems case markers or case markers and other components. Case markers form the final components of the derived conjunctions. Such case markers are ko, comitative, no instrumental, to, locative, di', emphatic case marker and pũ, emphatic case marker. sũ, too also forms the final component of some conjunctions changing into sùng.

1 Conjunctions derived from the pronouns

odũ/madũ, that and omo, any one form the basic stems of some conjunctions.

odũmo'ktodo, odũmo'kpũ, odũpháobo-even then ; cithi thà-rè, odũmà'k'odo/odũmà'kpũ/odũpháobo páokhúm pho'ngdrè-letter has been sent, even then no reply has been received.

odũbũ, but ; débéndi' pò'ngi' odũbũ mobúkcén séngi'-Deben is foolish but honest

madũdi', that (relative pronoun) ; gópálnò hàì madũdi' kwák'ti' mú:i'-Gopal says that the crow is black.

omodi', omosùng, omohi'k sùng, ' and' ;

omosùng is the general form omohi'k sùng is literary form.
rám omodi'/omosùng/omohi'k sùng syám-Ram and Syam

2 Conjunctions derived from the noun.

mər'om, reason forms the basic stem of some conjunctions.

mər'om odũno, mər'om əsi'no, therefore ; mádhə'p thəbək sùdè, mər'om odũno/mər'om əsi'no khùtsũm'ə'n pho'nglò'i-Madhop does not do the work, therefore he will not get his wage

moro`mdi`, because ; débèn láklo`i, moro`mdi` mosà ná:i`-
Deben will not come because he is ill

3 Conjunctions derived from the verbs

hài, say, nì, be and to`u, do form the basic stems of some conjunctions.

hàino, hàibo, that (relative pronoun) ; módhú lákkoni` hàino/hàibo mádho`pno tà:i`-Madhop hears that Modhu will come.

to`u:i`gúmbosùng, but ; módhúdi` singi` to`u:i`gúmbosùng to`ni`-Modhu is wise but idle.

natto`go, or ; bírén natto`go bínóy-Biren or Binoy

natto`bodi, if not, otherwise ; pàbùnggi páotàk insi`, natto`bodi` sáogoni`-let us follow father's advice, otherwise he will be angry

là natto`go.....là omo, either or ; rámlà natto`go syámlà omo-Either Ram or Syam

to natto`no.. sù, not only...but also ; bírénto natto`no bí-nóysù cò`tkoni` Not only Biren but also Binoy will go

Syntax

NOMINAL PHRASE

4. 1. 1. 1 *Noun or Noun equivalent*

Nominal phrase may consist of a single noun or a noun equivalent.

- (a) Noun—mi`-person
ú-three
- (b) Pronoun—o`i, I
- (c) Numeral—mongà-five
- (d) Verbal Nouns—opo`nbo-obstacle

Examples :—

- (a) mi` lák:í`-the person comes
- (b) o`i cò`tkoni`-I shall go
- (c) mongàmo`k púro`k:ù-bring all the five
- (d) opo`nbasing asi` la`utho`ksi`-let us remove these obstacles

4. 1. 1. 2 *Noun classes*

Nominal phrase may consist of the following types of nouns:-

- (a) Subsyllabic nouns
- (b) Monosyllabic nouns
- (c) Suffixed nouns
- (d) Compound nouns

Examples :—

- (a) ú yámkhrè-the tree had been cut
- (b) mi` lák:í`-the person comes
- (c) oho`n oddù sigado`urè-that old person is going to die
- (d) ho`ino`u càsi`-let us eat the mango

242 - Syntax

4. 1. 1. 2. 1 *Subsyllabic Nouns*

Subsyllabic nouns may be a monophthong,

i^h-blood

i-thatch

ú-tree

Subsyllabic nouns may be a diphthong.

oĩ-left hand side

úi-a kind of bamboo plant

4. 1. 1. 2. 2 *Monosyllabic Nouns*

In CV type of the monosyllabic nouns, V may be the monophthongs other than -o.

cà-lac

củ-sugarcane

cí-heap

pó-pawn

cè-paper

só-key

In CV type of the monosyllabic nouns, V may be diphthongs.

hùi-dog

lò^hu-paddy land

káo-bull

lái-god

lò^hi-flower

lói-conquered people

In VC type of the monosyllabic nouns, V is a monophthong.

lín-fishing net

o^hk-pig

ún-snow

út-ash

In CVC type of the monosyllabic nouns, V is also a monophthong.

o—hó^hn-maggot

e—sén-money

lò^hn-wealth

tén-arrow

a—lán-battle

o—ko^hk-head

pàn-arum

lò^hk-lake

i—lín-snake

u—khút-hand

mí^ht-eye

mók-ink

4. 1. 1. 2. 3 *Suffixed Nouns*

Suffixed nouns may be classified into two types viz., (a) primary and (b) secondary.

1 Primary Suffixed Nouns

Primary suffixed nouns consist of a verbal stem and one of the primary prefixes viz., —o, co and to.

oho'n-old person	conàn-oat
ongàng-baby	tàrèng-spinning wheel
conò'm-garlic	thorói-snail

2 Secondary Suffixed Nouns

Secondary suffixed nouns consist of a nominal stem and one of the secondary prefixes viz., -o and mō.

oyùk-morning	mōnà-leaf
mohà-larva	mokú-owl
mohi`k-germ	moto`k-crest

4. 1. 1. 2. 4 *Compound Nouns*

Compound nouns may be divided into the two types viz., (a) Simple compound nouns and (b) Complex compound nouns.

4. 1. 1. 2. 4. 1 *Simple Compound Nouns*

Simple compound nouns may be grouped into the two types viz., (a) Simple Primary Compound nouns and (b) Simple Secondary Compound Nouns.

1 Simple Primary Compound Nouns

Simple primary compound nouns consist of two verbal stems.

cènzóng-long jump	pàkno`m-a kind of dish
cóingàng-ravings	sàplàk-multiplication table
lèplà-i-screw auger	sàpno`m-violent imposition

2 Simple Secondary Compound Nouns

Simple Secondary Compound Nouns may consist of the following components: —

- (a) N+N
- (b) o+V+N
- (c) N+V
- (d) N+V+N
- (e) N+N+N

Examples —

- (a) N+N
 càkso`ng-kitchen lámbo`n fort
 lò`ukhóng-irrigation-canal phírán-flag
- (b) o+V+N
 ócápo`t food stuff ówúnpo`t-dowry
 ócàiháo-musterd oil ówámó`n-wage
- (c) N+V
 hò`ikhà-appricot ko`kyèt-turban
 hò`ino`u-mango sàmú-elephant
- (d) N+V+N
 làiyéngsò`ng-hospital sò`mkò`kthàng-razor
 mì`hùtthò`ng-window sàyo`ksò`ng-zoo
- (e) N+N+N
 láiro mién-heaven úcithi`-long peper
 mì`rò`mién-universe úsingsá-cinnamom

2 (2) **Honorific Nouns**

Honorific nouns are simple secondary compound nouns. They express honorific implications. Some honorific nouns are used with reference to the second and third persons.

<i>honorific forms</i>	<i>general forms</i>	<i>meanings</i>
ko`kthò`n	ko`kyèt	turban
khàngcèt	phò`izóm	shoti
khúdá	phídá	seat
khúđóng	hi`đákpù	hukáñ pipe
no`mkhàng	innaphí	shawl
phanno khùzái	khùzái	jug
sò`nggái	yùm	house
wáohò`usò`ng	càkso`ng	kitchen

khùdádó lèngsì'nbi'yù-please take your seat
 khùdóng phànbi'yù-please smoke
 wánhò'uso'ngdo oígyáno lùk hò'uri-the Brahmin is preparing
 the meal in the kitchen of the deity

Some honorific nouns used with reference to the king and members of his family are formed by prefixing *sonà*-gold to a few nouns.

<i>sonà búddi</i> -consideration	<i>sonà mi'tyéng</i> -supervision
<i>sonà hò'káng</i> -body	<i>sonà tho'ugo'n</i> -attendance
<i>sonà kónúng</i> -royal palace	<i>sonà yátho'ng</i> -orders

Some honorific nouns are used with reference to the three persons.

<i>honorific forms</i>	<i>general forms</i>	<i>meanings</i>
omángbo	thi'	dung
omángso'ng	thi'gómso'ng	latrine
owàphò'm	kò'isúmsò'ng	jail
hò'kkí i'síng	yúng	urine
mopùro'ibo	mowà	husband
tálo'i, EM	motù	wife
yùmlò'imo	hò'udóng	cat

Some honorific nouns distinguish male and female by using *i'búngó*, male and *i'bèmo*, female after such nouns.

<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>
bámón i'búngó-a Brahmin gentleman	bámón i'èmo-a Brahman lady
mocà i'búngó-son	mocà i'bèmo-daughter
mosù i'búngó-grand son	mosù i'bèmo-grand daughter
sonà i'búngó a Rajkumar	sonà i'bèmo a Rajkumari

4. 1. 1. 2. 4. 2 *Complex Compound Nouns*

Complex compound nouns may be divided into the three groups viz., (a) suffix compound nouns, (b) Reduplicated compound nouns and (c) heterogeneous compound nouns.

1 Suffixed Compound Nouns

Suffixed compound nouns consist of two nominal/primitive stems with *- /mo*, prefix.

(a) N+N

məci'n mənào-children of the same parents	mərù mərəng-spices
məhə'i mərəng-corn	məro'i mənào-dependents

(b) V+V

əco'u əsáng-high officials	əthúm'pháo-sweet meat
əci'k əsá-weather	məhə'i məsing-education
əhə'i əsi'ng-expert	məkhə'n məthén-variety
ətón ətáng-last son	məco'ng məpək-discipline

2 Reduplicated Compound Nouns

Reduplicated compound nouns may be classified into the two types viz., (a) preduplicated and (b) post-duplicated.

2 (1) Preduplicated Compound Nouns

First and third syllables of the preduplicated compound nouns are represented by a single nominal. The second and fourth syllables of such nouns are two different nominal/primary stems:

i'wái i'nín, impact
káirén káizáo-a kind of coffin
lə'níá lə'ngzi'n-clue
mí'ro'n mí'rí'-consciousness
pó'ro'm pó'mí't-plan
səri't sərək-art of wrestling

2 (2) Post-duplicated Compound Nouns

First and third syllables of the post-duplicated compound nouns are two different nominal stems. The second and fourth syllables of such nouns are represented by a single nominal/primary stem.

(a) Second and fourth syllables represented by a single nominal stem

càrón sùrón-posterities
pànnào sǐngnào-offsprings
pàri' pùri'-pedigree
sàməro'k ngàməro'k-hybrids

- (b) Second and fourth syllables represented by a single primary stem.

càyo`k nàoyo`k-upbringing
 cì`nlán khàrán-slip of tongue
 ko`k:hò`n láihò`n-eldest son
 mì`cò`ng mì`khài-partiality
 sènzà thúmzà-bribery
 tho`umú nàomú-contemporary
 tho`ksi` khási`-discipline
 yónglò`i ménlò`i-partiality

3 Heterogeneous Compound Nouns

All the syllables of the heterogenous compound nouns are different stems.

ohò`n lomò`n-elders
 ko`iro`i lo`i`kái-neighbours
 láí:gú`rú-superiors
 mì`cò`ng sò`nggò`n-partiality
 prò`mán pánthò`i-sarcasm
 phò`tto` háodì`-rubbishes

4 Complex Compound Nouns with the auxiliary verbs

Some complex compound nouns occur with the conjugated forms of the three auxiliary verbs viz., náí, sá and to`u for the indefinite and perfect aspects of the three tenses.

- (a) náí

oróí okhò`m náidè-there is no end of it
 othóí ohén náidè-there is no surplus
 mì`cò`ng mì`khài/mì`cò`ng sè`nggò`n/yónglò`i ménlò`i náí-he is partial
 moco`ng mopàk/thò`ksi` khási` náidè-there is no discipline

- (b) sá

ohò`i opá/ohò`i osíng/owók opá/hò`ncò`k ngàcò`k/khàbò`i sàré-there has been undue interference
 úzár mélé sàré-it has been complete chaos
 wàrí` wà`ái sàré they have entered into conversation

(c) to'u

owók ɔ́thóng to'urè-he bandies words with another person
 cáttú kááro'n/pho'íréng túréng to'urè-he has mismanaged
 kíthí kírúm to'urè-he has been timid
 pró'mán pántho'í to'uwí-he speaks in sarcasm

5 Onomatopoetic Compound Nouns

Onomatopoetic compound nouns are the extensions of the simple compound nouns with the addition of the echo words. They thus express the meanings of these simple compound nouns with the emphasis imparted by the echo words. Onomatopoetic compound nouns take three forms viz, (a) preduplicated, (b) post duplicated forms and (c) heterogeneous forms.

(a) preduplicated forms

láirí'k > láirí'k láisù-book
 pho'dí' > pho'dí' pho'á rags
 phági > phági phàráng-joke

(b) post duplicated forms

corú > corú wáirú straw
 sorú > sorú ngàrú-bone
 sínglí' > sínglí' náorí'-nerve

(c) heterogeneous forms

khóngbán > khóngbán lùkláng-ditch
 sùmàng > sùmàng thélóng-courtyard
 tho'bo'k > tho'bo k i'nhàng-work

4. 1. 1. 2. 5 Verbal Nouns

Verbal Nouns are primary suffixed nouns. They are derived from the roots of the functive and stative verbs by adding to such roots po, marker of infinitive.

(a) Functive Verbal Forms

íbono mí'bú mápùng pháho'ní'-writing makes a man perfect
 pábono mí'bú sínghe'ní'-reading makes a man wise
 tumbono ho'káng pháho'ní'-sleeping promotes health

(b) Stative Verbal Forms

pə'ngbodi' kore'mno'í'-foolishness is mocked at

phəzəbodi` si`ngtháno`i-beauty is praised
sə́obono mɔ́hàkki yèknoboni`-anger is his enemy

1 (2) Verbal Nouns in pə with -o

Some Verbal Nouns in pə take -o, primary prefix.

(a) Functive Verbal Forms

opə`nbo siŋg osi` lo`utho`kkodo`uboni`-these obstacles must
be removed
orángbosiŋg osi` cúmtho`ksi`-let us correct these mistakes
omàngbodoḡi otóngbodo- from loss to gain

(b) Stative Verbal Forms

ocúmbə ngàngsi`-let us speak the truth
owàbosiŋg osi` màiyo`knobo tá:i`-you have to face these
sorrows
owàtposiŋg osi` ménkho`tsɔ̀nù-let them make up these diffi-
ciencies

A few verbal nouns in pə may occur with or without -o,
primary prefix.

(a) Functive Verbal Forms

ohə`ubodo/hə`ubodo-in the beginning
oro`ibodo/lo`ibodo-at the end
omàngbodoḡi/màngbodoḡi-from the loss

(b) Stative Verbal Forms

okhàbodoḡi-from bitterness
omə`mbodoḡi-out of darkness
othúmbodoḡi-out of sweatness

1 (3) Verbal Nouns in pə with nominal adjuncts

Verbal nouns in pə may occur with the nominal
adjuncts

(a) Functive Verbal Forms

lithás pábo yámno núngái-reading of history is very interes-
ting
so`iréng lɔ́ mɔ́to`m yámno co`ngi`-writing poems takes a
long time
sɛ́dro thibodi` yámno lài-to find fault is very easy

(b) Stative Verbal Forms

nà pò'ngbodi` láiyén'bo ngo'mgani`-deafness can be cured
 pùk'cén séngbodi` lo'isi` lo'itho nno'i-honesty is praised
 tho'unà phobodi` i`kàì khúmno'i-bravery is respected

2 Verbal Nouns used as subjective complements

2 (1/i) Verbal Nouns in pò/pi` as subjective complements

Verbal Nouns in pò, marker of infinitive and pi`, female marker function as the subjective complements. In such case, these verbal nouns take the markers of the indefinite aspect of the present and past tenses and occur with (a) odu, that and (b) any one of the three auxiliary verbs viz , ni` óirè and lá. The subjects of such auxiliary verbs are defined by osi`, this/these. The verbal nouns in pi` are used as the complements to the subjects in the feminine gender.

(a) Verbal Nouns in pò as subjective complements

cíthi osi` ho'uzi`k pho'ngbo odu ni`/óirè-this letter is the one that is received now
 nùpà osi` ngoràng láklo'mbo odu ni`/óirè-this man is the one who came yesterday
 yo'tpàk osi` ngoràng pi`ro'mbo odu ni`/óirè this spade is the one that was given yesterday
 lo'ipàn osi` níngtho'mthádo ko'ngbo odu rá-is this flower plant the one that is dry in the winter
 nùpà osi` ngàoro'mbo odu rá-is this man the one who was mad

(b) Verbal Nouns in pi` as subjective compliments

nùpi` osi` ho'uzi`k i so'i so`kpi` odu ni`/óirè-this woman is the one who sings the song now
 nùpi`mòcá osi` ngoràng láklo'mbi` odu ni`/óirè-this girl is the one who came yesterday
 lùkhràbi` osi` làirobi` odu rá-is this widow is the one who is poor
 honùbi` osi` ngoràng sáoro'mbi` odu rá-is-this old woman is the one who was angry yesterday.

2 (2) Verbal Nouns in pɔ/pi` with -ɔ as subjective complements.

Verbal nouns in pɔ/pi` used as subjective complements may take -ɔ, primary prefix. In such case, the verbal nouns in pi` are derived only from the roots of the stative verbs.

(a) Verbal Nouns in pɔ with -ɔ

phí osi` ɔpho` pɔ ɔdù nɪ`/óirè-this cloth is the one that is stitched

yérùm osi` ɔphùtpɔ ɔ ù nɪ`/óirè-this egg is the one that is boiled

lò`i osi` ɔngàngbɔ ɔdù rá-is this flower the one that is red

ngà osi` ɔpùmbɔ ɔdù rá-is this fish the one that is rotten

(b) Verbal Nouns in pi` with -ɔ

lúkhrábi` osi` ɔri`kpi` ɔdù nɪ`/óirè this widow is the one that is miserly

nùpi` osi` ɔngàobi` ɔdù rá-is this woman the one who is mad

ɔdù, 'that' following the Verbal Nouns in pɔ/pi` with -ɔ may be dropped. osi`, this defining the subjects may remain or be replaced by ɔdù, that.

(a) Verbal Nouns in pɔ with -ɔ

ɔphù osi`/ɔdù ɔkàibɔ nɪ`/óirè-this/that pitcher is the one that is broken

cè osi`/ɔdù ɔngàngbɔ rá-is this/that paper the one that is red

(b) Verbal Nouns in pi` with -ɔ

lò`isábi` osi`/ɔdù ɔngàobi` nɪ`/óirè this/that girl is the one who is mad

nùpi` osi`/ɔdù ɔpɔ`ngbi` rá-is this woman the one who is foolish

2 (3) Replacement of ɔdù by zát

ɔdù, "that" following the verbal nouns in pɔ may be replaced by zát, kind.

nùpà osi` ngoràng láklo`mbɔ ɔdù/zát nɪ`/óirè-this man is the one who came yesterday

núpá csi' ngàoro`mba cdu/zàt lá is this man the one who was mad

3 Verbal Nouns used as objective complements

Verbal Nouns in *pə* may function as the objective complements occurring with the nominal adjuncts.

bírénnə láirí'k pábo mádhə`pno úzi`-Madhop sees Biren reading a book

bínóyno ó'nk ho'tpə syámno yénglə'mi`-Syam watched Binoy working out the sum

gópálnə mùrùm mùrùm sònbo debénno táro'mi`-Deben heard Gopal murmuring something

4. 1. 1. 3 Coordinated Nouns

4. 1. 1. 3. 1 Coordination of Nouns without case markers

A nominal phrase may consist of two or more nouns in coordination.

Most of the conjunctions are used before the last noun.

cə ɔməsùŋ kólóm-paper and pen

thàng nǝttro'go tá sword or spear

Some conjunctions are repeated after every coordinated nouns.

ho'inè lo'inè-fruit as well as flower

o'k:o yén:o-pig and hen

4. 1. 1. 3. 2 Coordination of Nouns with the case markers

When nouns with the case markers are joined by the conjunctions, the case markers are generally used after the last noun.

debén nǝttro'go dāmúgídəmo'k-for Deben or Damu

həwái, tháo ɔməsùŋ thúmgi mómə'n-the prices of pulse, oil and salt

módhú nǝttro'go syámdogi-from Modhu or Syam

Case markers may be used after all the coordinated nouns when emphasis is intended.

gópáldogi nǝttro'go syámdogi from Gopal or Syam

When the nouns in coordination are defined and followed by the demonstrative adjectives, the case marker are used after the demonstrative adjectives

maccà, mawù amasùng mawùpsingdogi-son, grandson, friend—
from these

to, locative and togi, ablative are used after all the singular personal pronouns and demonstrative pronouns in coordination.

mango`ndogi nattro`go to`ingo`ndogi-from him or me
mawù`do nattro`go mawù`do-to this or that

4 1. 1 4 Nouns with Adjuncts

1 Verbal Qualifiers as Adjuncts

One or more verbal qualifiers can be used with a noun. In such case, these qualifiers precede the nouns.

amù`nab haw`ino`u-ripe mango
amù`ub amùnab haw`ino`u-big ripe mango

Verbal Qualifiers can be coordinated by using amasùng, “and”.

amù`ub amasùng amùnab haw`ino`u-big and ripe mango

Some verbal qualifiers in pi`, female marker follow the qualified nouns.

maccè otw`nbi`-his idle (elder) sister
so`n ongàngbi` red cow
yén amúbì`-black hen

Verbal Qualifiers may have adverbs preceding them.

khaw mo`tpw phi-less dirty cloth
yámaw sángba tho`uri`-very long rope

2 Demonstrative Adjectives as the Adjuncts

Demonstrative adjectives are used as the attributives of the nouns. They follow the qualified nouns.

haw`i odù-that fruit
lo`i osi-this flower

When there are the demonstrative adjectives and verbal qualifiers, the qualified nouns are preceded by the qualifiers and followed by the adjectives.

omúnbo ho'i odú
 ripe fruit that
 "that ripe fruit?"
 ongàngbo lá'i osi
 red flower this
 "this red flower"

3 Numerals as the Adjuncts

3 (1) Cardinals Numerals as Adjuncts

Cardinal numerals follow the qualified nouns,

mi` mori`
 person four
 "four persons"
 o`k mongà
 pig five
 "five pigs"

When there are cardinal numeral and verbal qualifier, the qualified noun is preceded by the qualifier and followed by the numeral:

oka`nbo mi` mori`
 strong person four
 "four strong persons"
 oco`ubo o`k mongà
 big pig five
 "five big pigs"

When there are cardinal numeral, verbal qualifier and demonstrative adjective, the qualified noun is preceded by the verbal qualifier and followed by the numeral and the adjective.

oka`nbo mi` mori` odú
 strong person four those
 "those four strong persons"
 oco`ubo o`k mongà osi`
 big pig five these
 "these five big pigs"

3 (2) Ordinal Numerals as the Adjuncts

Ordinal numerals precede the qualified nouns.

mori'súbo ká
fourth room
"the fourth room"
mangásúbo láiri'k
fifth book
"the fifth book"

When there are ordinal numeral and verbal qualifier, the numeral may precede or follow the qualifiers.

mori'súbo oco'ubo ká
fourth big room
oco'ubo mori'súbo ká
big fourth room
"the fourth big room"

When there are ordinal numeral, verbal qualifier and demonstrative adjective, the qualified noun is preceded by the numeral and qualifier and followed by the adjective.

mori'súbo oco'ubo ká odu
fourth big room that
"that fourth big room"
mangásúbo oho'nbo láiri'k ool
fifth new book this
"this fifth new book"

4 Possessive nouns or pronouns as Adjuncts.

Possessive nouns or pronouns (noun or pronoun with *ki*, genitive) can be used as adjuncts to the nouns.

núpamocági láiri'k-the boy's book
núpi' mocági gho'ri-the girl's watch

When the possessed nouns have verbal qualifiers, such qualifiers follow *ki*, genitive and precede the qualified nouns.

núpamocági omo'nbo láiri'k-the old book of the boy
núpi'mocági oho'nbo gho'ri-the new watch of the girl

When there are more than one possessive noun as adjuncts to the nominal (possessed noun) and such nouns are coordinated with *omosung*, "and", then *ki*, genitive is used with the last noun.

hùì omosung ho'udónggi moyá-the teeth of the dog and the cat

ùì omosung wagi monàsing-leaves of trees and bamboos

4. 1. 2 VERBAL PHRASE

(Verbs in the aspects of the tenses and tense forms have been covered in the Morphology. They are not dealt with in the present Chapter. But when a reference is made to a verb, it includes tense, aspect and form. Verbs with the markers of tense, aspect and form are considered as single entity.)

A verbal phrase may consist of the following types of verbs.—

- (a) sub-syllabic verbs
- (b) monosyllabic verbs
- (c) infixed verbs
- (d) compound verbs
- (e) verbal compounds

Examples :—

- (a) *birénno írí*-Biren is writing
- (b) *gópáino kho`nli`*-Gopal thinks
- (c) *mokho`ino kho`nnorí*-they are considering
- (d) *madho`pno ni`ngzing mǎngzingno`i*-Madhop hesitates
- (e) *módhú cǎ`rpo yási`*-Modhu may go

4. 1. 2. 1. 1 Sub-syllabic Verbs

Sub-syllabic Verbs express all the aspects of the tenses and tense forms

Sub-syllabic Verbs may be vowels (monophthongs).

irè-we/you/they have written

orè-we/you/they have vomitted

úrè-we/you/they have seen

Subsyllabic verbs may be diphthongs.

óiro'mĩ, was ; bírén ózá óiro'mĩ-Biren was a teacher
 úiro'mĩ-was half asleep ; gópáldĩ klo'sto úiro'mĩ-Gopal
 was half asleep in the class.

4. 1. 2. 1. 2 *Monosyllabic Verbs*

Monosyllabic verbs form the overwhelming majority of the Manipuri verbs. They express all the tenses and tense forms.

In CV Type of the monosyllabic verbs, V may be a vowel (monophthong).

párè-we/you/they have read
 pi'rè-we/you/they have given
 pére-we/you/they have sobbed
 po'rè-we/you/they have suffered defeat in the game
 pùrè we/you/they have borrowed

In CV type of the monosyllabic verbs, V may be a diphthong.

ló'ro'mĩ-we/you/they bought
 ló'uro'mĩ-we/you/they took
 làiro'mĩ-it was easy
 láoro'mĩ-we/you/they shouted
 lóiro'mĩ, it ended

In CVC type of the monosyllabic verbs, V is a vowel (monophthong).

lo'nglè-we/you/they have thrown
 lànglè-we/you/they have made noise
 línglè-we/you/they have established
 lènglè-we/you/they have moved
 lo'tlè-we/you/they have concealed
 lùplè it has sunk

Monosyllabic verbs have been shown in illustrating the features of the tenses and tense forms.

258—Syntax

4. 1. 2. 1. 3 *Infixes Verbs*

1 ho't, kài, nò, and thi`

Infixes verbs consist of a monosyllabic verb and one of the primary infixes viz , ho't, kài, nò and thi`.

(a) ho't

súmho'tlò'mi`-it captivated

túho'tlò'mi`-we/you/they suppressed

(b) kài

ni`ngkhàirò'mi`-it crumbled

thúgàirò'mi`-we/you/they broke

yo'ikhàirò'mi`-we/you/they obstructed

(c) nò

co'tnòrò'mi`-it was in vogue

cánnòrò'mi`-we/you/they were intimate

cíngnòrò'mi`-we/you/they doubted

ho'tnòrò'mi`-we/you/they tried

2 ci'n, ko't, to'k and tho used as primary infixes

The four relational words viz., ci'n, in, to'k, out, ko't, on and tho, below function as the word forming infixes forming the obligatory components of some infixed verbs.

(c) ci'n

co'ngsi'nlo'mi`-we/you, they advanced

cèksi'nlo'mi`-we/you/they were careful

insi'nlo'mi`-we/you/they instigated

si'zi'nnòrò'mi`-we/you/they used

(b) ko't

cùkho'tlò'mi`-we/you/they lighted (the lamp)

ménkho'tlò'mi`-we/you/they made up

pákho'tlò'mi`-we/you/they were nervous

thò'ugò'tlò'mi`-we/you/they encouraged

(c) to'k

cáotho'klo'mi`-we/you/they were proud

láotho'klo'mi`-we/you/they announced

sɔ̀ndo'klo'mi'-we/you/they propagated

yo'itho'klo'mi'-we/you/they postponed

(d) tho

co'kthoro'mi'-we/you/they were tired

no'mthoro'mi'-we/you/they suppressed

so'tthoro'mi'-we/you/they lagged behind

wánthoro'mi'-we/you/they fainted

4. 1. 2. 1. 4 *Compound Verbs*

Compound Verbs may be divided into two sub-classes viz., (a) simple compound verbs and (b) complex compound verbs.

4. 1. 2. 1. 4. 1 *Simple Compound Verbs*

Simple Compound Verbs may be grouped into the two types viz., (a) simple primary compound verbs and (b) simple secondary compound verbs.

1 Simple Primary Compound Verbs

Simple primary compound verbs consist of two monosyllabic verbs. The first of such verbs remain in the root form and the second one is conjugated.

ho'i sɔ̀ng'o'mi'-he was skillful

ko'nlo'kio'mi'-he was jealous

màngtá'klo'mi'-it was ruined

ngàksénlo'mi'-he guarded

si'nlánglo'mi'-he managed

sèmsá'ro'mi'-he prepared

Simple Secondary Compound Verbs

Simple secondary compound verbs consist of a nominal stem and monosyllabic verb.

ho'áo'ro'mi'-he was jovial

i'ró'ro'mi'-he swam

khó'dá'ro'mi'-he liked

khó'rànglo'mi'-he was anxious

mí'ho'uro'mi'-he was jealous

mí'rónló'mi'-she was pregnant
 wàró'kló'mi'-he exercised control and supervision
 wàso'kló'mli'-he swore

2 (2) Honorific Verbs

Honorific verbs are simple secondary compound verbs. They express honorific implications.

<i>honorific forms</i>	<i>general forms</i>	<i>meanings</i>
ongàng ú:nóbó	mocà pò'kpó	deliver a child
owàphó'm cò'ngbó	phádo'k tábo	suffer a prison term
càkhúm tào'kpó	thá mángbó	be in the mensuration period
ci'nphén phóbó	ci'n thibó	be sharpened tongued
ci'n séngbó	yá thínbó	brush the teeth
khùtsàngbó	hùrànbó	steal
khwágo'k hánbó	sén pí'zóbó	give bribe
lùk hò'úbó	càk thóngbó	prepare meal
lùk hábó	càk càbó	take meal
mòbùk cáobó	thi'bo'ng láobó	be a glutton
mònùng cò'ngbó	thi' phàibó	defecate
mopán tho'kpó	yúng hànbo	urinate
mí'tyéng tábo	yéngbó	see
ná tàthi'bó	nà pò'ngbó	deaf
nónggàbó	sibó	die
phi tho'nóbó	phi ínbo	wear cloth
wà hò'nggò'tpó	páo tò'mbó	report a matter
yùm pánbó	yùm ná.bó	lead a married life

4. 1. 2. 1. 4 Complex Compound Verbs

Complex compound verbs may be divided into two types viz., (a) Complex suffixed compound verbs and (b) Complex reduplicated compound verbs.

4. 1. 2. 1. 4. 1 Complex Suffixed Compound Verbs

Complex suffixed compound Verbs consist of two monosyllabic verbs affixed with a single or two primary prefixes.

otàk ophòngnòrè-it has become an open secret
 cowo't codo'lnorè it has been in a mess
 coràm codo'lnorè-he has been tired due to hunger
 morìng morànglè-it has been odd
 mosén morànglè-it has been hazy
 moyán túyánnorè-it has been mixed up
 toro't khodánorè-they have been intimate

4. 1. 2. 4. 2 *Complex Reduplicated compound verbs*

Complex reduplicated compound verbs may be classified into two groups viz., (a) preduplicated and (b) post-duplicated.

1 *Complex Preduplicated Compound Verbs*

First and third syllables of the complex preduplicated compound verbs are represented by a single nominal/primary stem. The second and fourth syllables of such verbs are two different primary stems.

Preduplicated compound verbs may be subdivided into two types viz., (a) primary and (b) secondary.

(a) *Preduplicated Primary Compound Verbs*

hámco't hánbóinoro'mi'-it was devoid of any substance
 kíthi' kíru'mo'mi'-he was timid
 khayàk khazúmnoro'mi'-it had an unpleasant taste
 lo'nzà lo'nthùpnoro'mi'-he had mental reservation
 no'mzà no'mthèkoro'mi'-he resorted to unreasonable imposition
 pi'zo pi'ho'klo'mi'-he entertained (some one with food)

(b) *Preduplicated Secondary Compound Verbs*

ho'izi't ho'igàinoro'mi'-it was stunted
 lo'isi' lo'itho'nlo'mi'-he praised
 lo'mkèt lo'mháiro'mi'-he was obstinate
 mi'thói mi'hénlo'mi'-he was a genius

2 *Complex Postduplicated Compound Verbs*

First and third syllables of the complex postduplicated compound verbs are two different nominal/primary stems. The second and fourth syllables of such verbs are represented by a

single primary stem. Postduplicated compound may be subdivided into two types viz., (a) primary and (b) secondary.

(a) Postduplicated Primary Compound Verbs

cì'tcà pòizànòrò'mì'-it did not serve purpose
pò'ngdái súdàinòrò'mì'-he was dull headed
pómthà hò'ìthànòrò'mì'-it was flabby
sírúm nárúmlò'mì'-he was sickly

(b) Postduplicated Secondary Compound Verbs

cì'ndá páodánòrò'mì'-he bandied words (with some one)
khùtkò'n pánggò'nlo'mì'-he was powerfull
nì'ngzíng màngzíngnòrò'mì'-he hesitated
pùkmén páóméalo'mì'-he consoled
pì'dò't pàdò'tlò'mì'-he was an orphan
pì'bò'n pàbò'nlo'mì'-he reproached
tì'nzén làicén'lo'mì'-he suffered from a chronic disease

3 Pre/postduplicated Compound Verbs with to'u

Preduplicated compound verbs and postduplicated compound verbs may express negation occurring with the negative forms of to'u, auxiliary verb for the indefinite and perfect aspects of the three tenses. In such case, these verbs remain in the infinitive forms with pò.

(a) Preduplicated Compound Verbs with to'u

kìthì' kírúmbò to'udè he is not timid
lò'mkèt lò'mháibo to'udè-he is not obstinate

(b) Postduplicated Compound Verbs with to'u

nì'ngzíng màngzíngnòrò bò to'udè-he does not hesitate
sírúm nárúmbò to'udè-he does not suffer any chronic disease

4 Onomatopoeic Compound Verbs

Onomatopoeic compound verbs are the extensions of the simple compound verbs with the addition of an echo word. They thus express the meanings of the simple compound verbs with the emphasis imparted by the echo words. Onomatopoeic compound verbs take three forms viz., (a) preduplicated forms, (b) postduplicated forms and (c) heterogeneous forms.

(a) Preduplicated Forms

<i>compound forms</i>	<i>preduplicated forms</i>	<i>meanings</i>
ko'nlo'kpo	ko'nlo'k ko'nzáobo	jealous
korémnobo	korém kotháinobo	mock at
kho'iràngbo	kho'iràng kho'isáobo	anxious
wàno'mbo	wàco't wàno'mbo	canvass
wàro'kpo	wàro'k wàtèmbò	take due care

(b) Post duplicated Forms

<i>compound forms</i>	<i>postduplicated forms</i>	<i>meanings</i>
càk cà:nobo	càkca hò'izànobò	organise a feast
mi't s'ingbo	mi'tsing ná'singbo	vigilant
tho'u wóidobo	tho'uwói wàwóidobò	indifferent
tho'ibo	tho'ico't wá gco'tnobò	arrogant
wàro'ubo	wàro'upùklo'ubò	offend

(c) Heterogeneous forms

<i>compound verbs</i>	<i>Heterogeneous forms</i>	<i>meanings</i>
hóráobo	hóráo toyámbo	juvilant
i'ràtbo	i'ràt tho'unibo	worship
khùrúmbò	khùrúm kházo'ngbo	bow down
lò'nlo'nbo	lòlo'n i'ti'kpo	carry on trade
lúhò'ngbo	lúhò'ng kho'ngdóngbo	marry

4. 1. 2. 1. 5 Verbal Compounds

Verbal compounds consist of a main verb and an auxiliary verb. They have been shown in illustrating the features of the tense forms.

lbo ngo'mgoni'-we/you/they can write

ménkho'tpo ngo'mlo'mgoni'-we/you/they could have made up

móring morángbo yá:i'-it may be odd

ni'ngzing mǎngzingnopho'm tho'k:i'-we/you/they should hesitate

4. 1. 2. 2 *Persons, Negation and Interrogation of the Verbs*

Verbs in the aspects of the tenses and tense forms express the four features viz , (a) honorific persons, (b) negation (c) interrogation and (e) causation taking the markers of such features. Markers of the four features are shown below :—

1 Markers of the Honorific Persons

cɔ, marker of the honorific first person

pi, marker of the honorific second and third persons

2 Markers of Negation

kɔ̀nɔ̀, lóí and tɔ are the markers of negation

3 Markers of Interrogation

lá, marker of general interrogation expressed in the interrogative sentences not defined by the interrogative words like who, which, why etc.

Kè, marker of qualified interrogation expressed in the interrogative sentences defined by the interrogative words.

4 Marker of Causation

hɔ̀n is the marker of causation.

4. 1. 2. 2. 1 *Verbs in the tenses and tense forms expressing Persons Negation etc.*

1 Verbs in the Present and Past Tenses

1(1/1) cɔ/pi, Honorific Person

cɔ, honorific first person and pi, honorific second/third person precede the markers of tenses in the verbs in the present and past tenses,

verbs in cɔ

pázɔ̀rè—we have read

pázɔ̀rɔ̀'mlè—we had read

ɔ̀i láiri'k ɔ̀dú pázɔ̀rè—I have read that book

ɔ̀'ino bírénbú pángzɔ̀rɔ̀'mi—I helped Biren

ɔ̀dɔ̀'mno bínoy'ú yo'kpi'i—you are looking after Binoy

bímó'ino gópá'lbú kɔ̀'nb, rɔ̀'mi-Bimol saved Gopal

verbs in pi

pábi'rè-you/they have read

pábi'rɔ̀'mlè-you/they had read

1 (1/2) *tɔ*, negation

tɔ, marker of negation follows the markers of the tenses in the verbs in the present and past tenses.

general forms

párè-we/you/they have read
párc'mlè-we/you/they had read

negative forms

pádrè-we/you/they have not read
párc'mdrè-we/you/they had not read

gópál párá pádrì Gopal is not reading his lesson

módhúnc sén odù pí'rc'mdrì Modhu was not giving that money

1 (1/3) *cɔ/pì*, person + *tɔ*, negation

Negative verbs in the present and past tenses may take *cɔ/pì*, honorific person.

(a) *cɔ* + *tɔ*

izadrè-we have not written
izarc'mdrè-we had not written

(b) *pì* + *tɔ*

ibi'drè-you/they have not written
ibi'rc'mdrè-you/they had not written
oi'di' odo'mbú káozaðè I do not forget you
oi'kho'inc thobok odù sùzarc'mdrè-we had not done that work

odo'mnc birémbú pángbi'dè-you do not help Biren

gópólnc syámbú ngáibi'rc'mdè Gopal did not wait for Syam

1 (2/1) *lá/kè*, interrogation

lá, general interrogation and *kè*, qualified interrogation change the verbs in the present and past tenses into the infinitive forms with *pɔ*, marker of infinitive. In such case, *pɔ*, infinitive precedes *lá/kè*, interrogation.

general forms

pári-we/you/they are reading

párc'mli-we/you/they were reading ?

interrogative forms

páriborá are we/you/they reading ?
páribogè-why are we/you/they reading ?

párc'mliborá-were we/you/they reading ?
párc'mlibogè-why were we/you/they reading ?

interrogative forms in la'

páriborá—are we/you/they reading ?

páro'mliborá were we/you/they reading ?

interrogative forms in kè

páribogè—why are we/you/they reading ?

páro'mlibogè why were we/you/they reading ?

bíren thobò'k sùriborá—is Biren doing the work ?

bínóyño gópálbú pánglo'mborá did Binnoy help Gopal ?

bímólnò korígí módhù kóúribogè—why is Bimol calling Modhù ?

dét énnò korígí mádhò'pto sén pí'ro'mlibogè—why was Deben giving the money to Madhop ?

1 (3/2) Interrogative Verbs in the present and past tenses with pí', to

Interrogative verbs in the present and past tenses may take the following markers :—

(a) pí', honorific second/third person

(b) to, negation

(c) pí', honorific second/third person + to, negation

Examples :—

Forms in lá

ibi'riborá are you/they writing ?

idriborá—are not we/you/they writing ?

ibi'driborá are not you/they writing ?

ibi'ro'mliborá—were you/they writing ?

iro'mdriborá—were not we/you/they writing ?

ibi'ro'm riborá—were not you/they writing ?

Forms in kè

ibi'ribogè—why are you/they writing ?

idribogè—why are not we/you/they writing ?

ibi'dribogè—why are not you/they writing ?

ibi'ro'mlibogè—why were you/they writing ?

iro'mdribogè—why were not we/you/they writing ?

ibi'ro'mdribogè—why were not you/they writing ?

2 Verbs in kodo'u, shall/will, kodo'u, must and kodo'u-going to do
2 {1/1} co/pi', honorific person

co, honorific first person and pi', honorific second/third person occur with the three types of verbs viz., (a) verbs in kodo'u, shall/will, (b) verbs in kodo'u must and verbs in kodo'u, going to do.

co/pi' precedes the following markers in the three types of the verbs:—

- (a) markers of the aspects in the verbs in kodo'u, shall/will and kodo'u, must
- (b) markers of tense form in the verbs in kodo'u, going to do.

Examples :—

Forms in co

izoro'mgoni'-we will have written

izoro'mgodo'uboni'- we must have written

izogodo'uri we are going to write

Forms in pi'

ibi'ro'mgoni'-you/they will have written

ibi'ro'mgodo'uboni'- you / they must have written

ibi'godo'uri-they are going to write

o'i hoyéng co'tcogoni'-I shall go tomorrow

o'ino birénbú ngáizoro'mgodo'uboni'-I must have waited for Biren

o'ikho'ino lo'u odú yóluzogodo'uri-we are going to sell that paddy land

odo'mno binóybú pángbi'ro'mgoni'-you will have helped Binoy

odo'mno thobo'k odú sùbi'khi'godo'uboni'-you must be doing that work

gópáino bímolúbú thinbi'godo'uri-Gopal is going to escort Bimol

2 {1/2} lá/kè, interrogation

lá, general interrogation and kè, qualified interrogation change kodo'u, shall/will into kodo.

lá/kè changes the verbs in kodo'u, must and kodo'u, going to do into the infinitive forms with pa, marker of infinitive.

In such case, *po* precedes *lá/kè* and *kodo'u*, must in the aspects other than the indefinite is followed by *li* emphasiser occurring with *kè*.

general forms

iro'mgoni'-we/you/they will have written

iro'mgodo'uboni'-we/you/they must have written

igodo'uri-we/you/they are going to write

interrogative forms

iro'mgodorá-will we/you/they have written ?

iro'mgodo'gè-why we/you/they have written ?

iro'mgodo'uborá-must we/you/they have written ?

iro'mgodo'uribogè-why must we/you/they have written ?

igodo'uriborá-are we/you/they going to write ?

igodo'uribogè-why are we/you/they going to write ?

*Interrogative forms
in la'*

iro'mgodorá-will we/you/they have written ?

iro'mgodo'uborá-must we/you/they have written ?

igodo'uriborá-are we/you/they going to write ?

*Interrogative forms
in ké*

iro'mgodo'gè-why will we/you/they have written ?

iro'mgodo'uribogè-why must we/you/they have written ?

igodo'uribogè-why are we/you/they going to write ?

birénno syámbú pánglo'mgodorá-Will Birren have helped Syam ?

bínóyno thobo'k odù sùro'mgodo'uborá Must Binoy have done that work ?

bímólno láiri'k odù págodo'uriborá-Are Bimol going to read that book ?

débénno korígí súnílbú ngáikhi'godo'gè-Why shall Deben be waiting for Sunil ?

dórénno korígí módhúbú thínlo'mgodo'uribogè-Why must Doren have escorted Modhu ?

gópálnno korígí gho'rí yón:godo'uribogè-Why is Gopal going to sell the watch ?

2 (1/3) Interrogative verbs in 'shall (will)'/ 'must' and 'going to do' with 'pi'

pi` honorific second/third person may occur with the interrogative verbs in kodo'u, shall/will, kodo'u, must and kodo'u, going to do.

(a) Forms in pi`+lá

ibi`ro`mgodará-will you/they have written ?

ibi`ro`mgodo`uborá-must you/they have written ?

ibi`godo`uriborá-are you/they going to write ?

(b) Forms in pi`+kè

ibi`ro`mgodogè-why will you/they have written ?

ibi`ro`mgodo`uribogè-why must you/they have written ?

ibi`godo`uribogè-why are you/they going to write ?

2 (2/1) lói, negation

lói, marker of negation precedes the markers of aspects in the verbs in kodo'u, shall/will. In such case kodo'u, shall/will and ni`, marker of form are elided.

lói, negation precedes the markers of aspects in the verbs in kodo'u, must. In such case, kodo'u is changed into tou.

lói, negation precedes kodo'u, 'going to do' changing kodo'u, into tou.

general forms

iro`mgoni`-we/you-they will have written

iro`mgodo`uboni`-we/you/they must have written

igodo`uri`-we/you/they are going to write

negative forms

iro`mlói`-we/you/they will not have written

iro`mlóido`uboni`-we/you/they must not have written

iróido`uri`-we/you/they are not going to write

bíren dímapúr to`tlo`mlói-Biren will not have gone to Dimapúr.

bínóy párá pákhi`rói-Binoy will not be reading his lesson

bímóina thebe`k edù sùkhi`róido`uboni-Bimoi must not be doing that work

gópáldi` bíanápúr yénglóido`uri-Gopal is not going to see Bisanupur.

270—Syntax

2 (2/1/2) ɔ/pi`-honorific person + lói, negation

ɔ, honorific first person and pi`, honorific second/third person may occur with the negative verbs in kɔdɔ'u, 'shall/will', kɔdɔ'u, 'must' and kɔdɔ'u, 'going to do'.

(a) ɔ + lói

izɔrɔ'mlói-we will not have written

izɔrɔ'mlóidɔ'ubɔni`-we must not have written

izɔróidɔ'urí-we are not going to write

(b) pi` + lói

ibi`rɔ'mlói-you/they will not have written

ibi`rɔ'mlóidɔ'ubɔni`-you/they must not have written

ibi`róidɔ'urí-you/they are not going to write

2 (3/1) lói, negation + lá/kè, interrogation

lá, general interrogation and kè, qualified interrogation change kɔdɔ'u into tɔ in the negative verbs in "shall/will". lá and kè change kɔdɔ'u into tɔ'u in the negative verbs in "must" and "going to do".

general negative forms

íɔ'mlói-we/you/they will not have written

íɔ'mlóidɔ'ubɔni`-we/you/they must not have written

íróidɔ'urí-we/you/they are not going to write

negative interrogative forms

íɔ'mlóidɔrá-will not we/you/they have written ?

íɔ'mlóidɔgè-why will not we/you/they have written ?

íɔ'mlóidɔ'ubɔrá-must not we/you/they have written ?

íɔ'mlóidɔ'uribogè-Why must not we/you/they have written ?

íróidɔ'uribɔrá-are not we/you/they going to write ?

íróidɔ'uribogè-Why are not we/you/they going to write ?

negative interrogative forms in lá'

íɔ'mlóidɔrá-Will not we/you/they have written ?

negative interrogative forms in kè'

íɔ'mlóidɔgè-why will not we/you/they have written ?

ʒrɔ'mlɔɪdɔ'ubɔrɔ-Must not we/you/they have written ? ʒrɔ'mlɔɪdɔ'urɪbɔgɛ-Why must not we/you/they have written ?

ʒrɔɪdɔ'urɪbɔrɔ-Are not we/you/ they going to write ? ʒrɔɪdɔ'urɪbɔgɛ-Why are not we/you /they going to write ?

bɪrɛnɔ gɔpɔlbɪ pɔnglɔ'mlɔɪdɔrɔ- Will not Biren have helped Gopal ?

bɪnɔɪnɔ mɔdɪhɪbɪ ngɔɪrɔ'mlɔɪdɔ'ubɔrɔ-Must not Binoy have waited for Modhu ?

bɪmɔlnɔ pɔrɔ pɔrɔɪdɔ'urɪbɔrɔ-Is not Bimol going to read his lesson ?

gɔpɔlnɔ kɔrɪ'gɪ tɪbɔbɔ'k ɔdɪ sɪrɔ'mlɔɪdɔgɛ-Why will not Gopal have done that work ?

mɔdɪhɪnɔ kɔrɪ'gɪ mɔdɪ tɔ'urɔ'mlɔɪdɔ'urɪbɔgɛ-Why must not Modhu have done that ?

mɔdɪhɔpɔ kɔrɪ'gɪ sɪɔmbɪ tɪnglɔɪdɔ'urɪbɔgɛ-Why is not Modhop going to escort Syam ?

2 (3/2) pɪ, person + loi, negation + lɔ/kɛ, interrogation

pɪ, honorific second/third person may occur with the negative interrogative verbs in kɔdɔ'u, "shall"/"will", kɔdɔ'u, 'must' and kɔdɔ'u, 'going to do'.

(a) pɪ + lɔɪ + lɔ

ɪbɪrɔ'mlɔɪdɔrɔ-Will not you/they have written ?

ɪbɪrɔ'mlɔɪdɔ'ubɔrɔ-Must not you/they have written ?

ɪbɪrɔɪdɔ'urɪbɔrɔ-Are not you/they going to write ?

(b) pɪ + lɔɪ + kɛ

ɪbɪrɔ'mlɔɪdɔgɛ-Why will not you/they have written ?

ɪbɪrɔ'mlɔɪdɔ'urɪbɔgɛ-Why must not you/they have written ?

ɪbɪrɔɪdɔ'urɪbɔgɛ-Why are not you/they going to write ?

3 Verbs in the Hortative and Imperative Moods

Verbs in the hortative and imperative moods express persons without the honorific implications. They express such persons with the honorific implications taking the markers of the honorific persons.

3 (1) Verbs in kè, Hortative mood first person

3 (1/1) cò, honorific first person

cò, honorific first person precedes the markers of aspects in the verbs in kè, hortative mood first person.

<i>general forms</i>	<i>honorific forms</i>	<i>meanings</i>
páro'm _h è	pázɔɔ'mgè	let me/us have read
pákhi'gè	pázɔkhi'gè	let me/us be reading

ɔ' thobɔ'k ɔdù sùzɔkhi'gè—let me be doing that work

ɔ'ikho'i gópálbù pángzɔgè—let us help Gopal

3 (2) Verbs in si', hortative mood first person plural

3 (2/1) konù/loi, negation

konù/loi, marker of negation follows the markers of aspects in the verbs in si', hortative mood first person plural.

<i>general forms</i>	<i>negative forms</i>
páro'msɔ'-let us have read	páro'mlóisi'/páro'mgonùsi'- let us not have read
pákhi'sɔ'-let us be reading	pákhi'róisi'/pákhi'gonùsi' let us not be reading

ɔ'ikho'i ho'igrù càgonùsi'/càróisi -let us not eat myrohalam

ɔ'ikho'i thobɔ'k ɔdù sùkhi'róisi'/sùkhi'gonùsi'-let us not be doing that work

3 (2/2) pi', Honorific Second Person

pi', honorific second person may occur with a few verbs in si', hortative mood first person plural (indefinite aspect). In such case, these verbs express honorific imperative mood.

lèngsɔ'nbi'si'-please come in

phɔ'mbi'si'-please be seated

3 (3) Verbs in sɔnú, hortative mood third person

3 (3/1) pi', honorific third person

pi', honorific third person precedes the markers of aspects in the verbs in sɔnú, hortative mood third person.

general forms

páro'mso'nù-let him/them have
read

pákhi'sonù-let him/them be
reading

birénnə gópálbú pángbi'sonù-let Biren help Gopal

binóynə débénbú ngáibi'khi'sonù-let Binoy be waiting for
Deben

honorific forms

pábi'ro'mso'nù-let him/them have
read

pábi'khi'sonù-let him/them be
reading

3 (3/2) tɔ, negation

tɔ, marker of negation follows markers of aspects in the
verbs in sonù, hortative mood third person.

general forms

íro'msonù-let him/them have
written

íkhi'sonù-let him/them be
writting

negative forms

íro'mdɔsonù-let him/them not
have written

íkhi'dɔsonù-let him/them not be
writting

débén ngasi' cɔ'tɔsonù-let not Deben go today

dórénnə thɔbɔ'k ɔdù sùkhidɔsonù-let not Doren be doing
that work

3 (3/3) pi, honorific third person + tɔ, negation

pi, honorific third person may occur with the negative
verbs in sonù, hortative mood third person.

ibi'ro'mdɔsonù-let him/them not have written

ibi'khi'dɔsonù-let him/them not be writting

3 (3/4) Verbs in -o, imperative mood

3 (4/1) pi, honorific second person

pi, honorific second person precedes the markers of
aspects in the verbs in -o, imperative mood.

general forms

páro'mmù-have read

pákho'-be reading

odo'mno binóybú pángbiyù-please help Binoy

odo'mno gópálbú ngáibi'kho'-please be waiting for Gopal

honorific forms

pábi'ro'mmù-please have read

pábi'kho'-please be reading

3 (4/2) *konù*, negation

konù, marker of negation follows the markers of aspects in the verbs in -o', imperative mood.

general forms

iro'mmù-have written

ikho'-be writing

no'ng gópálbú phùgonù-don't beat Gopal

no'ng thobò'k odù sùkhi'gonù don't be doing that work

negative forms

iro'mgonù-don't have written

ikhi'gonù-don't be writing

3 (4/3) *pi'*, honorific second person + *konù*, negation

pi', honorific second person may occur with the negative verbs in -o', imperative mood.

pábiro'mgonù-please don't have read

pábi'khi'gonù-please don't be reading

4 Verbs in *lobodi'* and *lo'mlobodi'*4 (1) *co/pi'*, honorific person

co, honorific first person and *pi'*, honorific second/third person precede *lobodi'*, subjunctive tense and *lo'mlobodi'*, contingent future perfect tense in the verbs in such tense forms.

Forms in co

izorobodi'-if we write

izero'mlobodi'-if we wrote

oi'no modù to'uzorobodi', *o'ibú binóyno pángbi'goni'*-if I do that Binoy will help me

oi'kho'ino pángzoro'mlobodi' *birénno monà pho'nglo'mgo-do'uboni'*-if we helped then Biren would have got the prize
odo'mno kho'ngbi'ro'mlobodi' *odo'mno hàibi'ro'mlòido'uboni'*
 if you knew you would not have said so.

Forms in pi'

ibi'robodi'-if you/they write

ibi'ro'mlobodi'-if you/they wrote

4 (2) *to*, negation

to, marker of negation precedes *lobodi'*, subjunctive tense and *lo'mlobodi'*, contingent future perfect tense in the verbs in such tense forms.

general forms

tárobodi'-if we/you/they
 hear

negative forms

tádrobodi'-if we/you/they do not
 hear

táro'mlobodi`-if we/you/they
heard

táro'mdrobodi`-if we/you/they did
not hear

bíren láktrōbodi` gópál eotlōi-if Biren does not come Gopal
will not go

binóyno pánglō'mdrobodi` mádhō'pno monà pho'nglō'mlōi-
if Binoy did not help then Madhop will not get the prize.

4 (3) eo/pi`, honorific person + tō, negation

eo/pi`, honorific person may occur with the negative
verbs in lobodi`, subjunctive tense and lo'mlobodi`, contingent fu-
ture perfect tense.

(a) eo + tō

izōdrobodi`-if you do not write

izōro'mdrobodi`-if we did not write

(b) pi` + tō

ibi'drobodi`-if you/they do not write

ibi'ro'mdrobodi`-if you/they did not write

4. 1. 2. 2. 2 Auxiliary verbs in the tense forms expressing persons,
negation etc.

1 Main Verbs + tá:i`, "have to do"/yá:i`, "may"

1 (1) eo/pi`, honorific person

eo, honorific first person and pi`, honorific second/third
person occur with the main verbs followed by tá:i`, have to do and
yá:i`, may.

Forms in eo

izōbo tá:i`-we have to write

izōbo yá:i`-we may write

o'ikho'i i'sàno modú kho'ngzōbo tá:i`-we have to know that
ourselves

o'ikho'i i'sàno láiri'k odu pho'ngzōbo yá:i`-we may publish
that book ourselves

odo'mne binóybú pángbi'bō tá:i`-you have to help Binoy

bimólno syámbú ngáibiro'mbo yá:i`-Bimol may have waited
for Syam

Forms in pi`

ibi'bō tá:i`-you/they have to write

ibi'bō yá:i`-you/they may write

1 (1/2) *tə*, negation

tə, marker of negation occurs with the main verbs followed by *tá:i`*, have to do and *yá:i`*, may.

general forms

pábo tá:i`-we/you/they have to read

pábo yá:i`-we/you/they may read

negative forms

pádobo tá:i`-we/you/they have not to read

pádobo yá:i`-we/you/they may not read

débénno thobo`k adù sùdobo tá:i`-Deben has not to do that work

gópál dímapúr co`ttobo yá:i` Gopal may not go to Dimapur

1 (1/3) *co/pi`*, honorific person + *tə*, negation

co/pi`, honorific person may occur with the main negative followed by *tá:i`-have to do* and *yá:i`*, may.

(a) *co + tə*

pázodobo tá:i`-we have not to read

pázodobo yá:i`-we may not read

(b) *pi` + tə*

pábi`dobo tá:i`-you/they have not to read

pábi`dobo yá:i`-you/they may not read

o`ikho`ino lo`u adù yónzodobo tá:i`-we have not to sell that paddy

odo`mno binóybú kho`ngbi` ro`mdobo yá:i`-you may not have known Binoy

1 (2) Main Verbs + interrogative forms of *tá:i`* and *yá:i`*

Main verbs may be followed by the interrogative forms of *tá:i`*, have to do and *yá:i`*, may. Such forms of *tá:i`* and *yá:i`* are shown against them below :—

<i>tá:i`/yá:i`</i>	Interrogative forms of <i>tá:i`</i> and <i>yá:i`</i>	
	Forms in <i>lá</i>	Forms in <i>kè</i>
<i>tá:i`</i> , have to do	<i>táborá</i>	<i>tábogè</i>
<i>yá:i`</i> , may	<i>yágodorá</i>	<i>yágodogè</i>

general forms

pábo tá:i`-we/you/they have
to read

pábo yá:i`-we/you/they may
read

interrogative forms

pábo táborá-have we/you/they to
read ?

pábo tábogè-how have we/you
they to read ?

pábo yágodorá-may we/you/they
read ?

pábo yágodogè-how may we/you
they read ?

bíren motómtó cò`tpo táborá-has Biren to go alone ?

bínóyño gópálbú pángbo yágodorá-may Binoy help Gopal ?

bimólno koro`mno thobo`k odù sùbo tábogè-how has Bimo
to do that work ?

débénno koro`mno motómtó lákpo yágodogè-how may Debe
come alone ?

1 (2/1) pi`, honorific second/third person, to, negation

The following markers may occur with the main verb:
followed by the interrogative forms of tá:i`, have to do and yá:i`
may :

(a) pi`, honorific second/third person

(b) to, negation

(c) pi`, honorific second/third person + to, negation

Examples :—

Forms in lá

íbibó táborá-have you/they to read ?

ídobó táborá-have not we/you/they to write ?

íbí`dobó táborá-have not you/they to write ?

íbí`bo yágodorá-may you/they write ?

ídobó yágodorá-may not we/you/they write ?

íbí`dobó yágodorá-may not you/they write ?

Forms in kè

íbí`bo tábogè-how have you/they to write ?

ídobó tábogè-how have you/they not to write ?

ibi'dobo tábogè-how have you/they not to write ?
 ibi'bo yágodagè-how may you/they write ?
 idobo yágodagè-how may not we/you/they write ?
 ibi'dobo yágodagè-how may not you/they write ?

2 Main verbs + Four Auxillary verbs

2 (1) cə/pi', honorific person

cə, honorific first person and pi' honorific second/third person occur with the main verbs followed by ngo'mgoni', "can", ngo'mlo'mgoni', "could" yáro'mgoni'; "might" and tho'ki', "should".

(a) Forms in cə

izabo ngo'mgoni'-we can write
 izabo ngo'mlo'mgoni'-we could have written
 izabo yáro'mgoni'-we might have written
 izapho'm tho'ki'-we should write

(b) Forms in pi'

ibi'bo ngo'mgoni'-you/they can write
 ibi'bo ngo'mlo'mgoni'-you/they could have written
 ibi'bo yáro'mgoni'-you/they might have written
 ibi'pho'm tho'ki'-you/they should write
 o'ino odo'mbú pángzobo ngo'mgoni'-I can help you
 o'ino thobo'k odù sùzobo ngo'mlo'mgoni'-I could have done that work
 o'ikho'ino odo'mbú ngáizobo yáro'mgoni'-we might have waited for you
 o'ikho'i í sáno modù kho'ngzapho'm tho'ki'-we should know that
 odo'mno o'ibú thinbi'bo ngo'mgoni'-you can escort me
 odo'mno modù kho'nbi'bo ngo'mlo'mgoni'-you could have thought that
 binóyno gópálgo kho'nnobibo yáro'mgoni'-Binoy might have consulted with Gopal
 bírénno syámgo ú;nobi'pho'm tho'ki'-Biren should meet Syam

2 (2/1) Main Verbs+Interrogative forms of the four auxiliary verbs

Main Verbs may be followed by the Interrogative forms of the four auxiliary verbs. Such interrogative forms are shown against the four auxiliary verbs below :—

Four auxiliary verbs	Interrogative forms of the auxiliary verbs	
	Forms in lá	Forms in kè
ngo'mgoni` can	ngo'mgodorá	ngo'mgodogè
ngo'mlo'mgoni`-could	ngo'mlo'mgodorá	ngo'mlo'mgodogè
yáro'mgoni`-might	yáro'mgodorá	yáro'mgodogè
tho`k:i`-should	tho`kporá	tho`kpegè

general forms

ibo ngo'mgoni`-we/you/they
can write

ibo ngo'mlo'mgoni`-we/you/
they could have written

ibo yáro'mgoni`-we/you/they
might have written

ípho'm tho`k:i`-we/you/they
should write

interrogative forms

ibo ngo'mgodorá-can we/you/they
write ?

ibo ngo'mgodogè-how can we/you/
they write ?

ibo ngo'mlo'mgodorá-can we/you/
they have written ?

ibo ngo'mlo'mgodogè-how could
we/you/they have written ?

ibo yáro'mgodorá-might we/you/
they have written ?

ibo yáro'mgodogè-how might we/
you/they have written ?

ípho'm tho`kporá-should we/you/
they write ?

ípho'm tho`kpegè-how should we/
you/they write ?

binóy hoyéng eá'tpo ngo'mgodorá-can Binoy go tomorrow ?

birénnó gópálbú pángbo ngo'mlo'mgodorá-could Biren have
helped Gopal ?

bimóino modù la'uba yáro'mgadorá-might Bimol have taken that ?
 débénno modù kho'ngpho'm tho'kporá-should Deben know that ?
 dórénnò koro'mno lo'u yónbo ngo'mgodogè-how can Doren sell the paddy land ?
 mádhò'pno koro'mno so'iréng ibo ngo'mlo'mgodogè-how could Madhop have written the poems ?
 múhónno koro'mno khùtsùmo'n pho'ngbo yáro'mgodogè-how might Muhon have got his wage ?
 syámmo korigi modù to'upho'm tho'kpogè-why should Syam do it ?

2 (2/2) pi, honorific second/third person

pi, honorific second/third person may occur with the main verbs followed by the interrogative forms of the four auxiliary verbs.

(a) Forms with pi and lá

ibi'bo ngo'mgadorá-can you/they write ?
 ibi'bo ngo'mlo'mgadorá-could you/they have written ?
 ibi'bo yáro'mgadorá-might you/they have written ?
 ibi'pho'm tho'kporá, should you/they write ?

(b) Forms with pi and kè

ibi'bo ngo'mgodogè-how can you/they write ?
 ibi'bo ngo'mlo'mgodogè-how could you/they have written ?
 ibi'bo yáro'mdogè-how might you/they have written ?
 ibi'pho'm tho'kpogè-how should you/they write ?

2 (3/1) Main Verbs + Negative Forms of the four Auxiliary Verbs

The main verbs may be followed by the negative forms of the four auxiliary verbs. Such negative forms are shown against the four auxiliary verbs below :—

auxiliary verbs

ngo'mgoni-can
 ngo'mlo'mgoni-could
 yáro'mgoni-might
 tho'k:i-should

negative forms of the auxiliary verbs

ngo'mlói-cannot
 ngo'mlo'mlói-could not
 yáro'mlói-might not
 tho'ktè-should not

general forms

ibə ngo'mgoni'-we/you/they
can write
ibə ngo'mlo'mgoni'-we/you/
they could have written
ibə yáro'mgoni'-we/you/they
might have written
ipho'm tho'k:i'-we/you/they
should write

negative forms

ibə ngo'mloi'-we/you/they cannot
write
ibə ngo'mlo'mloi'-we/you/they could
not have written
ibə yáro'mloi'-we/you/they might
not have written
ipho'm tho'ktè'-we/you/they should
not write

binóy hoyéng lákpə ngo'mloi'-Binoy cannot come tomorrow
birénno gópálbú pángbo ngo'mlo'mloi'-Biren could not have
helped Gopal
bímólno syámbú ngáibo yáro'mloi'-Bimol might not have
waited for Gopal
débénnə módhúbú kho'ngpho'm tho'ktè'-Deben should not
know Modhu

2 (3/2) co/pi', honorific person

co, honorific first person and pi', honorific second/third
person may occur with the main verbs followed by the negative
forms of the four auxiliary verbs.

(a) co+negative forms

izəbo ngo'mloi'-we cannot write
izəbo ngo'mlo'mloi'-we could not have written
izəbo yáro'mloi'-we might not have written
izəpho'm tho'ktè'-we should not write

2 (3/2/1) ngo'mloi, cannot but and ngo'mlo'mloi, could not but
ngo'mloi, "cannot" and ngo'mlo'mloi, "could not"
express "cannot but" and "could not but" respectively occurring
with the main negative verbs with to, negation.

idəbo ngo'mloi'-we/you/they cannot but write
idəbo ngo'mlo'mloi'-we/you/they could not but have written
débénnə biréabú pángdəbo ngo'mloi'-Deben cannot but help
Biren
gópálnə dimápúr co'ttəbo ngo'mlo'mloi'-Gopal could not but
have gone to Dimapur

2 (4/1) Main Verbs+Negative Interrogative forms of the four Auxiliary Verbs

Main verbs may be followed by the negative interrogative forms of the four auxiliary verbs. Such forms are shown against the negative forms of the four auxiliary verbs.

Negative forms of the four auxiliary verbs	Negative interrogative forms of the four auxiliary verbs	
	Forms in lá	Forms in kè
ngə'mlóí-can not	ngə'mlóíḍorá	ngə'mlóíḍogè
ngə'mlɔ'mlóí-could not	ngə'mlɔ'mlóíḍorà	ngə'mlɔ'mlóíḍogè
yáɾɔ'mlóí-might not	yáɾɔ'mlóíḍorá	yáɾɔ'mlóíḍogè
tho'ktè should not	tho'ktəḅorá	tho'ktəḅogè

negative forms

íḅɔ ngə'mlóí-we/you/they
cannot write

íḅɔ ngə'mlɔ'mlóí-we/you/
they could not have
written

íḅɔ yáɾɔ'mlóí-we/you/they
might not have written

íḅhɔ'm tho'ktè-we/you/
they should not write

negative interrogative forms

íḅɔ ngə'mlóíḍorá-can not we/you/they
write ?

íḅɔ ngə'mlóíḍogè-why cannot we/you/
they write ?

íḅɔ ngə'mlɔ'mlóíḍorá-could not we/
you/they have written ?

íḅɔ ngə'mlóíḍogè-why could not we/
you/they have written ?

íḅɔ yáɾɔ'mlóíḍorá-might not have we/
you/they written ?

íḅɔ yáɾɔ'mlóíḍogè-why might not we/
you/they have written ?

íḅhɔ'm tho'ktəḅorá-should not we/you/
they write ?

íḅhɔ'm tho'ktəḅogè-why should not we/
you/they write ?

ḅínóy hɔyéug cə'tpɔ ngə'mlóíḍorá-cannot Binoy go tomo-
rrow ?

biénno gópálbú pángbo ngo'mlɔ'mlɔ́dɔrá-could not Biren have helped Gopal ?

bímólno modù lɔ'uba yáɔ'mlɔ́dɔrá-might not Bimol have taken that ?

débénno modù ts'upho'm tho'ktɔbɔrá-should not Deben do that ?

dórénno korigi lɔ'u adù lɔ'ibo ngo'mlɔ́dɔgè-why cannot Doren buy that paddy land ?

mádho'pno korigi sɔ'iréng ibo ngo'mlɔ'mlɔ́dɔgè-why could not Madhop have written the poems ?

múhónno korigi khùtsùmo'n pho'ngbo yáɔ'mlɔ́dɔgè-why might not Muhon have got his wage ?

2 (4/2) pi', honorific second/third person

pi', honorific second/third person may occur with the main verbs followed by the negative interrogative forms of the four auxiliary verbs.

(a) negative forms with pi' and lá

ibi'bo ngo'mlɔ́dɔrá-cann't you/they write ?

ibi'bo ngo'mlɔ'mlɔ́dɔrá-could not you/they have written ?

ibi'bo yáɔ'mlɔ́dɔrá'-might not you/they have written ?

ibi'pho'm tho'ktɔbɔrá'-should not you/they write ?

(b) negative forms with pi' and kè

ibi'bo ngo'mlɔ́dɔgè-why cann't you/they write ?

ibi'bo ngo'mlɔ'mlɔ́dɔgè-why could not you/they have written ?

ibi'bo ya'ra'mlɔ́dɔgè-why might not you/they have written ?

ibi'pho'm tho'ktɔbɔgè-why should not you/they write ?

4. 1. 2. 2. 3 *Honorific Persons of the Verbs*

1 Persons of the Honorific Verbs

Some honorific verbs express the three honorific persons without taking the markers of these persons. In such case, these verbs occur with the honorific nouns used as adjuncts.

o'ino othénpo't kɔ'tlo'mlè-I had given the presents

o'ino lùk kɔ'n-gè-let me give an additional round of dishes

mohàkno wà hō'nggò'tsonù-let him report the matter
 nō'ngnō kwàgò'k hángphō'm tho'k'i'-you should give the
 bribe

The honorific verbs shown above may optionally take *cō*, honorific first person.

ō'ikho'ino wàphō'm odu táibùngódo hō'nggò'tcoro'miè-we
 had reported the matter to our elder brother

Some honorific verbs express only the honorific second and third persons with or without *pi'*, marker of such persons occurring with the honorific nouns used as the subjects or nominal adjuncts. In such case, the subject (honorific noun) in the second person takes *pú*, vocative case marker and occurs with the honorific verbs.

(a) subject in the second person with *pú*, vocative

i'nébémobú ! koro'mbo nō'mkhàng tho'lgodogè-oh ! my
 aunt ! what shawl will you wear ?
 khúrá i'bùngó ! khúdádó lèngsínù-oh ! my uncle ! please
 take your seat
 sonà i'bùngó ! khúdóng phànlóidorá oh ! Rajkumar ! will
 you not smoke
 táibùngó ! lùk háríborá-oh ! my elder brother ! are you
 taking meal ?

(b) subject in the honorific third person

sonà i'bèmodi' phunnō khúzáidogí i'íng phànlóido'uri-the
 Rajkumari is not going to drink the water from the jug
 sonàkhwádi' sō'nggáido lènglí-the Rajkumar is going to his
 home.
 wálhō'uso'ngdo o'igyáno lùk hō'uri'-the Brahmin is preparing
 the meal in the kitchen shed of the deity

2 Use of *cō* in the second/third person and *pi'* in the first person

Use of *cō*, honorific first person in the second/third person and *pi'*, honorific second/third person is taken as offence or discourtesy. But such use of these person markers is done by the elders and superiors towards the juniors.

(a) cə in the second/third person

lɔ'isábi'singdi` phí sùzɔrí-the girls are washing the clothes
 nùpámɔcàsingno sánnozɔrí-the boys are playing
 nɔ'ngnɔbú pámmzɔrɔbɔdi`-oino pí`bí'goni`-if you like I shall
 give it.

(b) pí` in the first person

ɔ'ino nùpámɔcàsingdo lùpà càmɔ pí`bí'ro'mlè-I had given
 one hundred rupees to the boys
 ɔ'ino nɔhárónsingbú pángbí'goni`-I shall help the boys
 ɔ'ikho`ino sátrɔ'singbú mɔyùmdɔ thínbí'goni`-we will escort
 the students to their homes

3 cə/pí` used as word forming infix.

cə, honorific first person and pí`, honorific second/third person function as the word forming infixes without expressing their personal meanings. In such case, cə/pí` form the obligatory components of some infixed verbs.

(a) cə, word forming infix.

lɔ'ngzɔrɔ'mi`-we/you/they offended
 lákeɔrɔ'mi`-we/you/they outwitted
 pí'zɔrɔ'mi`-we/you/they fed
 phɔzɔrɔ'mi`-it was beautifull
 tù:kɔcɔrɔ'mi`-we/you/they hated
 thàzɔrɔ'mi`-we/you/they believed

(b) pí`, word forming infx

cánbí'ro'mi`-we/you/they were kind
 kúbí'ro'mi`-God blessed
 ngàkpi'ro'mi`-we/you/they forgave
 tɔ'mbí'ro'mi`--we/you/they taught

4. 1. 2. 2. 4 Causation of Verbs

hɔ`n is the marker of causation. It occurs with the verbs (both general and interrogative) in the indefinite and perfect aspects of the tenses and tense forms.

1 (1) *ho'n*, preceding the markers of tenses

ho'n causation precedes the markers of tenses in the verbs of the following tenses :—

- (a) Verbs in the present tense
- (b) verbs in the past tense

Examples :—

general forms

- (a) *ihə'nle-we/you/they* have got it written
- (b) *ihə'nlo'mle-we/you/they* had got it written

Interrogative forms

- (a) *ihə'nloborá*-have we/you/they got it written ?
- (b) *ihə'nlo'mloborá*-had we/you/they got it written ?
bínóyño gópálbú thobó'k odú sùho'nli-Binoy gets that work done by Gopal
bírénnə módhúbú cithí odú ihə'nlo'mborá-did Biren get that letter written by Modhu ?

1 (2) *hən* preceding the markers of aspects

hən, causation precedes the markers of aspects in the verbs in the following tenses and tense forms :—

- (a) Verbs in the future tense
- (b) Verbs in *kodo'u*-must
- (c) Verbs in the hortative mood
- (d) Verbs in the imperative mood

Examples :—

general forms

- (a) *ihə'nlo'mgəni-we/you/they* will have got it written
- (b) *ihə'nlo'mgodo'ubəni-we/you/they* must have got it written
- (c) *ihə'nlo'msi*-let us have got it written
- (d) *ihə'nlo'mmù-(you)* have got it written (imperative)

Interrogative forms

- (a) *ihə'nlo'mgodo'gè-why* will we/you/they have got it written ?

(b) *ihò'nlò'mgòdògè-why must we/you/they have got it written ?*

débénno gópáibú thòbò'k odù sùhò'nlò'mgòni'-Deben will have got that work done by Gopal

dóréanno gópáibú ú odù yàhò'nlò'mgòdò'uboni'-Doren must have got that tree cut by Gopal

ò'ino mádho'ppú cithi odù ihò'nlò'mgè-let me have got that letter written by Madhop.

ngò'ngno láiri'k odù syámbú páhò'nlù-(you) get that book read by Syam

rázénno bínóybú sèn odù thàhò'nlò'mgòdòrá-will Rajen have got that money sent by Binoy ?

rádháno sántibú phí odù sùhò'nlò'mgòdò'uborá must Radha have got that cloth washed by Santi ?

1 (3) *hò'n* preceding the markers of tense forms

hò'n, causation precedes the markers of tense forms in the verbs in the following tense forms :—

- (a) Verbs in *kòdò'u-going to do*
- (b) Verbs in *lòbòdi'-subjunctive tense*
- (c) Verbs in *lò'mlobòdi'-contingent future perfect tense*

Examples :—

general forms

- (a) *páho'lgòdò'uri-we/you/they are going to get it read*
- (b) *páho'nlòbòdi'-if we/you/they get it read*
- (c) *páho'nlò'mlobòdi'-if we/you/they got it read*

Interrogative forms

- (a) *páho'lgòdò'uribògè-why are we/you/they going to get it read ?*

bínóyno gópáibú thòbò'k odù sùhò'lgòdò'uri-Binoy is going to get that work done by Gopal

biréanno módhúbú láiri'k odù páhò'nlòbòdi' phògòni'-if Biren gets that book read by Modhu, it will be good,

bimólno syámbú sén odù thàho`nlo`mlòbodi`, phòro`mgodo`u-
 boni-if Bimol got that money sent by Syam, it would have
 been good
 débéano korigí mádho`ppú ú odù yàho`lgodo`uribogè-why is
 Deben going to get that tree cut by Madhop ?

1 (4) ho`n in the main verbs followed by the auxiliary verbs

ho`n, causation occurs with the main verbs followed by
 the auxiliary verbs.

(a) general forms

ihò`nbo ngo`mgoni`-we/you/they can get it written
 ihò`nbo ngo`mlò`mgoni`-we/you/they could have got it
 written
 ihò`nbo yáro`mgoni`-we/you/they might have got it written
 ihò`nbo yá:i`-we/you/they may get it written
 ihò`nbo tá:i`-we/you/they have to get it written
 ihò`npho`m tho`k:i`-we/you/they should get it written

(b) Interrogative Forms

ihò`nbo ngo`mgodogè-how can we/you/they get it written ?
 ihò`nbo ngo`mlò`mgodogè how could we/you/they have got
 it written ?
 ihò`nbo yáro`mgodogè-how might we/you/they have got it
 written ?
 ihò`nbo yágodogè-how may we/you/they get it written ?
 ihò`nbo tábogè-how have we/you/they to got it written ?
 ihò`npho`m tho`kpodè how should we/you/they get it writ-
 ten ?
 bíréno gópálbú thòbò`k odù sùhò`nbo ngo`mgoni`-Biren can
 get that work done by Gopal
 bínóyno syámbú cithí odù ihò`nbo ngo`mlò`mgoni`-Binoy
 could have that letter written by Syam
 bimólno módhúbú sén odù thàho`nbo yáro`mgoni`-Bime
 might have got that money sent by Modhu
 dóréno gópálbú láiri`k odù yónhò`nbo yá:i`-Doren may
 to sell the book by Gopal

débénno módhúbú ù odù yàhò'nbo tá:i'-Deben has to get that tree cut by Modhu

mádhò'pno gópálbú láiri`k odù páhò'npho'm tho`k:i'-Madhop should get that book read by Gopal

2 Causative verbs with the markers of persons and negation

Causative verbs (both general and interrogative) may take the following markers :—

- (a) markers of the honorific persons
- (b) markers of negation
- (c) markers of the honorific persons and negation

Examples :—

ihò'nbi`rè-you/they have got it written

ihò'ndrè-we/you/they have not got it written

ihò'nbi`drè-you/they have not got it written

ihò'nbi`rò'mlè-you/they had got it written

ihò'nbi`rò'mdrè we/you/they had not got it written

ihò'nbi`rò'múì-you/they had not got it written

ihò'nbi`rò'mgonl`-you/they will have got it written

ihò'nbi`rò'mlóì-we/you/they will not have got it written

4. 1. 2. 2. 5 Stative Verbs expressing Persons, Negation etc.,

Stative verbs express negation, interrogation, inter-rogation and negation. They also express causation. Only a few stative verbs express the honorific persons.

1 Stative Verbs expressing Negation

(a) to, negation

cáodè-it is not big

cáorò'mdè-it was not big

cáodobo tá:i`-it has not to be big

cáodobo yá:i`-it may not be big

cáophò'm tho`kè-it should not be big

lól, negation

lòról-it will not be big

cáoróido'ubónì-it must not be big
 cáoróido'urí-it is not going to be big
 cáobo ngo'mlól-it cannot be big
 cáobo ngo'mlò'mlól-it could not have been big
 cáobo yáro'mlól-it might not have been big
 ho'ì odù sì'ndè that fruit is not sour
 í'nsáng odù háoro'mdè-that curry was not delicious
 lo'ipàn odù ningtho'mthádo ko'nglól-that flower plant will
 not be dry in the winter
 módhúno sáodobo tá;i'-Modhu has not to be angry
 mádhoptì' hóráobo ngo'mlól-Madhop cannot be jovial
 ho'ì odù múnbo ngo'mlò'mlól-that fruit could not have been
 ripe
 rázénno cèksi'nbó yáro'mlól-Rajen might not have been care-
 full
 túrégi í'íngdi' sápho'm tho'ktè water of the river should
 not be hot

2 Stative Verbs expressing Interrogation

Stative verbs in the indefinite and perfect aspects of the tenses and tense forms express interrogation.

Forms in lá

cáoborá-is it big ?
 cáoro'mborá-was it big ?
 cáogodorá-will it be big ?
 cáobo ngo'mgodorá-can it be
 big ?
 cáobo yágodorá-may it be
 big ?
 cáopho'm tho'kporá-should
 it be big ?

Forms in kè

cáobogè-how is it big ?
 cáoro'mbogè-how was it big ?
 cáogodogè-how will it be big ?
 cáobo ngo'mgodogè-how can it be
 big ?
 cáobo yágodogè-how may it be
 big ?
 cáopho'm tho'kpodgè-how should it
 be big ?

càk odù púmlóborá-is that cooked rice rotten ?

dəbénno módhúdo sáoro'mborá-was Deben angry with
 Modhu ?

lo'ì odù phozgodorá-will that flower be beautiful ?

mádhó pno cèksl`nbo ngo`mló`mgodórà can Madhop be care-
full ?

múhónno korigi horáophó`m tho`kpagè-why should Muhon
be jovillant ?

phí omúbóno koró`mno ngo`ubo yágodógè-how may the black
clock be white ?

2 (2) Interrogative Stative Verbs expressing Negation

Interrogative stative verbs express negation.

(a) Forms in lá

co`ttóberá-is it not wet ?

cáoro`mdóberá-was it not big ?

cètlóidóberá will it not be firm ?

(b) Forms in kè

ko`ngdóbo yágodógè-how may not it be dry ?

lálbo ngo`mlóidógè-how cann't it be easy ?

múnbo ngo`mló`mlóidógè-how could not have been ripe ?

ngo`upho`m tho`któbógè-how should it not be white ?

3 Stative Verbs expressing Causation

Stative verbs express causation

cáohó`nlè it has been enlarged

mo`nhó`nló`mli`-it was softened

so`nhó`nló`mgóni`-it will have been weakened

ténho`nbo tá:i`-it has to be shortened

thó`uho`nbo yá:i`-it may be sharpened

tháho`nphó`m tho`k:i`-it should be thickened

4 Stative Verbs expressing Persons

4 (1) eo, honorific first person

eo, honorific first person occurs only with a very few
stative verbs.

cèksl`nzorè-we have been carefull

horáozoro`mi`-we were jovillant

núngáizogóni`-we will be happy

4 (2) pi', honorific second person

pi', honorific second person occur with a few stative verbs in the imperative mood (indefinite aspect).

i'nàk khúbi'yù-please be rich

mài pàkpi'yù-please be victorious

pùkcén cáobi'yù-please be noble

pi', honorific second person also occurs with some negative stative verbs in the imperative mood.

ko'nlo'kpi'gonù-please don't be jealous

kho'iràngbi'gonù-please don't be anxious

mipáibi'gonù-please don't be nervous

pùkcén pi'kpi'gonù-please don't be mean

4 (3) cò, honorific person and pi', honorific second/third person occur with some causative stative verbs.

Forms in cò

ko'nho'nzàrè-we have got it strengthened

tènho'nzòrò'mi'- we got it shortened

tho'uhò'nzògoni'-we will get it sharpened

thàhò'nzògòdò,uboni'-we must get it thickened

Forms in pi'

ko'nho'nbi'rè-you/they have got it strengthened

tènho'nbi'rò'mi'-you/they got it shortened

tho'uhò'nbi'goni'-you/they will get it sharpened

thàhò'nbi'gòdò,uboni'-you/they must get it thickened

AUXILIARY VERBS

4. 1. 2. 6. 1 Auxiliary Verbs have been referred to in showing the features of tenses and tense forms. They are lo'i, lá, lák, ni', no' ngo'm, ngái, oi, to'u, tá, tho'k and yá.

lo'i, lá, nò, no', ngái, o'i and tá express "be". Meanings of other auxiliary verbs are shown below :—

lák-come

ngo'm-able

to'u-do

tho'k-go out

lá-possible

1 (1) *ni*, *lá* and *no*, express the features shown against them below :—

- (a) *ni*-general statement
- (b) *lá*-general interrogation
- (c) *kè*-qualified interrogation

ni, *lá* and *no* are not conjugated. They express "be" in the present indefinite occurring with the nouns used as the subjective complements.

<i>ni</i> , general statement	<i>lá</i> , general interrogation	<i>kè</i> , qualified interrogation
modù o'k <i>ni</i> -that is a pig	modù o'k <i>lá</i> -is that a pig ?	modù kori <i>no</i> -what is that ?
mosi`pàt <i>ni</i> -this is a lake	mosi`pàt <i>lá</i> -is this a lake ?	mosi` kori <i>no</i> -what is this ?
mà ózá <i>ni</i> -he is a teacher	mà ózá <i>rá</i> -is he a teacher ?	mà koná <i>no</i> -who is he ?

1 (2) Primary Forms + *ni*/*lá*

ni, general statement and *lá*, general interrogation occur with the following primary forms:—

- (a) Verbal nouns used as the subjective complements
- (b) Main Verbs in *ni`ngái*, "worth doing"

Examples :—

<i>ni</i> -general statement	<i>lá</i> -general interrogation
(a) cophù osi` okàibo odù <i>ni</i> -this pitcher is the one that is broken	cophù osi` okàibo odù <i>rá</i> -is this pitcher is the one that is broken ?
ho`i osi` omúnbo odù <i>ni</i> -this fruit is the one that is ripe	ho`i osi` omúnbo odù <i>rá</i> -is this fruit the one that is ripe ?
(b) modù kho`nnoni`ngái <i>ni</i> -that is worth considering	modù kho`nnoni`ngái <i>rá</i> -is that worth considering ?
mosi` yéngni`ngáini`-this is worth seeing	mosi` yéngni`ngáirá is this worth seeing ?

1 (3) Negative Present Indefinite forms of *ni`*

ni`, general statement takes the following negative present indefinite forms :—

- (a) *nottè*, general statement (*ni` + φ*, TM + *to*, negation + *ni`*, marker of form)
- (b) *nottàborá*, general interrogation (*ni` + φ*, TM + *to*, negation + *pə*, infinitive marker + *lá*, general interrogation)

nottè, general statement and *nottàborá*, general interrogation occur with the nominal and primary forms associated with *ni`*, general statement.

nottè, general statement

mosi` o`k nòttè-this is not a pig

mi` osi` ongàobə ədù nòttè-this person is not the one who is mad

mosi` yéngni`ngái nòttè-this is not worth seeing

nottà`borá, general interrogation

mosi` o`k nòttàborá-is not this a pig ?

mi` osi` ongàobə ədù nòttàborá-is not this person the one who is mad ?

mosi` yéngni`ngái nòttàborá-is not this worth seeing ?

1 (4) *ni`*, general statement as the marker of verbs

ni`, general statement functions as the marker of the verbs in *kodə`u*, "shall"/"will" and *kodə`u* "must".

párc`mgoni`-we/you/they will have read

pákhigoni`-we/you/they will be reading

páro`mgodə`uboni`-we/you/they must have read

pákhigodə`uboni`-we/you/they must be reading

1 (5) *lá*, general interrogation as the marker of general interrogation

lá, general interrogation functions as the marker of general interrogation for the interrogative verbs in the three tenses and some tense forms. Thus *lá*, general interrogation replaces *ni`*, general statement in the verbs in *kodə`u* "shall"/"will" and "kodə`u" when general interrogation is expressed.

ni`, general statement

író'mgòáí` we/you/they will have written

íkhi`gòní`-we/you/they will be writting

író'mgòdò'ubòní`-we / you / they must have written

íkhi`gòdò'ubòní`-we/you/they must be writing

lá, general interrogation

író'mgòdòrá-will we/you/they have written ?

íkhi`gòdòrá- will we/you/they be writting ?

író'mgòdò'ubòrá-must we/ you/ they have written ?

íkhi`gòdò'ubòrá-must we/you/ they be writting ?

1 (6) *no`, qualified interrogation as emphatic replacive marker of qualified interrogation*

no`, qualified interrogation functions as the emphatic replacive marker of qualified interrogation. In such case, no may replace kè, marker of qualified interrogation in the interrogative verbs in the aspects of three tenses and some tense forms other perfect aspect.

*general forms**in kè`**emphatic forms**in no`**meanings*

íribògè

íribòno`

why are we/you/they reading ?

író'mlibògè

író'm'ibòno`

why were we/you/they reading ?

íkhi`gòdògè

íkhi`gòdòbòno`

why will we/you/they be reading ?

2 *lò'i, ngái, ói*

lò'i, ngái and ói express 'be' in the indefinite and perfect aspects of the three tenses taking the conjugated forms for these tense aspects. Such conjugated forms of these verbs occur with the nominal forms.

(a) *lò'i*

ká òsì'dò ó'mbári òní` lò'i-there are two almirahs in this room

úmo'ng odùdò kò'i òmo lò'író'ml`-there was a tiger in that forest

(b) *ngái*

kóléz odùdò ózá toràto mòngáirè-there have been only ten teachers in that college

yùm odùdò nùpà omoto mòngáirò'mí`-there was only one man in that family

(c) *ói*

binóy ózá óírí-Binoy is a teacher

bimól kírání óirò'mí`-Bimol was a clerk

2 (1) *lò'i*, emphatic replative marker

lò'i functions as the emphatic replative marker of the durative aspects of three tenses. In such case, the forms of *lò'i* for the indefinite perfect and durative aspects of the three tenses occur with the main verbs in *tùno*, primary suffix.

<i>general forms</i>	<i>emphatic forms</i>	<i>meanings</i>
<i>írí</i>	<i>ídúno lò'i</i> <i>ídúno lò'irè</i> <i>ídúno lò'irí</i>	we/you/they are writting
<i>író'mlí</i>	<i>ídúno lò'irò'mí`</i> <i>ídúno lò'irò'mlè</i> <i>ídúno lò'irò'mlí</i>	we/you/they were writting
<i>íkhi`goni`</i>	<i>ídúno lò'igoni`</i> <i>ídúno lò'irò'mgoni`</i> <i>ídúno lò'íkhi`goni`</i>	we/you/they will be writting

2 (2) *ngài*, emphatic suffix

ngài functions as the emphatic suffix. It is suffixed to the infinitive forms of the main verbs in the durative and perfect durative aspects followed by *odù/osi`*. In such case, *po*, in the main verbs and *-o* in *odù/osi`* may remain or be dropped.

<i>general forms</i>	<i>emphatic forms</i>	<i>meanings</i>
<i>írí</i>	<i>íribo odù ngài/irídúngài</i> <i>íribo osi` ngài/irísí`ngài</i>	we/you/they are reading

<i>general forms</i>	<i>emphatic forms</i>	<i>meanings</i>
irə'mli	irə'mlibə ɔdù ngàl/irə'mli- dùngàl irə'mlibə ɔsi` ngàl/irə'mlisi` ngàl	we/you/they were writing

2 (3) ói with verbs in ni`ngài

Conjugated forms of ói for the indefinite and perfect aspects of the three tenses occur with the main verbs in ni`ngài, "worth doing".

modù kho`anonì`ngài ói-it is worth considering

modù yéngni`ngài óiro`mgoni` it will have been worth seeing

3 lák

3 (1) lákli, emphatic replative marker

lákli is the present duration form of lák. It functions as the emphatic replative marker of the present perfect durative occurring with Nouns + to`u, auxiliary verbs in tùno, primary suffix.

<i>general forms</i>	<i>emphatic forms</i>	<i>meanings</i>
i`ràng to`uro`kli	i`ràng to`udùno lákli	we/you/they have been agitating
sébá to`uro`kli	sébá to`udúno lákli	we/you/they have been serving

4 to`u, component of the compound verbs

to`u forms the obligatory component of some simple secondary compound verbs. Some of such verbs in po are shown below :—

ci`ro`n to`ubo-flatter	nàpo`n to`ubo-proud
i`ràng to`ubo-agitate	tho`u to`ubo-appease evil spirit
lo`uno`m/no`mthàk to`ubo- deceive	tho`ugo`n to`ubo-ensure personal security of the king
làihò`u to`ubo-suffer from fever	tho`uràng to`ubo-arrange
lán to`ubo-wage war	úsín to`ubo-find a scape goat
moro`i to`ubo-argue	wàkhò`n to`ubo-think

Noun words of Indo-Aryan origin form the compound verbs with to`u.

bónán to'ubo-spell a word
 bártón to'ubo-invite
 bicár to'ubo-hear a case in the
 court

pró'mán to'ubo-prove
 púzá to'ubo-worship

phágí to'ubo-cut jokes
 phársí to'ubo-hang till death
 sébá to'ubo-serve

sói to'ubo-append signature
 zói to'ubo-conquer

Compound verbs with to'u express the indefinite and perfect aspects of the three tenses when to'u is conjugated for such aspects of these tenses.

i'ràng to'urè-we/you/they have agitated
 tho'uràng to'urè-mi'-we/you/they arranged

4 (2) to'u, component of the verbal compounds

to'u forms the obligatory component of the verbal compounds expressing some relational words. In such case, conjugated forms of to'u for the indefinite and perfect aspects of the three tenses occur with the main verbs+relational words.

khàrò'p to'urè

khàto'k to'urè

khàrí khàrí to'urè

khàbói khàdóbói to'urè

} it has been a little bitter

khàbói làkpói to'urè

khàgúm khàdógúm to'urè

khàgúm lákkúm to'urè

yo'uni'ngci't to'urè

} we/you/they have been on the
 verge of reaching

yo'uni'ng yo'umàng to'urè

5 ngo'm

5 (1) Conjugated forms of ngo'm

ngo'm takes the following conjugated forms :—

(a) ngo'mgoni', "can" (future indefinite form)

(b) ngo'mlo'mgoni', "could" (future perfect form)

5 (2) ngo'mgni', can

ngo'mgoni' "can" expresses four aspects occurring with the infinitive forms of the main verbs in such aspects.

páro'mbo ngo'mgoni'-we/you/they can have read
 pákhi'bo ngo'mgoni'--we/you/they can be reading

(3) ngo'mlo'mgoni', could

ngo'mlo'mgoni', "could" expresses perfect aspect occurring with the infinitive form of the main verbs.

pábo ngo'mlo'mgoni'-we/you/they should have read
 sábo ngo'mlo'mgoni'-we/you/they could have made

5 (4) ngo'm expressing 'able'

Ngo'm expresses "able" in the indefinite and perfect aspects of the present and past tenses. In such case, conjugated forms of ngo'm for these aspects of the two tenses occur with the infinitive form of the main verbs.

pábo ngo'mlè-we/you/they have been able to read
 pábo ngo'mlè-we/you/they had been able to read

6 tho'k

6 (1) tho'k:i', "should"

Present indefinite form of tho'k is tho'k:i', "should"

tho'k:i', "should" expresses four aspects occurring with the main verbs in such aspects and pho'm, primary suffix.

páro'mpho'm tho'k:i'-we/you/they should have read
 pákhi'pho'm tho'k:i'-we/you/they should be reading

7 yá

7 (1) Conjugative forms of yá

yá takes the following conjugated forms :—

- (a) yá-i', 'may' (present indefinite forms)
- (b) yáro'mgoni', 'might' (future perfect form)

7 (2) yá:i', may

yá:i', 'may' expresses four aspects occurring with the infinitive forms of the main verbs in such aspects.

páro'mbo yá:i'-we/you/they may have read
 pákhi'bo yá:i'-we/you/they may be reading

7 (3) yáro'mgoni', might

yáro'mgoni', "might" expresses perfect aspects occurring with the infinitive form of the main verbs,

pábo yáro'mgoni`-we/you/they might have read
 sábo yáro'mgoni-we/you/they might have made

7 (4) yá expressing "possible"

yá expresses "possible" in the indefinite and perfect aspects of the present and past tenses occurring with the infinitive form of the main verbs.

yári, present durative form expresses "possible" in the present indefinite, yáro'mi, past indefinite form expresses "possible" in such tense aspect.

pábo yári-it is possible to read
 pábo yáro'mi-it was possible to read

Conjugated forms of yá for the perfect aspect of the present and past tenses express "possible" in such aspects of these tenses.

pábo yárè-it has been possible to read
 pábo yáro'mlè-it had been possible to read

8 tá

8 (1) tá with the Nominal forms

tá expresses "be" in the indefinite and perfect aspects of the three tenses. In such case, conjugated forms of tá for these aspects of the three tenses occur with the nouns used as the subjective complements.

birén phàdo`k tárè-Biren has been a prisoner
 bínóy,di` lo`ibàk mocà tá,i`-Binoy is a gentle man
 pùng`mongà tárogoni`-it will be five o'clock.

8 (2) tá, obligative tense

tá, obligative tense expresses the indefinite aspect. In such case, conjugated forms of tá for the indefinite and perfect aspects of the three tenses occur with the infinitive form of the main verbs.

pábo tá:i`/tárè-we/you/they have to read
 pábo táro'mi`/táro'mlè-we/you/they had to read
 pábo tágoni`/táro'mgoni`-we/you/they will have to read

9 Auxillary Verbs as the Emphasisers

Auxiliary verbs other than lá and ngo'm function as the emphasisers forming the components of the emphatic verbal compounds in the aspects of the tenses and tense forms. They occur as the emphatic replacive markers of the tenses, tense forms, and verbal forms. Use of the the auxiliary as the emphasisers will be shown in the next Section on the "Emphatic Verbs".

EMPHATIC VERBS

4. 1. 2. 6. 2 Verbs in the aspects of the tenses and tense forms signify emphasis on their meaning taking emphasisers. Such emphasisers may be classified into two groups viz., (a) emphatic infixes and (b) emphatic suffixes.

4. 1. 2. 6. 2. 1 *Emphatic Infixes*

Emphatic infixes are the monosyllabic forms, They precede the markers of the present/past tense and also the markers of aspects for the futures tense and tense forms.

The following components are also used as the emphatic infixes :—

- (a) markers of the durative and perfect durative aspects of the three tenses
- (b) four relational words viz., ci'n, ko't, to'k and tho

1 Emphatic Infixes

1 (i) kài, to't, tèk, tù

kài, to't, tèk and tù occur with a few verbs in the indefinite and perfect aspects of the three tenses.

<i>general forms</i>	<i>emphatic forms</i>	<i>meanings</i>
kàoro'mi`	kàokhàiro'mi`	
	kàotho'tlo'mi`	we/you/they kicked
	kàothèklo'mi`	
	kàothùro'mi`	

<i>general forms</i>	<i>emphatic forms</i>	<i>meanings</i>
yàn:goni`	yànkhaìgoni` yànthò'tkoni` yànthèkkoni` yànthùgoni`	we/you/they will cut

1 (2/1) khi`

khi` occurs with the verbs in the following tenses :—

- (a) Verbs in the indefinite and perfect aspects of the past tense
- (b) Verbs in the future perfect

Examples :—

<i>general forms</i>	<i>emphatic forms</i>	<i>meanings</i>
(a) thàró'mi` thàró'mlè	thàkhi`ró'mi` thàkhi`ró'mlè	we/you/they sent we/you/they had sent
(b) thàró'mgoni`	thàkhi`ró'mgoni`	we/you/they will have sent

1 (2/2) khi` as the emphatic replative marker of the past tense

khi` emphatic infix functions as the emphatic replative marker of the past tense. In such case, khi` may replace lo'm, marker of the past tense in the verbs in the aspects of the past tense other than the perfect durative aspect.

<i>general forms</i>	<i>emphatic forms</i>	<i>meanings</i>
thàró'mi`	thàkhi`	we/you/they sent
thàró'mlè	thà khre`	we/you/they had sent
thàró'mli`	thàkhri`	we/you/they were sending

1 (2/3) lo, lo'm, li

lo'm and li occur with verbs in the aspects of the future tense shown against them below:—

(V = Verb in the future tense)

- (a) V, indefinite/perfect + lo
- (b) V, durative + lo'm
- (c) V, perfect/durative/perfect durative + li

Examples : —

<i>general forms</i>	<i>emphatic forms</i>	<i>meanings</i>
(a) thàgoni` thàro`mgoni`	thàrogoni` thàro`mlogoni`	we/you/they will send we/you/they will have sent
(b) thàkhi`goni`	thàro`mkhi`goni`	we/you/they will be sending ?
(c) thàro`mgoni` thàkhi`goni` thàro`kkhi`- goni`	thàro`mgodo`uri thàkhigodo`uri thàro`kkhi`go- do`uri	we/you/they will have sent we/you/they will be sending ? we/you/they will have been sending

2 Markers of Tense Aspects used as the Emphatic Infixes

Markers of the durative and perfect durative aspects of the present and future tenses and also the markers of the past durative function as the emphatic infixes occurring with stative verbs in the indefinite aspect of three tenses.

<i>general forms</i>	<i>emphatic forms</i>	<i>meanings</i>
cáowi`	cáori cáoro`kii	it was big
cáoro`mi`	cáoro`mli	it was big
cáogoni`	cáokhi`goni` cáoro`kkhi`goni`	it will be big

3 Relational Words used as the Emphatic Infixes

ci`n, ko`t, to`k and tho are the relational words. They also function as the emphatic infixes occurring with a few functive verbs in the indefinite and perfect aspects of the three tenses.

<i>general forms</i>	<i>emphatic forms</i>	<i>meanings</i>
ci`n phàrè pho`tkoni`	phàzi`nlè pho`tci`n:goni`	we/you/they have been caught it will be stitched
ko`t kho`nlè línglo`mi`	kho`n:go`tlè língkha`tlo`mi`	it has been selected it was established
to`k o kárè yónlo`mi`	káotho`klè yóntho`klo`mi`	we/you/they have forgotten we/you/they sold

<i>general forms</i>	<i>emphatic forms</i>	<i>meanings</i>
tho	khə̀'nbə'mi`	we/you/they thought
	phət:ko'ni`	we/you/they will make a passage

4. 1. 2. 6. 2. 2 EMPHATIC SUFFIXES

‡ kò, nɔ̀, nə̀, pò, tɔ̀, tɔnɔ̀. tò, yè

kò, nɔ̀, nə̀, pò, tɔ̀, tɔnɔ̀, tò and yè are emphatic suffixes. They occur with the verbs in the indefinite and durative aspects of the three tense with varying degrees of emphasis on such verbs. Emphatic suffixes other than yè also occur with verbs in the perfect aspect of the three tenses.

<i>general forms</i>	<i>emphatic forms</i>	<i>meanings</i>
iri	irikò	we/you/they are writing
	irino	
	irinè	
	iribò	
	irido	
	iridono	
	iridò	
	iriyè	we/you/they were writing
iro'mli	iro'mlikò	
	iro'mlino	
	iro'mlinè	
	iro'mlibò	
	iro'mlido	
	iro'mlidono	
	iro'm'liyè	

EMPHATIC MARKERS

4. 1. 2. 6. 2. 3 The following components are used as the emphatic markers of (a) tenses, (b) tense forms, and (c) verbal forms :—

- (a) Markers of moods—kè, sì, sonù, markers of the hortative mood
ò, marker of the imperative mood

- (b) marker of negation—to, marker of negation for present and past tenses
- (c) additive infixes—khi`, li
- (d) auxiliary verbs—lo'i, lák, ni`, no`, ngàì, óí, tá, tho`k, yá

1. Additive Infix and Auxiliary Verbs as the Emphatic Markers of the Tenses

(a) khi`, emphatic marker of past tense

khi`, additive infix functions as the emphatic replacive marker of the past tense. In such case, khi` may replace lo'm, marker of past tense in the aspects of the past tense other than the perfect durative aspect.

<i>general forms</i>	<i>emphatic forms</i>	<i>meanings</i>
iro'mi`	ikhi`	we/you/they wrote
iro'mlè	ikhrè	we/you/they had written
iro'mli	ikhri`	we/you/they were writing

(b) lo'i, emphatic marker of durative aspect of the tenses

lo'i, auxiliary verb functions as the emphatic replacive marker of the durative aspect of the three tenses. In such case, conjugated forms of lo'i for the indefinite, perfect and durative aspects of the three tenses occur with main verbs in túno, primary suffix.

<i>general forms</i>	<i>emphatic forms</i>	<i>meanings</i>
iri	idúno lo'i	we/you/they are writing
	idúno lo'irè	
	idúno lo'iri	
iro'mli	idúno lo'iro'mi`	we/you/they were writing
	idúno lo'iro'mlè	
	idúno lo'iro'mli	
ikhi`goni`	idúno lo'igoni`	we/you/they will be writing
	idúno lo'iro'mgoni`	
	idúno lo'ikhi`goni`	

(c) lákli, emphatic marker of present perfect durative

lákli, is the present durative form of lák, auxiliary verb. It functions as the emphatic replacive marker of the present perfect

durative occurring with Noun + to'u, auxiliary verb in túno, primary suffix.

<i>general forms</i>	<i>emphatic forms</i>	<i>meanings</i>
i'ràng to'uro'kli	i'ràng to'udúno lákli	we/you/they have been agitating
sébá to'uro'kli	sébá to'udúno lákli	we/you/they have been serving

2 Emphatic Replative Marker of Tense Forms

(a/1) tho'ktè, emphatic marker of "must"

tho'ktè is the negative present indefinite form of tho'k, auxiliary verb. It functions as the emphatic replative marker of "must" in the indefinite and perfect aspects occurring with the negative verbs in such aspects, to, negation and pho'm primary suffix.

<i>general forms</i>	<i>emphatic forms</i>	<i>meanings</i>
kho'nggodo'uboni'	kho'ngdopho'm tho'klè	we/you/they must know
kho'nglo'mgodo'u-boni'	kho'nglo'mdopho'm tho'ktè	we/you/they must have known

(a/2) yádè/yároi, emphatic marker of "must"

yádè is the negative present indefinite form of yá, auxiliary verb. yároi is the negative future indefinite form of yá.

yádè/yároi functions as the emphatic replative marker of "must" in the four aspects occurring with the infinitive forms of the negative verbs in such aspects and to, negation.

<i>general forms</i>	<i>emphatic forms</i>	<i>meanings</i>
iro'mgodo'uboni'	iro'mdobo yádè iro'mdobo yároi	we/you/they must have written
ikhi'godo'uboni'	ikhi'dobo yádè ikhi'dobo yároi	we/you/they must be writing

(b/1) tá:i', emphatic marker of "should"

tá:i', is the present indefinite form of tá, auxiliary verb. It functions as the emphatic replative marker of "should" in the

perfect, durative and perfect durative aspects occurring with the infinitive forms of the main verbs in such aspects.

<i>general forms</i>	<i>emphatic forms</i>	<i>meanings</i>
író'mpho'm tho'k:i`	író'mbo tá:i`	we/you/they should have written
íkhí'pho'm tho'k:i`	íkhí'bo tá:i`	we/you/they should be writing

(b/2) Markers of Hortative and Imperative Moods as emphatic markers of "should"

Markers of the hortative and imperative moods function as the emphatic replacive markers of "should" in the four aspects and the interrogation occurring with the interrogative verbs in these aspects. In such case *kè*, hortative mood first person express "should" in the second person and *—o`*, imperative mood express 'should' in the first person.

Emphatic forms in *lá*, general interrogation

- íkhí'si`rá/íkhó`rá—should we be writing ?
- íkhí`gèrá—should you be writing
- íkhí`sonùrá—should he/they be writing ?

Emphatic forms in *kè*, qualified interrogation

- íkhí'si`gè/íkhó`gè—why should we be writing ?
- íkhí`gègè—why should you be writing ?
- íkhí`sonùgè—why should he/they be writing ?

(b/3) *tó*, emphatic marker of "should"

tó, marker of negation functions as the emphatic marker of "should" and the qualified interrogation. In such case, *tó* occur with (a) *ni`*, auxiliary verbs or with (b) the infinitive form of the verbs in *di`*, emphatic case marker.

<i>general forms</i>	<i>emphatic forms</i>	<i>meanings</i>
cò'ttpho'm tho'k- pogè	cò'ttóni` cò'ttòbòdì`	why should not we go

3 Emphatic Replacive Markers of the Verbs

3 (1) Emphatic Markers replacing—î, general marker

The five auxiliary verb *viá.*, *ni.*, *ngài ói*, *tá* and *to'u* function as the emphatic replacive markers of the verbs in the present and past tenses. They may thus be used in place of *-i*, general marker of the verbs in the present and past tenses. *tá* occurs as *tái* (present indefinite form) and *to'u* takes the conjugated forms for the indefinite and perfect aspects of the three tenses.

(a) *ni*

ni. occurs with of the following types of verbs :—

- (i) infinitive forms of the main verbs in the four aspects of the present and past tenses.
- (ii) infinitive forms of the main verbs in the durative and perfect durative aspects of the present and past tenses followed by *po't*, thing, *zàt*, variety, *odù*, that, or *osi*, this (*po* in the main verbs and — *o* in *odù/osi* may remain or be dropped).

<i>general forms</i>	<i>emphatic forms</i>	<i>meanings</i>
<i>iri</i>	<i>iriboni</i> <i>iribopo'tni/iripo'tni</i> <i>iribozàtni/irizàtni</i> <i>iribo odù ni/iridùni</i> <i>i ibo osi ni/irisi'ni</i>	we/you/they are writing
<i>iro'mli</i>	<i>iro'mliboni</i> <i>iro'mlibopo'tni/iro'- mlipo'tni</i> <i>iro'mlibozàtni/iro'mlizàtni</i> <i>iro'mlibo odù ni/iro'mlidùni</i> <i>iro'mlibo osi'ni,iro'mlisi'ni</i>	we/you/they were writing

(a/1) *nottè*

nottè, is the negative present indefinite form of *ni*. It occur with the infinitive forms of the negative verbs in the indefinite aspects of the present and past tense

<i>general forms</i>	<i>emphatic forms</i>	<i>meanings</i>
<i>kho`oggi</i>	<i>kho`ngdobo nottè</i>	we/you/they know
<i>kho`nglo'mi</i>	<i>kho`nglo'mdobo nottè</i>	we/you/they knew

(b) ngàì

ngàì, occurs with the infinitive forms of the verbs in the durative and perfect durative aspects of the present and past tenses followed by *odù*, that or *osi*, this. In such case, *po* in the main verbs and —o in *odù/osi* may remain or be dropped.

<i>general forms</i>	<i>emphatic forms</i>	<i>meanings</i>
<i>irí</i>	<i>iríbo odù ngàì/irídùngàì</i>	we/you/they are
	<i>iríbo osi`i ngàì/irísi`ngàì</i>	writing
<i>iró`mli`</i>	<i>iró`mlibo odù ngàì/iró`mliùdùngàì</i>	we/you/they were
	<i>iró`mlibo osi`ngàì/iró`mlisi`ngàì</i>	writing

(c) ói, táì

ói and táì are suffixed to the infinitive forms of the main verbs in the four aspects of the present and past tenses. In such case, these verbal compounds with ói/táì are used only in the second and third persons.

<i>general forms</i>	<i>emphatic forms</i>	<i>meanings</i>
<i>irí</i>	<i>iríbói</i>	you/they are writing
	<i>iríbo dáì</i>	
<i>iró`mli`</i>	<i>iró`mli bóì</i>	you/they were writing
	<i>iró`mli bo dáì</i>	

(d) to`udè

to`udè is the negative present indefinite form of to`u, auxiliary verb. It occurs with the infinitive forms of the negative verbs in the indefinite aspect of the present and past tenses.

<i>general forms</i>	<i>emphatic forms</i>	<i>meanings</i>
<i>kho`nggi`</i>	<i>kho`ngdobo to`udè</i>	we/you/they know
<i>kho`nglo`mi`</i>	<i>kho`nglo`mdobo to`udè</i>	we/you/they knew

(d/1) to`u with the Reduplicated Compound Verbs

Negative forms of to`u, auxiliary verb for the indefinite and perfect aspects of the three tenses negate the reduplicated compound verbs in these aspects of the three tenses. In such case, these reduplicated compound verbs take infinitive forms.

<i>general forms</i>	<i>emphatic forms</i>	<i>meanings</i>
<i>kho`iràng kho`isáodè</i>	<i>kho`iràng kho`isáobo to`udè</i>	we/you/they are not moody

<i>general forms</i>	<i>emphatic forms</i>	<i>meanings</i>
lo'isi' lo'itho'ndè	lo'isi' lo'itho'nbò to'udè	we/you/they do not praise
lo'mkèt lo'mháidè	lo'mkèt lo'mháibo to'udè	we/you/they are not obstinate
pùkmén páoméndè	pùkmén páoménbò to'udè	we/you/they do not console
ti'nzén làicèndè	ti'nzén làicènbò to'udè	we/you/they do not suffer from chronic disease

3 (2) Emphatic Markers replacing ni', general marker

(a) —i', emphatic replative marker

—i', general marker of the verbs in the present and past tenses functions as the emphatic replative marker of the verbs in the aspect of the future tense other than the indefinite aspect. In such case, these emphatic verbs take li, emphatic infix,

<i>general forms</i>	<i>emphatic forms</i>	<i>meanings</i>
irò'mgoni'	irò'mgodo'uri	we/you/they will have written
ikhi'goni'	ikhi'godo'uri	we/you/they will be writing
irò'kkhi'goni'	irò'kkhi'godo'uri	we/you/they will have been writing

(b) nottè, emphatic replative marker

nottè is the negative present indefinite form of ni', auxiliary verb. It functions as the emphatic replative marker occurring with the infinitive form of the negative verb in the future indefinite.

<i>general forms</i>	<i>emphatic forms</i>	<i>meanings</i>
kho'ngoni'	kho'nglòido'ubò nottè	we/you/they will know

3 no' replacing kè, marker of qualified interrogation

no' functions as the emphatic replative marker of the qualified interrogation. In such case, no' may replace kè, marker of qualified interrogation in the verbs in the aspects of the three tenses other than the perfect aspect.

<i>general forms</i>	<i>emphatic forms</i>	<i>meanings</i>
írìbògè	írìbòno`	why are we/you/they writing
íro`mlìbògè	íro`mlìbòno`	why were we/you/they writing
íkhi`gòdògè	íkhi`gòdòbòno`	why will we/you/they be writing ?

4. 1. 2. 6. 3 COORDINATION OF VERBS

In a sentence with more than one verb, such verbs can be conjoined by using *òmòsùng* ‘and’ when the Subject is the same.

Shám lák:i` + Shyam phò`mì` > Shyam lák:i` *òmòsùng* phàmì`-
‘‘Shyam comes and sits’’

Rámno págoni` + Rámno ígoni` > Rámno págoni` *òmòsùng*
ígoni`-‘‘Ram will read and write’’

When there are more than one verbal compound in the same sentence, they may also be conjoined by using *òmòsùng*, ‘and’ provided the subject is the same. In such case, the auxiliary verb in the first verbal compound is deleted.

mohàk pábo ngo`mgoni` + mohàk íbo ngo`mgoni` > mohàk pábo
òmòsùng íbo ngo`mgoni`-‘‘he can read and write’’.

mohàk láklo`mbo yá:i` + mohàk phò`mlo`mbo yá:i` > mohàk
láklo`mbo *òmòsùng* phò`mlo`mbo yá:i`-‘‘he may have come
and sat’’.

DERIVATIVES

4. 1. 2. 6. 4 Verbal nouns, verbal qualifiers and modifiers are derived from the verbs. Some adverbs and conjunctions are also derived from the verbs.

1. Modifiers

Modifiers are derived from the roots of verbs by adding to such roots the following markers :—

(a) *logo*, ‘after doing’

(b) *lo`máádo*, ‘on the eve of doing’

- (c) *nobo*, 'in order to do' (*no* in *nobo* may be repeated)
- (d) *podɔ*, 'in doing' (*po*, marker of infinitive + *tɔ*, locative)
- (e) *túnɔ/tónɔ/no*, 'doing' (*no* cases reduplication of the modifiers)
- (f) *no*, "ly" as "kindly" (*no* occurs only with the stative verbs)

Examples :—

- (a) *párago*, after reading
- (b) *páro'mdáido*-on the eve of reading
- (c) *pá:nónobo*-in order to read
- (d) *pábodo*-in reading
- (e) *pádúnɔ/pádónɔ/páno páno*-reading
- (f) *páno*-thinly
páknɔ-widely

débéɛ cák cárago lákkoni`-Deben will come after taking his meal

dámúnɔ síró'mdáido nóng táro'mi`-it rained on the eve of Damu's death

gópáno pá:á pá:nónobo màgi kádo pho'mlo'mi`-Gopal sat in his room to read his lessons.

mádho'pno thobo'k sùbodo opo'no khoro théngnoro'mi`-Madhop met some obstacles in doing that work

módhúno wàri` pádúnɔ/pádónɔ/páno páno moto'm lèno'mi`-Modhu spent his times reading the story

syámno tò'pno cò'tlo'mi`-Shyam went slowly.

1 (2) Segmental similarity between the modifiers in *no* and primary/derived adverbs in *no*

There is segmental similarity between the modifiers in *no* "ly" as in "kindly" and the primary/derived adverbs in *no*, [instrumental].

(a) modifiers in *no*

cúmno-correctly

cèno-firmly

ko'mno-loosely

síngno-wisely

tò'pno-slowly

tèno-briefly

lúmno-heavily
lâino-easily
nânno-neatly
pânno-thinly
pâkno-widely

tônno-humbly
tho'uno-bravely
thânno-thickly
tho'tno-tenderly
wángno-highly

(b) Primary adverbs in no
hénno-more

yámno-much, very

(c) derived adverbs in no

hánno-already
kónno-later
lâpno-far
no'kno-near
phono-well

tóino-often
tháino-long ago
thino-ill
thúno-soon
yàngno-fast

1 (3) co/pi', honorific person

co, honorific first person and pi', honorific second/third person may occur with the verbal modifiers other than those in no, "by" as in "kindly". In such case, these modifiers have accord with the persons of the subjects in the sentences.

Forms in co

Forms in pi'

meanings

irorogo

ibi'rogo

after writing

iró'mdáido

ibi'ró'mdáido

on the eve of writing

izonobo

ibi'nobo

in order to write

izobodo

ibi'bodo

in writing

izodúno

ibi'dúno

writing

o'i càk càzorogo cò'tcagè-let me go after having meal

o'ina thobo'k sùzoro'mdáido odo'mbú ko'uzo'i-I call you on the eve of my doing the work

odo'mno binóybú pángbi'nobo bírén thàbi'ro'kri'-you send Biren to help Binoy

odo'mao so'iréng ibi'bodo káncipúr ni'si'ngbi'yù-Please remember Kanchipur in writing the poems

odo'mno sén thàbi'ro'ktúno o'ikho'ibú pángbi'khi'-you helped us sending money to us

2 to, negation with the Derivatives

to, marker of negation occurs with the five types of the derivatives viz., verbal nouns, verbal qualifiers, adverbs, conjunctions and modifiers.

2 (1) to, negation with the verbal nouns

to, negation occurs with some verbal nouns in po.

kho'ngdobo, ignorance; kho'ngdobodì pámbo'i omo ni'-ignorance is bliss

ngo'mdobo; inability; ngo'mdobodì ngàkpi'goni'-inability will be excused

oidobo. lie; oidobo ngànggonù-don't tell lies

óitho'ktobo, impossibility; óitho'ktobodì búdúsíngí dèk-sónáridoto yáowi-impossibility is found only in the dictionary of the fools

pángdobo, cowardice; pángdoboŋo i'káibo no'ngbo'ni'-cowardice brings shame.

péndobo, discontent; pëndoboŋo i'ràng odù ho'uh'o'nbóni'-discontent causes the agitation.

séngdobo, impurity; séngdobodì oséagbodagi khènnò'i-impurity is different from purity

2 (2) to, negation with the verbal qualifiers

to, negation occurs with some functive verbal qualifiers in li, durative aspect and po. In such case, these qualifiers express perfect aspect.

kho'ngdribo wàpho'm-unknown matter

li'dribo wàri'-untold story

lórdribo thobo'k-unfinished task

po'ktribo oŋgàng-unborn baby

pho'ngdribo láiri'k-unpublished book

pho'tribo phí-unstitched cloth

phùtribo yérùm-unboiled egg

2. (3) to with the adverbs

to, negation occurs with a few derived adverbs, nottono-'except' (ni, be)

photto'no-"ill" (pho, good) ; məkho'ino módhúbú pho'ttono
ngàngno'-they speak ill of Modhu

yámdonq-"less" (yám, many) ; mádho'pti` yámdono
pho'ngi`-Madhop gets less

yámdro'bodo-"at least" ; yámdro'bodo bírenno lúpà torá
pho'nggoni`-Biren will get at least ten rupees

i'kho'ng kho'ng:ho'udono-"all of sudden" (kho'ng, know)
i'to't to'ttono-"often" (to't, break)

2 (4) to with the conjunctions

to, negation occurs with a few derived conjunctions.
nottro'go-"or" (ni`, be) ; ram nottro'go syám-Ram or
Shyam

nottro'bodi`-"if not", "otherwise" ; pábúngi páoták insi`,
nottro'bodi` sáogoni`-let us obey our father's advice, other-
wise he will be angry

lá nottro'go... lá omo, "either ... or", módhúra nottro'go
mádho'plá omo either Modhu or Madhop

to nottono... sù, "not only but also" ; rámta nottono syámsù
cotpo yázi`-not only Ram but also Shyam may go

2 (5) to with the modifiers

to, negation occurs with the modifiers in (a) nobo-"in
order to do", (b) pado, "in doing" and túno, "doing". In such
case, túno expresses "without doing" and is changed into tono.

pá:donobo in order not to read

pá:dobodo-in not reading

pá:donono-without reading

bínóyno gópálgo ú:nadonobo moyúmdagi co'ttho'klo'mi`-
Binoy went out of his home in order not to see Gopal

bírenno so'iréng idobodo po'tthapho'm kho'nglo'mdè-Biren
was restless in not wrtling poems

gópáino wapho'm odù kho'ngdonq ngànglo'mi`-Gopal spoke
without knowing the matter

2 (5/1) *təno*, "without doing" and *təno*, "doing"

There is segmental similarity between *təno*, "without doing" and *təno*, "doing". *tə*, negation is an a'onic syllable and is thus not stressed. *tə* in *təno*, "doing" is compressed from *tú* in *lúno*; "doing" and thus stressed.

kho`ngdəno, without knowing

↓

kho`ngdəno, knowing

2 (5/2) *cə/pi`*, honorific person + *tə* negation

cə/pi`, honorific person may occur with the negative modifiers

negative forms

negative forms

meanings

in *cə*

in *pi`*

izədəno

ibi`dəno

in order not to write

izədəbədə

ibi`dəbədə

in not writing

izədəno

ibi`dəno

without writing

ə`ino bímólgə úgəzədəno *ə`igi káde phə`mzə`mi`*-I sat in my room in order not to see Bimol

ə`ikho`idi` thəbək suzəbədə *pə`thəphə`m kho`ngzadə*-we are restless in not doing works

ə`ikho`ino pánzi yéngdəno iskúlgí zátá húnəbóni`-we lay the foundation stone of the school without consulting the astrologer

ədə`mə bínó) bú fəngbi`dəno *wəphə`i ngəngbi`ri`*-you are speaking irrelevant things not to help Binoy

ədə`mɔi` sə`iréng idəbədə *núgəck núgənbə`rə`mgəni`*-you will have been melancholous in not writing poems

gópálnə məcànùpə tàkpi`dəno yəm si`də`kpi`rə`mi`-Gopal dismantled the house without informing his son

3 Primary affixes with the Derivatives

Nine primary infixes viz., *cə*, *ci`*, *kə`*, *kəi*, *nə*, *pi`*, *tək*, *tə* and *thi`* may occur with some of the verbal nouns, verbal qualifiers and modifiers.

C—, Primary prefix also occurs with some of the verbal nouns and verbal qualifiers.

3 (1) Primary Affixes with the Verbal Nouns

— ɔ—ɔcúmbo, truth; ɔcúmbo ngàngs'i, let us speak the truth
 ɔp'ubo, obstacles; ɔ'p'o'nbasing ɔsi lo'uthókodoboni,
 these obstacles must be removed.

co— o'izabo, advantage; o'izabo khoró lákkon'i,
 some advantages will come
 tházabo, confidence; tházabono cánnabo p'ok:h'onli, con-
 fidence promotes intimacy.

ein— 'ins'inbo, instigation; màikoi khorodogi 'insinbono kh'otnobo
 odù th'ok:h'onbon'i, instigation from some quarters causes
 the quarrel.

tins'inbo, addition; tins'inbod'i kháidokpodogi kh'ennon'i
 addition is different from subtraction.

ka't— cáokh'otpo, progress; cáokh'otpod'i ɔhúngbono púr'okkon'i
 changes will bring progress.

thág'otpo, praise; thág'otpod'i láphàobo súmh'otli, praise
 captivates even the gods.

kài— p'okkhàibo, explosion; hén b'omb pokkhàibono khúnzàsing-
 bú mípáihonli, explosion of the hand granedes causes panic
 among the villagers.

y'cikhaibo, obstacles; y'ikhaibono thob'okki kh'ongc'ot
 t'op:h'onli obstacles delay the progress of the work.

no— kho'nnobo, discussion; kh'onnobono kh'annobo k'ok:h'onli
 discussion removes the difference
 tánno-bo, competition; tánnobono lolón i'tik cáokh'ot:h'onli;
 competition promotes trade.

pi— ngàkp'ibo, forgiveness; ngàkp'ibod'i ɔrémbogi khùd'o'm n'i,
 forgiveness is the badge of nobility,
 to mb'ibo, teaching; to'mb'ibod'i ɔzagi ma'ho'u n'i, teaching
 is the duty of the teacher.

tok— cáoth'okpo, pride; cáoth'okpod'i dós ɔmo n'i, pride is a fault.
 kháid'okpo, subtraction; kháid'okpod'i tins'inbodogi khè-
 nn'ɔi, subtraction is different from addition.

tho— c'okthobo, fatigue; c'okthobona bírénbú c'otpo ngo'mh ondré,
fatigue renders Biren unable to go.

s'othobo, backwardness, s'othobona cáokh'otpo th'inh'èni,
backwardness delays progress.

th'i— khúdóng th'ibo, danger; khúdóng th'ibo pùnmom'ok máiy'o-
knogodo'ubon'i, all the dangers must be faced.

no'mth'ibo, foul smell; nomth'ibo odúno mór'om oídúno, due
to the foul smell.

3 (2) Primary Infixes with the Verbal Qualifiers

—o— opumbo ngà, rotten fish;

ophùtpo yerùm, boiled egg

co— phozobo loi, beautiful flower,

thàzobo mórùp, reliable friend

c'in— hàiz'inbo wàr'on, misrepresented statement;

ph'otc'inlombo phi', stitched cloth

k'ot— cáokh'otlombo lo'ibák, developed country;

pakhollabi nupi, nervous woman.

kài— sàtkàirobo l'oi, blossomed flower;

sègàirobo phi, torn cloth

no— cánnorobo mórùp, intimate friend,

kháinnorob'i tàllo'i, divorced wife.

o+no— opánnobo m'is'ok, particular person;

os'oknobo sénpho'm, fixed amount of money

pi'— cánb'ibo wàho'i, kind words;

ngàkp'irobo mórán, forgiven offence

to'k— cáoth'oklombo núpà, proud man;

'intho'klobo m'i, excommunicated person

tho— c'okthorobo núpà, tired man;

s'otthorobo mopho'm, back-ward area

thi'— sàth'irobo wàpho'm, serious matter;

to'mthir'obo m'i, cruel person

3 (3) primary Infixes with the Modifiers

co— hàizonobo, in order to request;

thàzodúno, believing

c'i'n— 'ins'ínlogo, after instigating;

tí'ns'indúno, adding

- k'ot—cáokh'otnobo, in order to make progress;
 lingkh'otúno, establishing
 kái—thúgáirogo, after breaking,
 yànkhaídúno, cutting (tree)
 no—kh'onnonobo, in order to discuss;
 tá: norogo, after consulting
 p'i—ngàkp'inobo, in order to forgive;
 to'mb'irogo, after teaching.
 to'k—kháido'knobo, in order to substract;
 láoth'oklago, after announcing
 tho—c'okthodúno, being tired;
 wánthorogo, after fainting
 thi—sáth'irogo, after being serious;
 to'mth'idúno, being cruel

3 (4) Relational Words with the Modifiers

The following relational words may occur with the modifiers other than those in no :-

- (a) c'in, k'ot, t'ok, tho
 (b) m'on, mi'no
 (c) m'ingci't, n'ing, m'ang
 (d) l'op, lí, t'ok, kúm,...lák'kúm, kúm,..., to'gúm, p'oi,..., lák'p'oi, p'oi,..., to'b'oi

Examples—

- (a) cóngs'inlago, after jumping inside, cóngth'oklago, after jumping outside, cóngkh'otlago, after jumping upwards, cóngthorogo, after jumping below
- (b) càm'ondúno, eating two much
 càm'ianodúno, eating together
- (c) y'oun'ing'c'it to'uro'mdáido, on the eve of
 yo'un'ing yo'umang to'uro'mda'ido reaching
- (d) khàr'ap to'udono,
 khàto'k to'udúno
 khàri' khàri to'udúno being a little
 khàgúm la'kkúm to'udúno bitter
 khàgúm khàdogúm to'udúno
 khàb'oi lák'p'oi to'udúno
 khàb'oi khàdob'oi to'udúno

SENTENCE

4:2:1 Simple Sentence

The simplest sentence has a nominal word (noun or noun equivalent) as a subject and a verb as a predicate

bi'réñ ph'òm'i, Biren sits

módhú lépp'i, Modhu stands

nùpà məcàs'ng sànnorə'm'i, the boys played;

nóng tágə'ni it will rain.

4. 2. 1. 1. 1. Deletion of Subject.

Subject of the verbs in the imperative mood may be deleted.

lèngb'ir'ò. (you) please go

ph'omb'is'i, please be seated

tùmmr'i; (you) sleep

4. 2. 1. 2 Adjuncts with N and V

The subject or the predicate or both may have one or more adjuncts before them.

həud'ongno c'ətl'i, the cat goes

ə p'ikpə həud'ongno t'əpnə c'ətl'i
small cat slowly goes

"The small cat goes slowly"

màgi' əp'ikpə həud'ongno yámno t'əpna c'ətl'i
his small cat very slowly goes.

"his small cat goes vary slowly"

The adjuncts to the subject may be verbal qualifiers, possessive noun or other Qualifiers described earlier in the Nominal phrase

Modifying adjuncts may be verbal Qualifiers, nominal modifiers or nouns with the case markers other than the genitive and vocative,

əb'ok ph'əm'òm'i, the grand-mother sat

əb'ok həúz'iktə tùm'innə ph'əm'òm'i, the grand-mother sat
silently just now

məhàkno məmàgi' mənàkto ph'əm'òm'i, he sat near his mother.

màhàk kh'ongno c'ətl'òm'i, he went on foot.

məhàk módhúgə sànnom'inn'oi, he plays with Modhu

úgdəgi' úná kénli, the leaf falls from the tree

4. 2. 1, 3. Sentence with the Complements

4. 2. 1. 3. 1 Sentence with the Subjective Complements

Subject + Nominal Complement + n'ì

b'írén l'òumí n'ì, Biren is a peasant

Gópál ózá n'ì, Gopal is a teacher

módhú sí'nm'ì n'ì, Modhu is a worker

The nominal complement does not take sí'ng, plural marker

o'ìkh'oi kí'tán'ì n'ì, we are clerks

nokh'oi lúci'ngba n'ì, you are leaders

mokh'oi m'ínáí n'ì, they are servants,

In a sentence with subject + nominal complement + n'ì, the complement may be defined by possessive pronouns and verbal qualifiers,

b'ínóy òig'ì mósúp n'ì, Binoy is my friend

módhóp òphóbó m'ì n'ì, Madhop is a good person

2(1) Subject+Verbal Noun+n'ì

In a sentence with subject+verbal noun+n'ì, the subject is defined by os'ì this/these and the verbal noun is qualified by, odu; that/those or by verbal qualifiers and odù, that/those.

lól os'ì onzàngbó odù n'ì, this flower is the one that is red

ngà os'ì opúmto odù n'ì- this fish is the one that is rotten

The verbal nouns in the above sentence type may express the past indefinite taking the marker of such tense aspect.

núpá os'ì ngoràng lák'ímbo odù n'ì, this man is the one who came yesterday

y'otpák os'ì ngoràng p'ir'ómbo odù n'ì, this spade is the one that was given yesterday

The verbal nouns may take p'ì, female marker having concord with the feminine gender of the subject in the sentence.

lúkhrá os'ì làiréti odù n'ì, this widow is the one who is poor

núp'ì os'ì houz'ik òs'òì s'òk'p'ì odù n'ì, this women is the one who sings now.

nùp'i mɔcà ɔs'i ngoràng láklɔmb'i ɔdù n'i, this girl is
the one who came yesterday

3. Replacement of n'i by nɔtt'e, lá etc.

In the sentence with subject + Nominal adjunct/verbal
Noun + n'i, this, n'i may be replaced by the following:—

(a) nɔttè (negative)

(b) lá (interrogative)

(c) nɔtto'rá (interrogative negative)

Examples:—

(a) bí'rén l'ɔum'i nɔttè, Biren is not a peasant

nùpi ɔs'i ngoràng láklɔmb'i ɔdù nɔttè, this woman is not
the one who came yesterday

(b) mɔs'i ɔ'k lá, is this a pig ?

nùp'a ɔs'i ɔngàɔbɔ ɔdù rá. is this man the one who is mad ?

(c) mɔdù pàt nɔtto'rá, is not this a lake ?

yerùm ɔs'i ɔphùtpɔ nɔtto'ró', is not this egg the one that
is boiled ?

4. Replacement of n'i by n'ɔ

In the sentence with subject + nominal complement + n'i,
this n'i may be replaced by n'ɔ.

mɔdù kɔnɔ n'ɔ, who is that ?

mɔs'i kɔrɔ n'ɔ, what is this ?

4. 2. 1. 3. 2 Sentence with the Direct Objects

(1) Subject + Direct Object + Verb Tr.

When transitive verbs and their objects occur, the normal word order is subject + object + predicate

nùpà mɔcàno kómlá cá:rɔ'm'i, the boy ate the orange
ɔphɔbɔ nùpàmɔcà ɔs'ino yámna thúmɔ kómlá ɔmo cá:
rɔ'm'i, this good boy ate a very sweet orange,
ɔ'tɔnbɔ nùpàmɔcà ɔdùno yámno t'ɔpno thɔb'ɔk t'ɔ'uro'm'i,
the idle boy started the work very slowly,

(2) Object + Subject + Verb

In the sentence with subject + object + verb, the object
may be placed before the subject if emphasis on the subject
is intended

məs`bú mádh`opno pámi`nè, Madhop likes this.

mocábú rádháno kó`uriyé, Radha is calling her child

mopábú mohákno káorèné, he has forgotten his father

3. Deletion of Subject

In the sentence of the above type, the subject is dropped when the idea of passive voice is expressed.

húránbo phákhre, the thief had been caught

n`oudo`ng hàtlomli, the cat had been killed

`ingkhón yónbo`mlogon`i, the homestead land will have been sold

th`ong l`oni`omlogon`i, the door will have been locked

4 Optional deletion of object

In the sentence of the above type, object may optionally be dropped,

núpámocà síngno pá`i, the boys read (lesson)

núp`imocà siagao s`c`i, the girls sing (songs)

4, 2 1, 3. 3 Sentences with the Indirect and Direct objects

When there are direct and indirect objects in the sentence, the normal word order is subject+object—dative+object—accusative+transitive verb. Dative object takes to, locative and accusative object takes pú, accusative.

mopáno mocádo sén p`i, the father gives money to his child

mocákno makh`oido tho`uno omosung pángg`on p`ir`om`i, he gave them courage and strength

moyámbano ophobo ongàng odúdo oco`ubo láir`ik omo p`i, the elder brother gives that good boy a big book

Dative object may be placed before the subject if emphasis on such object is intended.

mong`ondo n`i `ing kómlá p`ibo
to him is o orange give

It is to him that I give the orange

to you is he pen give
 It is to you that he gives the pen

4 2. 1, 3. 4 Sentences with the Direct object and objective complement

When there are object and objective complements in the sentences, the normal word order is subject + accusative object + objective complement + verb. Accusative object takes *pú*, accusative. Adjuncts to the nominal units precede such units. Adjuncts to the verb have different positions,

Khúnzàsingno birénbú lucingbo kh'ónlé,
 the villagers have elected Biren their leader
ningtho'uno brájobásibú ménzór hàplo'm'i,
 the king appointed Brajobasi the Major
mohàkki moténgno mádh'oppú 'ínàk khúnhon'i,
 his help makes Madhop rich

owàngbo phido'msing os'ino khágémbobú oth'oibo ningtho'u
omo oih'onl'om'i, those noble ideals made Khagemba a
 great king

Verbal nouns can be used as the objective complements. In such case, the verbal nouns occur with the nominal adjuncts.

gópáino láir'ik pábo mádh'opno ú:ì, Madhop see Gopal
 reading a book

modhúno o'ngk b'otpo syámno yénglo'm'i. Syam matched
 Modhu working out the sum

nùp'imocà odùno mùrùm mùrùm sònbo rádháno tàr'om'i,
 Radha heard the girl murmuring something.

4 2.1.4 Position of Adverbs in Simple Sentences

In the sentences with a single nominal phrase and a verb, the adverb precedes the verb or sometimes comes before the subj-ct.

birén ngoràng lálklo'm'i
ngoràng birén lálklo'm'i

Biren came yesterday

binóy os'ido ph'omli
os'ido binóy ph'omli'

Binoy is sitting here

In the sentences with the objects and complements or with direct and indirect objects, the adverbs can take several positions. Such positions do not cause any change in the meaning of the different elements of the sentence. But some of such positions of the adverbs signify emphasis on some elements.

rámno bírénbú os'ido kó'uro'm'i Ram called Biren here
 rámno os'ido bírénbú kó'uro'm'i
 os'ido rámno bírénbú k'áuro'm'i Syam saw Gopal yesterday
 syámno gópálbú ngoràng úró'm'i
 syámno ngoràng gópálbú úró'm'i
 ngoràng syámno gópálbú úró'm'i

COMPLEX SENTENCE

4.2.2.0 Complex Sentences consist of the following clauses:—

- (a) one or more independent clauses
- (b) one or more dependent clauses

Verbs and Verbal compounds in the independent clauses of the complex sentences are same as those in simple sentences.

Dependent clauses in the complex sentences may be classified into the following groups:—

- (a) Adjective Clauses
- (b) Relative Clauses
- (c) Adverb Clauses

Verbs and Verbal compounds in the adjective, relative and adverb clauses take replative markers in place of 'i/n'i, general marker. Such replative markers with these verbs functions both as the markers of verbal forms and Subordinators. They express "who", "whoever", "which", "whichever", "as much as", "since" etc.

Verbs and Verbal Compounds in 'i/n'i; general marker occur in the Relative clauses. They are followed by the subordinators/functioners.

Verbs and Verbal Compounds in the adverb clauses take some replative subordinators. Such subordinators are used in place of i, general marker. They express 'though', 'when', 'whenever', 'while' etc.

ADJECTIVE CLAUSE

4. 2. 2. 1 Verbs and Verbal Compounds in the adjective clauses take the following replacive markers in place of—*i/n'i*, general marker:—

(a) *pɔ*, 'who' "which", "that" (*pɔ*, marker of infinitive)

(b) *pɔgi*, 'that' (*pɔ*+*ki*, genitive)

pɔ, "who", "which", "that" and *pɔgi*, "that" replaces *i*, general marker in the following verbs and auxiliary verbs:—

(a) Verbs in the Present Tense

(b) Verbs in the Past Tense

(c) *tá:l*, obligative tense (*tá*, auxiliary verb)

(d) *th'ok:i*, "should" (*th'ok*, auxiliary verb)

(e) *yá:i*, "may" (*yá*, auxiliary verb)

pɔ, "who", "which", "that" and *pɔgi*, "that" replace *n'i*, general marker in the following verbs and auxiliary verbs:—

(a) Verbs in the future tense

(b) Verbs in *kɔdɔ'u*, "must"

(c) *ngɔ'mgon'i*, 'can' (*ngɔ'm*, auxiliary verb)

(d) *ngɔ'mbɔ'mgon'i*, "could" (*ngɔ'm*, auxiliary verb)

(e) *yáɔmgon'i*, 'might' (*yá*, auxiliary verb)

i pp, "who" "which" "that"

1 (1) Verbs/Verbal Compounds in *pɔ* expressing tenses/tense forms

(a) Verbs/Verbal Compounds

in-*i*

màno h'ɔl cá:l, he eats
the fruit

màno h'ɔl càɔ'm'l, he
ate the fruit

màno h'ɔl càbo tá:l, he
has to eat the fruit

Verbal Compounds

in *pɔ*

màno càbo h'ɔl, the fruit
that he eats

màno càɔmbɔ h'ɔl, the
fruit that he ate

màno càbo tábo h'ɔl, the
fruit that he has to eat.

máno h'oi cábo yá:i, he
may eat the fruit
máno h'oi cáph'om th'ok;i
he should eat the fruit

(b) Verbs/Verbal Compounds
in nì

máno h'oi cágon'i,
he will eat the fruit
máno h'oi càgod'ubon'i,
he must eat the fruit
máno h'oi càbo ngo'mgon'i,
he can eat the fruit
máno h'oi càbo ngo'ml'o
mgon'i,
he could have eaten the fruit
máno h'oi cab'o yár mgon'i,
he might have eaten the fruit

máno cábo yábo h'oi, the
fruit that he may eat
máno cáph'om th'okpo h'oi,
the fruit that he should eat

Verbs/Verbal Compounds
in po

máno càgod'uribo h'oi,
the fruit that he will eat
máno càgo'dubo h'oi, the
fruit that he must eat
máno cábo ng'omgodo'ubo
h'oi, the fruit that he can eat
máno cábo ng'oml'omgo-
d,ubo h'oi, the fruit that
he could have eaten
má'o cábo yár'omgodo'ubo
h'oi, the fruit that he might
have eaten.

binóyno sábo thùm'ok odù módhúno l'ogon'i, Modhu
will buy the basket that Binoy makes

càk càrombo l'oisáb'ising odù rádháno pánggon'i, Radha will
help the girls who took the meal.

débéno yónbo tábo l'ou odú syámno l'ogon'i, Syam will buy
the paddy land that Deben has to sell.

dóreno pábo yábo lárik odú gópáno p'igon'i, Gopal will
give the book that Doren may read.

dámúno sùgod'ur'ibo thob'ok odù nóbinno yéngs'ingon'i,
Nobin will supervise the work that Damu will do.

gópáno pábo ng'omgodo'ubo lair'ik odù komóno p'igon'i
Komol will give the book that Gopal can read.

módhúno yónbo yáro'mgodo'ubo láir'ik odu syámno l'oir'o-
mgod'ubon'i, Syam would have bought the book that Modhu
might have sold.

1 (2) Verbs/Verbal Compounds in po qualifying the Nouns in
the cases.

Verb and Verbal Compounds in *po*, 'who', 'which', 'that' qualify the nouns in the cases other than the genitive and the vocative.

(a) nominative

káléndo sàtpo l'oi, the flower that blooms in the summer
ngor'ang lakl'ombo nùp'i, the woman who came yesterday.

(b) accusative

biréno pábo lair'ik, the book that Biren reads.

hùrànbéno hàtl'omlombo nùp'i, the woman who had been killed by the thief.

(c) instrumental

bimcino ibo kolom the pen with which B'mol writes.

binóyina h'oi h'okpo c'oi, the stick with which Binoy plucks the fruit.

(d) locative

débénno tùm'l'ombo ká, the room in which Deben slept;
gópáino c'otkodo'luribo moph'om, the place where Gopal will go.

(e) ablative

monà kémlombo ú:sing, the trees from which the leaves have shed.

sén múb'ikhro'bo nùp'ising, the women from whom money had been snatched away.

(f) dative

mohàk kidom'ok débénno láir'ik p'ikh'ibo nùpà, the man for whom Deben gave the book,

mohàkkidom'ok syámno sén p'ikh'ibo morup, the friend for whom Syam gave money.

1(3) Verbs/Verbal compounds in *po*, expressing Persons and Negation

Some Verbs and Verbal Compounds in *po*, with *co/p'i*; Person and *to/l'oi*, negation are shown below:—

(a/1) cə, honorific first person

o'ino sùzəbə thəb'ək, the work that I do

o'ino sùzəro'mbə thəb'ək, the work that I did

ə'ino sùzəbə yábə thəb'ək, the work that I may do

(a/2) p'i, honorific second/third person

odómno sùb'igədu'ribo thəb'ək, the work that you will do

od'omno sùb'ibo ng'əmgədu'ubo thəb'ək, the work that you
can do

odomno sùb'ibo yáro'mgədu'ubo thəb'ək, the work that
might have done.

(b/1) tə, negation

o'ino sùdəbə thəb'ək, the work that I do not do

o'ino sùro'mdəbə thəb'ək, the work that I did not do

ə'ino sùdəbə yábə thəb'ək, the work that may not do

(b/2) cə/p'i, person+ə, negation

o'ino sùzədəbə thəb'ək, the work that I do not do

o'ino sùzəro'mdəbə thəb'ək, the work that I did not do

od'omno sùb'idəbə thəb'ək, the work that you do not do

od'omno sùb'iro'mdəbə thəb'ək, the work that you did not
do

(c/1) loi, negation

o'ino sùbido'uribo thəb'ək, the work that I will not do

ə'ino sùbə ng'əmlóido'ubo thəb'ək, the work that I cannot
do

ə'ino sùbə yár'əmlóido'ubo thəb'ək, the work that I might
not have done

(c/2) cə/p'i, person+loi, negation

o'ino sùzəro'ido'uribo thəb'ək, the work that I shall not do

ə'ino sùzəbə ng'əmlóido'ubo thəb'ək, the work that I cannot do

od'omno sùb'io ng'əml'əmlóido'ubo thəb'ək, the work that
you could not have done

ed'omno súb'ibo yáso'mlòidóúbo thob ok, the work that you might not have done

1/4) Verbs/Verbal Compounds in po defined by the Modifiers in po. Verbs and Verbal compounds in po defined by the modifiers are shown below:—

khùtsùmo'n tándúno moyùm thàkpo m'ising, the person who maintain their families earning the wage

khùtsùmo'n tándúno moyùm thàkpo yábo m'ising, the persons who may maintain their families earning the wage

khùtsùmo'n tándúno moyùm thàkkodo'uribo m'ising, the persons who will maintain their families earning the wage

khùtsùmo'n tándúno moyùm thaákp ngo'mgodo'ubo m'ising the persons who can maintain their families earning the wage

() Emphatic Verbs of the Adjective Clauses

(a) p'i, emphatic replacive marker

p'i, female marker may optionally replace po, 'who', 'w' 'that' in the verbs and verbal compounds when such v and verbal compounds qualify the human nouns in the feminine gender.

general forms	emphatic forms	meanings
thob'ok súro'mbo	thob'ok súro'mb'i	the women
nùp'ising	nùp'ising	who did the work

thob'ok súbo ngo'm-	thob'ok súbo ng'om-	the women who can
g'oubo nùp'ising	godo'ub'i nùp'ising	do the work

(b) hàibo, emphatic replacive marker

hàibo is the emphatic replacive marker used in place of po, 'who', 'which', 'that'. It is the indefinite form of hàì, say and functions as the functor or subordinator following the conjugated verbs in the indefinite aspect of the three tenses,

general tenses	emphatic tenses in	meanings
in po	in hàibo	
màno pángbo	m'ino páng'i	the person whom
m'i	hàibo m'i	he helps

màno pánglò'mbò m̀i	màno pánglò'm̀i	the person whom
	hàibo m̀i	he helped
màno pànggòdò'uribòm̀i	màno pànggoǹi	the person whom
	hàibòm̀i	he will help
birénno pá:i hàibo láir'ík odù gópàldò p'ìrogò,	let me give	
Gopal that book that Biren reads		
syàmnà hàtlò'm̀i hàibo nùpà odù púlísno phàre,	the police	
has arrested the man who killed Syam		

2 pogi', that

pogi, that occurs with the verbs and verbal compounds of the adjective clauses in the aspects of the tenses and tense forms. In such case, these verbs and verbal compounds qualify a few inanimate nouns like páo, news, thòud'òk, event, wàr'i, story etc.

(a) Verbs/Verbal Compounds in i	Verbs/Verbal Compounds in pogi
mà láksi; he came	má lákpogi páo, the news that he comes
mà láklò'm̀i, he came	mà láklò'mbogi páo, the news that he came
mà lákpò:tá'i he has to come	mà lákpò:tábogi páo the news that he has to come
mà lákpo yá:i, he may come	mà lákpo yábogi páo, the news that he may come
má lákphò'm th'òk'i, he should come	mà lákphò'm th'òkpogi páo the news that he should come
(b) Verbs/Verbal Compounds in-ǹi	Verb/Verbal Compounds in pogi
mà lákkoǹi, he will come	ma lakkòdòubogi pao, the news that he will come

mà lákkodcubon'i, he
must come

mà lákpo ngo'mgon'i. he
can come

mà lákpo ngo'mlo'mgon,i, he
could have come

mà lákpo yáro'mgon'i. he might
have come

ma lakko'do'ubogi pao, the
news that he must come

mà lákpo ngo'mgodo'ubogi,
páo, the news that he can
come

mà lákpo ngo'mlo'mgodo'u-
bagi páo, the news that he
could have come

mà lákkpo yáro'mgodo'ubo-
gi páo, the news that he might
have come

birenno huranbo hatpogi pao syam nosu tai, Syam hears
the news that Biren killed the thief

binóyno khutsumon phongpho'm th'okpogi wàr'i gópáino* táso
nú, let Gopal hear the story that Binoy should get his wage

bímóino ko'i pho'bo ngo'mgodo'ubagi páo modhunosu tai,
Modhu hears the news that Bimol can catch the tiger

2.2) hàibo, emphatic replative marker

hàibo, emphatic replative marker may replace pogi, hat
In such case, hàibo follows the conjugated verbs and verbal
compounds of the adjective clauses.

generals forms	emphatic forms	meanings
mà lákpogi páo	mà lák:ì hàibo páo	the news that he comes
mà lákpo yábogi -pho	mà lákpa yái hàibo pao	the news that he may come
mà lákpo ngo'mgo- do'ubogi páo	mà lákpo ngo'mgoni- go hàibo páo	the news that he can come

RELATIVE CLAUSE

4.2.2.2 Verbs and Verbal Compounds of the relative clauses take the following markers in place of 'i/n'i, general marker:—

- a) po od'i, 'what' (po, marker of infinitive+odù, that)
- b) posing odù, 'whoever' 'those who', 'whatever,, (po+sing, plural marker+odù, that)

The two replacive markers shown above replace 'i, general marker in the following verbs and auxiliary verbs:—

- a) Verbs in the present tense
- b) Verbs in the past tense
- c) tá:i, obligative tense (tá, auxiliary verb)
- d) th'ok:i, should (th'ok, auxiliary verb)
- e) yá:i, may (yá, auxiliary verb)

The two replacive markers replace n'i, general marker in the following verbs and auxiliary verbs:—

- a) Verbs in the future tense
- b) Verbs in kado'ú, must
- c) ngo'mgon'i, can (ngo'm, auxiliary verb)
- d) ngo'lo'mgon'i, could (ngom, auxiliary verb)
- e) yáro'mgon'i, might (yá, auxiliary verb)

In the relative clauses, verbs and auxiliary verb in-i/n'i, shown above are followed by the following subordinators/functioners:-

- a) hàibo, that (hà, say+po, marker of infinitive)
- b) mo'dúd'i, that (modù, that+d'i, emphatic replacive case marker)

1 po odù, what

1(1) Verbs/Verbal Compounds in po od'u expressing tenses and tense forms,

po odù, what refers to the subjects and occurs with the verbs and verbal compounds based on the roots of the transitive verbs.

(a) Verbs/Verbal Compounds
in -i

màno párá odù tàk:i,
he teaches the lesson
màno párá odù tàklo'm`i,
he taught the lesson
màno párá odù pábo tá:i,
he has to read that lesson
màno párá odù pábo yá:i,
he may read that lesson
màno párá odù pápho'm th`ok:i
he should read that lesson

(b) Verbs/Verbal Compounds
in n`i

màno párá odù tàkko`n`i,
he will teach the lesson
màno párá odù tàkkodo`ubon`i,
he must teach that lesson
màno párá odù tàkpo ngo`mgon`i,
he can teach that lesson
màno párá odù tàkpo ngo`mlo`m-
gon`i, he could have taught the
lesson
màno párá odù tàkpo yáro`mgo-
n`i, he might have taught the
lesson

bínóyno hàiríbo odù tá:s`i, let us hear what Binoy is saying
bírenno pámló`mbo odù mádhópno pírogon`i, Madhop will
give what Biren wanted

bímólnno to`ubo tábo odù nóbínno to`urogon`i, Nobin will do
what Bimol has to do,

débénno tàkkodoúr`ibo odù tàsonù, let him hear what Deben
will teach.

Verbs/Verbal Compounds
in po`odù

màno tàkpo odù, what he
teaches
màno tàklo`mbo odù,
what he taught
màno pábo tábo odù,
what he has to read
màno pábo yábo odù,
what he may read
màno pápho'm th`okpo odù,
what he should read

Verbs/Verbal Compounds
in podù

màno tàkkodo`uribo odù,
what he will teach
màno tàkkodo`ubo odù,
what he must teach
màno tàkpo ngo`mgodo`ubo
odù, what he can teach
màno tàkpo ngo`mlo`mgo-
do`ubo odù, what he could
have taught
mano takpo yaromgodo`ubo
odu, what he might have
taught

dórenno kha'ngbo ngo'mgodo'ubo odù kù'ngdè, Doren does not know what he can know,

gópáno ibo yáro'mgodo'ubo odù idè, Gopal does not write what he might have written.

1/2) Verbs in po odù, what expressing Persons and Negation

Verbs and Verbal Compounds in po odù, "what" with co/p'i person and to/lói, negation are shown below:—

(a/1) co, honorific first person

o'no izobo odù, what I write

o'ino izoro'mbo odù, what I write

o'ino izobo yábo odù, what I may write.

(a/2) pi, honorific second/third person

od'omno ib'igodo'ur'ibo odù, what you will write

od'omno ib'ibo ngo'mgodo'ubo odù, what you can write

od'omno ib'ibo yáro'mgodo'ubo odù, what you might have written

(b/1) to, negation

o'ino idobo odù, what I do not write

o'ino iro'mdobo odù, what I did not write

o'ino idobo yábo odù, what I may not write

(b/2) co/p'i, person+to, negation

o'ino izodobo odù, what I do not write

o'ino izoro'mdobo odù, what I did not write

od'omno i'b'idobo odù, what you do not write

od'omno ibiromdobo odu, what you did not write

(c/1) loi, negation

o'ino iroidouribo odu, what I shall not write

o'ino ibo ngo'mlóidobu odù, what I cannot write

o'ino ibo yáro'mlóido'ubo odù, what I might not have written

(c/2) co/p'i, person+loi, negation

o'ino izoroidoribo odù, what I shall not write

o'ino izobo ngo'mlòidòúbo odù, what I cannot write

od'omno ib'iròidòúribo odù, what you will not write

od'omno i'bibo ngo'mlòidòubo odù, what you cannot write

1(3) Verbs in po odù, what defined by the modifiers

Verbs and Verbal Compounds in po odù, "what" defined by the modifiers are shown below:—

khùdò'm p'idùno màno hàibo odù, what he says giving examples

khùdò'm p'idùno màno hàibo yábo odù, what he may say giving examples

khùdò'm p'idùno màno haigdo'ubo odù, what he will say giving examples

khùdò'm p'idùno n'ano hàibo ngo'mgdo'ubo odù, what he can say giving examples.

2 po síng odù, 'whoever' those who, whatever

2(1) Verbs in po síng odù, whoever

po síng odù, "whoever" refers to the human nouns used as the subjects and occurs with the Verbs based on the roots of the Intransitive and transitive verbs

(a) Verbs/Verbal Compounds

in—ì

màbù m'ising odùno pànglo'm'ì
those persons help him

màbù m'ising odùno fànglò'mi,
those persons helped him

màbù m'ising odùno pàngbo tá:i,
those persons have to help him

mábù m'ising odùno pàngbo
yá:i, those persons may help
him

Verbs/Verbal Compounds

in posing odù

màtù pàngbo síng odùno,
whoever helps him

màbù fànglò'mbo síng
odùno, whoever helped
him

màbù pàngbo tábosíng
odùno, whoever has to help
him

màbù pàngbo yábosíng
odùno, whoever may help
him

màbù m'ising odùno pángpho'm
th'ok:ì, those person should
help him

(b) Ve bs/Verbal Compounds
in n'ì

màtù m'ising odùno pánggò'ì,
those persons will help him

màbù m'ising odùno pángbo
ngo'mgò'ì, those persons can
help him

màbù m'ising odùno pángbo
yáro'mgò'ì, those persons might
have helped him

biénbù pángbasíng odù màno káo:è, Biren forgets whoever
help him

cá odù tho'kpo yábo síng odùdò p'is'ì, let us give the tea to
whoever may take it.

débénbù y'okpho'm th'okpsíng odùno màbù tho'uwóidè,
whoever should look after Deben neglects him

dórénbù dímapúrdò thínb'igado'uribo síng odùno mòng'ondagi
lùpà torà pho'nglè, whoever will escort Doren to Dimapur
has got one hundred rupees from him

gópáltù kó'ubo ngo'mgodo'ubosíng odù màno n'ingsíngdè,
Gopal does not remember whoever can save him.

khùtsùmò'n pho'ngbo yáro'mgodo'ubosíng odùno khùtsùmò'n
tán'ò'mdè, whoever might have got wage did not demand it

2(1/2) Verbs in po síng odù, those who

psíng odù, 'those who' refers to the human nouns used as
the objects. It occurs with the verbs and verbal compounds
based on the roots of the transitive verbs.

(a) Verbs/Verbal Compounds
in ì

màno m'ising odùb'u páng'ì, he
helps those person

màbù pángpho'm th'okpsíng
odùno, whoever should help
him

Verbs/Verbal Compounds
in po síng odù

màbù pánggodo'uribo síng
odùno, whoever will help him

màbù pángbo ngo'mgodo'ubo
síng odùno, whoever can help
him

nàbù pángbo yáro'mgodo'ubo
síng odùno, whoever might
have helped him

Verbs/Verbal Compounds
in psíng odù

màno pángbo síng odùno,
those who are helped by
him

màno m'ising odùbù
pánglo'm'i, he helped those
persons

màno m'ising odùbù pángbo
yá'i, he may help those
persons

màno m'ising odùbù pángpho'm
th'ok'i, he should help those
persons

màno pánglo'mbosing odùno,
those who were helped by him

màno pángbo yábosing odùno,
those who may be helped by
him

màno pángpho'm th'okposi'eg
odùno, those who should be
helped by him

(b) Verbs/Verbal Compounds

in n'i

màno m'ising odùbù pánggon'i
he will help those persons

màno m'ising odùbù pángbo
ngo'mgon'i, he can help those
persons

màno m'ising odùbù pángbo
yáro'mgon'i,

Verbal Compounds

in posingodo

màno pánggodo'uribosing odùno
those who will be helped by
him

màno pangbo ngomgodo'ubo
sing odùno, those who can
be helped by him

màno pángbo yáro'mgodo'ubo-
sing odùno, those who might
have been helped by him

birénno pánglo'mbosing odùbù màno káodè, Biren does not
forget those who were helped by him.

binóyno y'okpo tábosing odùbù màno tho'uwóldè, Binoy
neglects those who have to be looked after by him

bímólno 'íkàì khúmnopho'm th'okposing odùbù màno ka-
rémn'oi, Bimol mocks at those who should be respected by
him

dórénno ú:ngodo'uribo sing odù moyùmdo, lo'ihe'uri', those
who will be met by Doren are at their homes

púlisno phábo ngo'mgodo'ubo sing odù phádrè, police has
not arrested those who can be arrested.

syámno pángbo yáɔ'mgodo'ubo sing od'unɔ mǎgo ú:ɔ:ɔ'mdè
those who might be helped by Syam did not meet him

2(1/3) Verbs and Verbal Compounds in posing od'u; whatever
posing odù, "whatever" refers to the inanimate nouns
used as the subjects or objects.

(a) Verbs/Verbal Compounds
in -'i

màno h'òising odù càɔ'i,
he eats those fruits

màno h'òising odù càɔ'mì,
he eat those fruits

màno h'òising odù càbo yá 'i,
he may ate those fruits

(b) Verbs/Verbal Compounds
in n'i

màno h'òising odù càgon'i
he will eat those fruits

màno h'òising odù càbo
ngó'mgon'i, he can eat
those fruits

mano h'òising odù càbo yáɔm-
goni, he might have eaten
those fruits

Verbs/Verbal Compounds
in posing od'u

màno càbosing od'u; what-
ever he eats

màno càɔ'mbosing od'u,
whatever he ate

màno càbo yábosing od'u,
whatever he may eat

Verbs/Verbal Compounds
in posing od'u

màno càgodo'uribosing od'u,
whatever he will eat

màno càbo ngo'mgodo'ubosing
od'u, whatever he can eat

mano càbo yáɔ'mgod'ubo ing
odu, whatever he might have
eaten

bínòino hàibosing odù káogonù, don't forget whatever
Binoy says

birénno tàklo'mbosing odù n'ingsinggod'ubon'i, whatever
Biren taught must be remembered

bímóyno càribosing od'udo cini` hàpkonù. don't mix any
sugar to whatever Bimol is eating

dórénno íribosing odù pás'i, let us read whatever Doren is
writing

débénno l'igodo'uribosing od'u makh'oins tàonù, let them hear whatever Deben will narrate

2(2/1) Verbs in posing odù expressing Negation

Verbs and Verbal Compounds in posing od'u, 'whatever' 'those' who' and 'whatever' express negation taking the markers of negation.

(a) to, negation

màbù pángdodosing od'uno, whoever do not help him

màbù pánglo'mdobosing od'uno, whoever did not help him

màno pángdobo sing od'uno, those who are not helped by him

màno pánglo'mlobosing od'uno, those who were not helped by him

màno càdodosing od'uno, whatever he does not eat

màno càro'mdobosing od'uno, whatever he did not eat

(b) loi, negation

màbù pánglòido'uribosing od'uno, whoever will not help him

màbù pángbo ngo'mlòido'uribosing od'uno, whoever cannot help him

màno pánglòido'uribosing od'uno, those who will not be helped by him

màno pángbo ngo'mlòido'ubosing od'uno, those who cannot be helped by him

màno càroido'uribosing od'u, whatever he will not eat

màno càbo ngo'mlòido'ubosing od'u, whatever he cannot eat

2(2/2) Verbs in posing odù expressing Persons and Negation

Verbs and Verbal Compounds in posing od'u, "whoever" express honorific third person, such person and negation taking the markers of those two features.

o'ibù pángb'ibo sing od'uno, whoever help me

o'ib'u pángbido sing od'uno' whoever do not help me

màbù pángb'iró'mbosing odùno, whoever helped him

màbù pángb'iró'mdobosing odùno, whoever did not

Verbs and Verbal Compounds in posing odù, "those who" and "whatever" express the honorific persons and negation taking the markers of such features.

o'ino pángzobosing odùno, those who are helped by me

o'ino pángzodobosing od'uno, those who are not helped by me

od'omno pángbibosing od'uno, those who are helped by you

od'omno pángb'idobosing od'uno, those who are not helped by you

o'ino izobosing od'u. whatever I write

o'ino izodobosing od'u, whatever I do not write

od'omno ib'ibosing od'u, whatever you write

od'omno ib'idobosing od'u, whatever you do not write

2(3) Verbs in posing od'u defined by modifiers

Some verbs in posing od'u defined by the modifiers are shown below:—

kh'udo'm p'idúno màbù tàkposing od'u, whoever teach him giving examples

kh'udo'm p'idúno màbù tàklo'mbosing odù, whoever taught him giving examples

kh'udo'm p'idúno màno tàkposing od'uno, those who are taught by him giving examples

kh'udo'm p'idúno màno tàklo'mbosing od'uno, those who were by taught him giving examples

kàncipúr s'ingthádúno kóbí kómólno íbosing od'u, whatever Poet Komol writes describing Kanchipur

kàncipúr s'ingthádúno kóbí kómólno iró'mbosing od'u, whatever Poet Komol wrote describing Kanchipur

2(4/1) Verbs in posing od'u, whoever with-o, primary prefix

Verbs in *posing odù*, "whoever," express present perfect taking *o*, primary prefix.

okh'ongbasing odùdo ho'ngsi, let us ask whoever have known
arákposing odùdo cá p'iktho'kkon'i tea will be given to
 whoever have come

otumbasing odùdo khùtsùmo'n p'irói, wage will not be given
 to whoever have slept

2(4/2) Verbs in *posing odù*, whatever with *o*, primary prefix

Stative Verbs in *posing odù*, "whatever" express present
 indefinite taking—*o*. primary prefix.

oháobasing odù càs'i, let us eat whatever is delicious.

okhábasing odù hùido p'igon'i, the dog will be given what-
 ever is bitter

othumbasing odù nohàr'oisingno càgon'i, the youths will eat
 whatever is sweet.

2(5) Emphatic Replative Markers replacing *posing odù*

The following emphatic replative markers may be used
 in place of *posing odù*; "whoever" "those who" and "what-
 ever":—

(a) *pomokho'i* (*po*, marker of infinitive + *mokho'i*, emphatic
 replative plural marker)

(b) *p'ising odù* (*p'i*, female marker + *sing*, plural marker + *odù*
 that)

(2/5/1) *pomokh'ol* replacing *posing odù*, whoever, whatever,
 and those who

pomokh'ol may replace *posing odù*, "whoever" "whatever"
 and "those who".

general forms	emphetic forms	meanings
<i>oháobasing odùno</i>	<i>oháobomokh'oino</i> —	whatever is delic
<i>othumbasing</i>	<i>othumbomokh'oino</i>	whatever is swee
<i>oduno</i>		

okh'əngbəsing odùno	okh'əngboməkh'òino	whoever have known
orákpəsing odùno	orákpoməkh'òino	whoever have come
màno pángbəsing odùno	màno pángbo- məkh'òino	those who are helped by him
màno pánglò'm- bəsing odùno	màno pánglò'mbo- məkh'òino	those who were helped by him

(2/5/2) p'ising odù replacing pəsing odù, whoever

p'ising odù may replace pəsing odù, "whoever" when pəsing odù refers to the human nouns in the feminine gender.

general forms	emphatic forms	meanings
ngəs'ì lákpəsing odùno	ngəs'ì lákp'ising odùno	whoever come to- day
ngoràng láklò'm- bəsing odùno	ngoràng láklò'mb'ì- sing odùno	whoever came yes- terday

3 hàibo, and modùd'ì expressing "that" (relative pronoun)

"that" (relative pronoun) is expressed by the following markers:—

(a) hàibo (hai, say+po, marker of Infinitive)

(b) modùd'ì (modu, that+di; emphatic case marker)

3(1) hàibo. "that"

hàibo, "that" follows the conjugated Verbs and Verbal Compounds;

(a) Verbs/Verbal Compounds
in—ì

mà lák'ì, he comes

mà lákpo tá'ì, he has to
come

Verbs/Verbal Compounds
in—ì followed by hàibo

mà lák'ì hàibo tà'ì, that
he comes is heard

mà lákpo tá'ì hàibo tà'ì,
that he has to come is
heard

mà lákpo yá:'i, he	ma lákpo yá:'i hàibo tà:'i, that he may
may come	may come is heard

(b) Verbs/Verbal Com-	Verbs/Verbal Compounds
pounds in-n'i	in n'i followed by hàibo

mà lákkan'i, he will	mà lákkan'i hàibo tà:'i, that he will
com	come is heard

mà lákpo ngo'mgon'i	mà lákpo ngo'mgon'i hàibo tà:'i. that
he can come	he can come is heard

gópál lákkan'i hàibo syámno tà:'i, Syam hears that Gopal will come

módhúno modù to'uro'mbo yá:i hàibo birénno thàzo'i, Biren believes that modhu might have done it

prithibi os'i tùmni hàibo binóyno utkan'i. Binoy will show that earth is round,

3(1/2) hàibo, "that" replaced by hàinno

hàino, emphatic replacive marker is a compound of hai, say and no, Instrumental. hàino may replace hàibo, "that" when hàibo follows some verbs and verbal compounds.

general forms	emphatic forms	meanings
with hàibo	with hàino	
mà lák:'i hàibo	mà lák:'i hàino	that he comes is
tà:'i	tà:'i	heard
màno hùràno'mdè	màno hùràno'mdè	that he did not
hàibo thàzono'i	hàino thàzono'i	steal is believed

3(2) modùd'i, "that"

modùd'i, "that" follows the verbs and verbal compounds derived from the roots of the stative verbs and modified by osùkki motik, "so much".

(a) Verbs/Verbal Compounds
in—'i

mohàk osùkkimot'ik ko'ali, he is
so much strong

Verbs/Verbal Compounds
in-'i followed by modùd'i
mohàk osùkkimot'ik k'onli
modùd'i ko'i phà:'i, he is so
much strong that he cat-
ches the tiger.

mohák osùkkimot'ik k'onbo
yá:i, he may be so much
strong

mohák osùkkimot'ik k'onbo
yá:i, modúd'i k'o'i phábo ngo'-
mgon'i. he may be so much
strong that he can catch the
tiger

(b) Verbs/Verbal Compounds
in n'i

mohák osùkki mot'ik k'olgon'i,
he will be so much strong

Verbs/Verbal Compounds
in n'i followed by modúd'i

mohák osùkki mot'ik k'olgon'i
modúdi k'o'i phábo ngo'mgo-
n'i, he will be so much strong
that he can catch the tiger

mohák osùkkimot'ik k'onbo
ngo'mgon'i, he can be so
much strong

mohák osùkkimot'ik k'onbo
ngo'mgon'i modúd'i k'o'i phábo
ngo'mgon'i, he can be so
much strong that he can eat-
ch the tiger

débéndi osùkkimot'ik c'okthoré modúd'i wápháobo ngàngdré
Deben is so much tired that he has not uttered any word

dórénd'i osùkkimot'ik to'mth'i modúd'i mab'ok pháobo tán-
th'ok'i, Doren is so much cruel that he even drives out his
grand-mother

3(2/2) modúd'i, emphatic replative marker

modúd'i also functions as the emphatic replative marker
replacing hàibo, "that" (the general marker). modúd'i follows
the verbs and verbal compounds of independent clauses, while
hàibo follows the verbs and verbal compounds of the relative
clauses.

general forms
with hàibo

emphetic forms
with modúd'i

meanings

mà lák:i hàibo
syámno tà:i

syámno tà:i modúd'i
mà lák:i

Syam hears
that he comes

màno modù tó'ngon'ì
hàibo syámno tház'oi

syámno tház'ì
modúd'ì màno
modù tó'ngon'ì

Syam be-
lieves that
he will do
that

ADVERB CLAUSE

4.2.2.3 Verbs of the adverb clauses take the following markers in place of 'i/n'ì, general marker:—

(1) Free Markers replacing -'i/n'ì, general marker in the verbs and verbal compounds in the tenses and tense forms.

(2) Bound markers replacing -'i/n'ì, general marker in the verbs and verbal compounds in the present and past tenses.

4.2.2.3.1 Free Markers of the Verbs of the Adverb clauses

Free markers of the verbs of the adverb clauses are shown below:—

(a) pò odùk, "as much as" (pò, marker of infinitive+odùk that much)

(b) pən'ino, "since" (pò+n'ì, "be" verb+nò, instrumental)
1. pò odùk, as much as

pò odùk, "as much as" replaces -'ì, general marker in the following verbs and auxiliary verbs:—

- 1) Verbs in the present tense
- 2) Verbs in the past tense
- 3) tá:'ì, obligative tense (tá, auxiliary verb)
- 4) th'ok:'ì, should (th'ok, auxiliary Verb)
- 5) yá:'ì, may (yá,auxiliary verb)

Examples:—

Verbs/Verbal Compounds
in-'ì

1) i, we/you/they write

Verbs/Verbal Compounds
in-pò odùk

ibo odùk, as much as we/
you/they write

- | | |
|--|--|
| 2) <i>irɔ'm̀i, we/you/they wrote</i> | <i>irɔ'mbɔ ɔ̀ɔ̀ɔ̀k, as much as we/you/they wrote</i> |
| 3) <i>ibo tá:i, we/you/they have to write</i> | <i>ibo tábɔ ɔ̀ɔ̀ɔ̀k, as much as we/you/they have to write</i> |
| 4) <i>ipho'm th'ok:i, we/you/they should write</i> | <i>ipho'm th'okpɔ ɔ̀ɔ̀ɔ̀k, as much as we/you/they should write</i> |
| 5) <i>ibo yá:i, we/you they may write</i> | <i>ibo yábɔ ɔ̀ɔ̀ɔ̀k, as much as we/you/they may write</i> |

bírénnɔ n'ombɔ ɔ̀ɔ̀ɔ̀k syámsù n'om:i, Syam works as much as Biren works

binóynɔ macà núngsírɔ'mbɔ ɔ̀ɔ̀ɔ̀k módhúnɔsù núngsírɔ'm̀i, modhu loved his child as much as Binoy did

bímóino mádh'oppù pángbɔ yábɔ ɔ̀ɔ̀ɔ̀k gópálnɔsù pángbɔ yá:i, Gorál may help Madhop as much as Bimol may do

(b) *pɔ ɔ̀ɔ̀ɔ̀k, as much as replacing ǹi, general marker*

pɔ ɔ̀ɔ̀ɔ̀k, 'as much as', replaces ǹi, general marker in the following verbs and auxiliary verbs:—

- 1) Verbs in the future tense
- 2) Verbs in *kɔɔ'ɔ'ɔ'u*, 'must'
- 3) *ngɔ'mgoǹi*. "can" (*ngɔ'm*, auxiliary verb)
- 4) *ngɔ'mɔ'mgoǹi*. "could" (*ngɔ'm*, auxiliary verb)
- 5) *yáɔ'mgoǹi*, "might" (*yá*, auxiliary verb)

Examples:—

Verbs/Verbal Compounds
in—*ǹi*

Verbs/Verbal Compounds
in *pɔ ɔ̀ɔ̀ɔ̀k as much as*

{1} *igɔǹi: we/you/they will write*

igɔɔ'uribɔ ɔ̀ɔ̀ɔ̀k, as much as we/you/they will write

(2) Igodsuboni, we/you/
they must write

(3) ibo ngo'mgon'i, we/
you/they can write

(4) ibo ngo'mlo'mgon'i,
we/you/they could
have written

(5) ibo yaro'mgon'i, we/
you/they might have
written

igodo'ubo, odùk, as much as
we/you/they must write

ibo ngo'mgodo'ubo odùk, as
much as we/you/they can
write

ibo ngo'mlo'mgodo'ubo
odùk, as much as we/you/
they could have written

ibo yaro'mgodo'ubo odùk,
as much as we/you/they
might have written

binóyno n'omgodo'uribo odùk s;ámsù n'omgon'i, Syam will
work as much as Binoy will do

bírenno péisá tãnbó ngo'mgodo'ubo odùk módhúno ngo'mgon'i,
Modhu can earn money as much as Biren can do.

1(1/2) pon'ino, since

pon'ino; "since" replaces — i, general marker in the fol-
lowing verbs and auxillary verbs:—

- 1) Verbs in the present tense
- 2) Verbs in the past tense
- 3) tá:i obligative tense (tá, auxillary verb)
- 4) th'ok:i, should (th'ok, auxillary verb)
- 5) yá:i, may (yá, auxillary verb)

Examples:—

Verbs/Verbal Compounds
in—i

1) i, we/you/they write

2) íro'm'i, we/you/they
write

Verbs/Verbal Compounds
in pon'ino

íbon'ino, since we/you/they
write

íro'mbón'ino, since we/you
they wrote

3) *ibo tá:ì, we/you/they*
have to write

ibo tábon'ino, since we/
you/you/they have to
write

4) *ipho'm th'ok:ì, we/you/*
twey should write

ipho'm th'okpon'ino, sin-
ce. we/you/they should
write

5) *ibo yá:ì, we/you/they*
may write

ibo yábon'ino, since we/
you/they may write

débénno thob'ok sùbon'ino khùtsùmo'n pho'nggon'ì, since
Deben does the work he will get the wage

dórenno mádh'oppù pánglombon'ino, màbù mádh'opno káo-
rói, since Doren helped Madhop, he will not be forgotten by
Madhop

dámúno sén pho'ngbo yábon'ino sén pùradobo yá:ì. since
Damu may get money he may not burrow any money

(b) *pon'ino, 'since' replacing n'ì, general marker*

pon'ino, "since;" replaces n'ì, general marker in the fol-
lowing verbs and auxiliary verbs:—

1) Verbs in the future tense

2) Verbs in *kodo'u*, "must"

3) *ngo'mgon'ì, "can" (ngo'm, auxiliary verb)*

4) *ngo'mlo'mgon'ì, "could" (ngo'm. auxiliary verb)*

5) *yáro'mgon'ì, "might" (yá, auxiliary verb)*

Examples:—

Verbs/Verbal Compounds
in-n'ì

1) *igon'ì, we/you/they*
will write

2) *igodouboni, we/you/*
they must write

Verbs/Verbal Compounds
in pon'ino

igodo'uribon'ino, since we/
you/they will write

igodo'ubon'ino. since we/you/
they must write

- | | |
|---|--|
| 3) ibo ngo'mgon'i, we/you/they
can write | ibo ngo'mgodo'ubon'ino,
since we/you/they can
write |
| 4) ibo ngo'mlo'mgon'i, we/you/
they could have written | ibo ngo'mlo'mgodo'ubon'i-
no, since we/you/they
could have written |
| 5) ibo yaro'mgon'i, we/you/
they might have written | ibo ya'ro'mgo'do'ubon'i,
since we/you/they might
have written |

biren co'tkodo'uribon'ino syamsu catkon'i, since Biren will go Syam will also go

binoyo modhubu panggodo'ribon'ino modhuno gopangi moteng l'ouroi. Since Binoy can help Modhu, he (Modhu) will not take Gopal's help.

2(1/1) Verbs in po oduk and pon'ino expressing Negation

Verbs and Verbal Compounds in po oduk. "as much as" and pon'no, "since" express negation taking the markers of negation.

mano nomdobo oduk, as much as he does not work

mano nomdobo yabo oduk, as much as he may not work

mano nomdobo'no. since he does not work

mano nomba ngomlodo'uribon'ino, since he cannot work

2(1/2) Verbs in po oduk and ponino expressing Persons, Persons and Negation

Verbs and Verbal Compounds in po oduk, "as much as" and pon'ino, "since" express the honorific persons, such persons and negation taking the markers of such features.

(a/1) co, honorific first person

o'ino nomzobo'ino, since I work

o'ino nomzobo oduk, as much as I work

(a/2) co, honorific first person + to, negation

o'ino nomzodobo oduk, as much as I do not work

a'ino n'omzadobon'ino, since I do not work

(b/1) p'i, honorific second/third person

od'omno n'omb'ibo odük, as much as you work,

od'omno n'ombibon'ino, since you work

(b/2) p'i, honorific second/third person+to, negation

od'omno n'omb'idabo odük, as much as you do not work

od'omno n'omb'idobon'ino, since you do not work

2(2) Verbs in po odük and pon'ino defined by the Modifiers

Verbs in po odük, "as much as" and pon'ino, "since" may be defined by the modifiers.

khüdo'm p'idüno binóyno takpo odük, as much as Binoy teaches giving examples

khüdo'm p'idüno binóyno takpo yábo odük, as much Binoy may teach giving examples

khüdo'm p'idüno binóyno takpon'ino, since Binoy teaches giving examples

khüdo'm p'idüno binóyno takpo yábon'ino, since Binoy may teach giving examples

2(3) pon'ino, since replaced by po mör'omno.

po mör'omno, emphatic replacive marker is a compound of po, marker of infinitive, mör'om, reason and no, instrumental. It may replace pon'ino, "since" in the verbs and verbal compounds in the indefinite aspect of the tenses and tense forms.

general forms in
pon'ino

emphatic forms
in po mör'omno

meanings

ibon'no

ibo mör'omno

since he writes

iro'mbon'ino

iro'mbo mör'omno

since he wrote

ibo yábon'ino

ibo yábo mör'omno

since he may
write

4.2.2.3.2 Bound Markers of the Verbs of Adverb Clauses

Bound markers of the verbs of the adverb clauses are compound forms. Final components of such markers are case markers, plural markers and relational words. Initial components of these markers are shown below:—

- | | |
|----------------------|---|
| 1) aspect markers— | lɔ, perfect aspect
li, durative aspect |
| 2) other components— | hək, at once
nɔ, primary infix
pɔ, marker of infinitive |

Bound markers of the verbs of Adverb clauses are shown below:—

(a) Bound Markers with lɔ, perfects aspect

lɔbɔm'ɔktɔdɔ, even if, even though (lɔ+pɔ, marker of infinitive +m'ɔk, infix+ɔ only.+ɔ, locative)

lɔbɔmɔtúngɔdɔ, after (lɔ+pɔ+mɔtúng, relational word+ɔ)

lɔbɔd'i, subjunctive tense (lɔ+pɔ+d'i, emphatic replative case marker)

lɔ'mlɔbɔd'i, contingent future perfect tense (lɔ'm, marker of past tense+lɔbɔd'i)

lɔbɔsù, though, although (lɔ+pɔ+sù, too)

(b) Bound Markers with li durative aspect

libɔ mɔkh'ɔi, so long as (li+pɔ+mɔkh'ɔi, emphatic replative plural marker)

ling'ɔidɔ, while (li+ng'ɔi, infix+ɔ, locative)

phàtríngɔ'i, no sooner...than (phat, infix+ɔ, negation+ling'ɔid'ɔ while)

tríng'ɔidɔ, before (ɔ, negation+ling'ɔidɔ, while)

tríbɔmɔkh'ɔi, till, until (ɔ, negation+libɔmɔkh'ɔi, so long as.)

(c) Bound Markers with other components

hək pɔgɔ, as soon as (hək, at once+pɔ, marker of infinitive +kɔ, comitative)

nəbə, so that (nə, infix + pə)

pəgúmno, just as... so (pə + kúm, primary adverb + nə, instrumental)

pəkhùdingə, whenever (pə + khùding, each + tə, locative)

pəmətə'mdə, when (pə + mətə'm, time + tə)

Bound markers of the verbs of adverb clauses replace general marker. They do not occur with the markers of the tenses and tense forms. They express one of the three aspects viz., (a) indefinite, (b) perfect and (c) durative. They express one of these three aspects of the present tense modifying the verbs of the independent clauses in the present and future tenses. They express one of the three aspects of the past tense modifying the verbs of independent clauses in the past tense.

1(1) Indefinite Aspect of the Present and Past Tenses

The following bound markers of the verbs of the adverb clauses are used to express the indefinite aspect of the present and past tenses:—

- 1) hək, pəgə, as soon as
- 2) ləbəmə'ktədə, even if, though
- 3) ləbəsə, though, although
- 4) pəgúmno, just as ... so
- 5) pəkhùdingə, whenever
- 6) pəmətə'mdə, when
- 7) phàthring'əidə, no sooner... than
- 8) tɹibəməkh'ə, till, until
- tring'əidə, before

Examples:—

Verbs in-i,
general marker

Verbs with the Bound Marker

i, we/you/ 1) hək ibəgə, as soon as we/you/they write/wrote
they write.

iro'm'i, we/you/ 2) írobom'ektado, even if we/you/they write/
they wrote wrote

3) írobosù, though we/you/they write/wrote

4) íbogúmno, just as we/you/they write/wrote

5) íbakhùdingdo, whenever we/you/they write/
wrote wrote

6) íbomoto'mdo, when we/you/they write/wrote

7) íphàthring'ido, no sooner we/you/they
write/wrote... than

8) ídribomokho'i, till we/you/they write/wrote

9) ídringo'ido, before we/you/they write/wrote

màno pára hék íbogo syámsù i, as soon as he writes his
lesson Syam also writes

màno pára írobom'ektado, syámd'i idè. even if he writes his
lesson Syam does not write

màno pára írobosù syámd'i idè, though he writes his les-
son Syam does not write

màno pára íbogúmno syámsù i, just as he writes his les-
son so Syam writes

màno pára íbakhùdingdo syámsù i, whenever he writes his
lesson Syam also writes

màno pára íbomoto'mdo syámsù i, when he writes his les-
son Syam also writes

màno pára íphàthring'ido syámno i, no sooner he writes
his lesson than Syam writes

màno pára ídribomokho'i syámd'i írói, till he writes his les-
son Syam will not write

màno pára ídringo'ido syámno i, before he writes his les-
son Syam writes

(b) Past Indefinite

màno pára hék íbogo syámsù íro'm'i, as soon as he wrote
his lesson Syam wrote

màno pára írobom'òkíodo syám'dì író'm'dé, even if he wrote his lesson Syam did not write

màno pára írobosù syám'dì író'm'dè, though he wrote his lesson Syam did not write

màno pára íbògùmnò syámsù író'm'ì, just as he wrote his lesson so Syam wrote

màno pára íbòkhùdíngdò syámsù író'm'ì, whenever he wrote his lesson Syam also wrote

màno pára íbomotò'mdò syámsù író'm'ì, when he wrote his lesson Syam also wrote

màno pára íphàttring'òidò syámno író'm'ì, no sooner he wrote his lesson than Syam wrote

màno pára ídribomòkhò'ì syám'dì író'm'dè, till he wrote his lesson Syam did not write

màno pára ídringò'ìdò syámno író'm'ì, before he wrote his lesson Syam wrote

1(2) Perfect Aspect of the Present and Past Tenses

ìbomotúngdò. 'after' is used to express the perfect aspect of the present and past tenses.

Examples:—

Verbs in —ì, general
marker

Verbs in ìbomotúngdò, after

íré, we/you/they have
written

ìrobomotúngdò, after we/you/they have/
had written

író'm'ì, we/you/they
had written

dórenno láklobò motúngdò gópál càtkon'ì, after Doren has come Gopal will go

dórenno dímapúr yò'urəbò motúngdò mádh'opno ímphál thàd'òkkon'ì, after Doren has reached Dimapur, Madhop will leave Imphal

(b) Past Indefinite

dórénnə lákklobə mətúngdə gópál c'ətləm'i, after Doren had come Gopal went

dórénnə dímpúr yə'urəbə mətúngdə mádh'opnə 'imphál thàd'oklóm'i, after Doren had reached Dimapur Madhop left Imphal

1(3) Durative Aspect of the Present and Past Tenses

The following bound markers of the verbs of the adverb clauses are used to express the durative aspect of the present and past tenses:—

(1) líbomokho'i, so long as

(2) língò'ido, while

Examples:—

Verbs in -i, general
marker

íri, we/you/they are
writing

író'mlí, we/you/they
were writing

Verbs with the bound markers

(1) íribomokh'oi, so long as we/
you/they are/were writing

(2) íringò'ido, while we/you/they
are/were writing

bírénnə párà páribomokho'i mománo mágí monáktə phóm'i,
so long as Biren is reading his lesson his mother sits near
him.

bírénnə párà páringò'ido nóng tá:t'i, while Biren is reading
his lesson it rains

(b) Past Durative

bírénnə párà páribomokh'oi mománo mágí monáktə phóm'lo'-
m'i, so long Biren was reading his lesson his mother sat
near him

bírénnə párà páringò'ido nóng táro'm'i, while Biren was
reading his lesson it rained

1(3/2) Modification of *li*, durative aspect

li durative aspect expresses such aspect of the present and past tenses forming the initial component of the following bound markers:—

Bound Markers	Verbs with the Bound Markers
1) <i>liboməkho'i</i> , so long as	<i>iriboməkho'i</i> , so long as we/you/they are/were writing
2) <i>lingo'ido</i> , while	<i>iring'ido</i> , while we/you/they are/ were writing

li, durative aspect expresses the indefinite aspect of the present and past tenses forming the intervocal component of the following bound markers:—

Bound Markers	Verbs with the Bound Markers
1) <i>phàttringo'ido</i> , no sooner . . . than	<i>iphàttring'ido</i> , no sooner we/you/they write/*rote
2) <i>tring'ido</i> , before	<i>idring'ido</i> , before we/you/they write/ wrote
3) <i>triboməkho'i</i> , till, until	<i>idriboməkho'i</i> , till we/you/they write/wrote

1(4) Indefinite Aspect of the Tense Forms

The following bound markers of the verbs of the adverb clauses are used to express the indefinite aspect of the tense forms;—

- 1) *lo'bad'i*, subjunctive tense in the present indefinite form,
- 2) *lo'mlobad'i*, contingent future perfect tense in the past indefinite form
- 3) *nobo*, "so that" in the indefinite aspect form of "may"

Examples:—

Verbs in -i, general marker

i, we/you/they write

irəm'i, we/you/they wrote

iboyá:i, we/you/they may write

Verbs with the Bound markers

1) irəbəd'i, if we/you/they write

2) irə'mləbəd'i, if we/you/they wrote

3) inəbə, so that we/you/they may write

màno pángləbəd'i syámsù cə̀tkən'i, if he helps then Syam will also go

màno pánglə'mləbəd'i syámsù cə̀tlo'gədo'ubən'i, if he helped then Syam would have gone

màno syámbù pángb'inəbə mən'əndə lùpà torá p'irè, he has been given ten rupees so that he may help Syam .

màno syámbù dimápúrdə thínb'inəbə mən'əndə ghəri omə p'igən'i, he will be given a watch so that he may escort Syam to Dimapur

1(4/2) Modification of lə, perfect aspect

lə, perfect aspect expresses such aspect of the present and past tenses forming the initial component of ləbəmətúngdə, "after".

Verbs in -i, general marker

irè, we/you/they have written

irə'mlə, we/you/they had written

Verb in ləbəmətúngdə, after

irəbəmətúngdə, after we/you they have/had written

lə, perfect aspect expresses the indefinite aspect of the present/past tense and tense forms forming the initial component of the following bound markers:—

Bound Markers

1) ləbəm'əktədo, even if, even though

Verbs with the Bound Markers

irəbəm'əktədo, even if we/you/they write/wrote

- | | |
|---|---|
| 2) lobosù, though, although | irobosù, though we/you/they write/wrote |
| 3) lobod'i, subjunctive tense | irobod'i, if we/you/they write |
| 4) lo'mlobod'i, contingent future perfect tense | ieo'mlobod'i, if we/you/they wrote |

2(1) Verb with the Bound Markers expressing Persons

Verbs of the adverb clauses with bound markers express the honorific persons taking the markers of such persons.

(a) eo, honorific first person

izeobod'i, if we write

izeobosù, though we write/wrote

izeobom'oktado, even if we write/wrote

izeobomatúngdo, after we have/had written

izeobomokho'i, so long as we are/were writing

izeoringo'ido, while we are/were writing

(b) p'i, honorific second/third person

ib'irobod'i, if you write

ib'irobosù, though you write/wrote

ib'irobom'oktado, even if you write/wrote

ib'irobomatúngdo, after you have/had written

ib'iribomokho'i, so long as you are/were writing

ib'iringo'ido, while you are/were writing

o'ino thob'ok hék sùzobgo nong tá'i, as soon as I work, it rains

o'ino thob'ok sùzobo khùdingdo nong tá'i, whenever I work it rains

o'no thob'ok sùzobo moto'mdo nong tá'i, when I work it rains

od'omno thob'ok hək sùb'ibogo nong tá:i, as soon as you work it rains

od'omno thob'ok sùb'ibo khùdingdo nong tá:i, whenever you work it rains

od'omno thob'ok sùb'ibo motomdo nong tá:i, when you work it rains

2(2) Verbs with the Bound Markers expressing Negation

Verbs of the adverb clauses with the following bound markers express negation taking to, marker of negation:—

Bound Markers	Negative Verbs with Bound Markers
1) labom'ektodo, even even	idrabom'ektodo, even if we/you/they do not/did not write
2) labad'i, subjunctive tense	idrabad'i, if we/you/they do not write
3) lo'mlabad'i, contingent future perfect tense	iro'mdrabad'i, if w./you/they did not write
4) labəsù, though	idrabəsù; though we/you/they do not/did not write
5) nobo, so that	idanobo, so that we/you/they may not write
6) pogúmno, just as .. so	idabogúmno, just as we/you/they do not/did not write so
7) pəkhùdingdo, whenever	idəbəkùdingdo, whenever we/you/they do not/did not write
8) poməto'mdo, when	idəbəmə'tomdo, when we/you/they do not/did not write

bírenno càttrəbom'ektodo syámd'i cətl'i, even if Biren does not go Syam goes

bírenno càttrəbad'i syámsù cətlól, if Biren does not go Syam will also not go

birénno c'ottlo'mdrobad'i syámsú c'ottlomlo'i, if Biren did not go
Syam will not have gone

birénno càttrobosù syámd'i cà'kon'i, though Biren does not go
Syam will go

birénno c'ottobagùmnno syámsù c'ottè, just as Biren does not
go so Syam does not go

birénno c'ottobakhùdingdo syámd'i càtl'i, whenever Biren does
not go Syam goes

birénno c'ottobomoto'mdo syámd'i càtl'i, when Biren does not
go Syam goes

birénno syámbù c'ot:h'ondonobo mòng'ondo lùpà torà p'igoni,
Biren will be given ten rupees so that he may not allow
Syam to go.

2(2/2) Negative Verbs with Bound Markers expressing Persons

Negative verbs of the adverb clauses with the bound
markers have already been shown. Such verbs express the ho-
norific persons taking the markers of these persons.

(a) co. honorific first person

izodrobom'əktədo, even if we do not/did not write

izodrobod'i, if we do not write

izoro'mdrobad'i, if we did not write

izodrobosù, though we do not/did not write

izodonobo, so that we may not write

izodobomoto'mdo, when we do not/did not write

(b) p'i, honorific second/third person

ib'idrobom'əktədo, even if you do not/did not write

ib'idrobod'i, if you do not write

ib'ira'mdrobad'i, if you did not write

ib'idəɔbɔsù, though you do not/did not write

ib'idəɔnɔbɔ, so that you may not write

ib'idəɔbɔmɔtɔ'mdɔ, when you do not/did not write

2(3) Verbs with Bound Markers defined by Modifiers

Verbs of the adverb clauses with the bound markers may be defined by the modifiers.

lèptúno cá th'ɔklobom'ɔktɔdɔ, even if we/you/they take tea standing

lèptúno cá th'ɔklobɔ'd'i, if we/you/they take tea standing

lèptúno cá th'ɔklob'mbɔd'i, if we/you/they took tea standing

lèptúno cá th'ɔklobɔsù, though we/you/they take/took tea standing

lèptúno cá th'ɔknɔbɔ, so that we/you/they may take tea standing

lèptúno cá th'ɔkpɔgúmno, just as we/you/they take/took tea standing

lèptúno cá th'ɔkpɔkhùdingdɔ, whenever we/you/they take/took tea standing

lèptúno cá th'ɔkpɔmɔtɔ'mdɔ, when we/you/they take/took tea standing

2(4) Bound Markers occurring with Auxiliary Verbs

Bound markers of the adverb clauses may occur with the four auxiliary verbs viz., ngo'm, tá, th'ok and yá. In such case, these auxiliary verbs express the meanings shown against them below:—

(AVs=auxiliary Verbs)

A.Vs	meanings of A.Vs occurring with-ɪ/ni General Markers	meanings of AVs occurring with Bound Markers
ngo'm	can, could	able
tá	obligative tense	necessary

th`ok	should	neccessary
yá	may,might	permissible

a) ngo'm. able+bound markers

íbo ngo'mlobom`oktado, even if we/you/they are/were able to write

íbo ngo'mlobod`i, if we/you/they are able to write

íbo ngo'mlo'mlobod`i, if we/you/they were able to write

íbo ngo'mlobosù, though we/you/they are/were able to write

íbo ngo'mbo moto'mdo, when we/you/they are/were able to write

(b) tá/th`ok, neccessary+bound markers

íbo tá:bom`oktado/ípho'mthoklabb m`oktado, even if it is was neccessary to write

íbo tárobod`i/ípho'm th`oklobod`i, if it is neccessar to write

íbo táro'mlobod`i/ípho'm th`oklo'mlobod`i, if it was neccessary to write

íbo tárobosù/ípho'm th`oklobosù, though it is/ was neccessary to write

íbo táboma'tomdo/ípho'm th`okpomoto'mdo, when it is/was neccessary to write

(c) yá, permissible+bound markers

íbo yárobom`oktado, even if it is/was permissible to write

íbo yárobod`i, if it is permissible to write

íbo yáro'mlobod`i, if it was permissible to write

íbo yárobosù, though it is/was permissible to write

íbo yábomoto'mdo, when it is/was permissible to write

2(4) Emphatic Bound Markers of the Verbs of Adverb Clauses

Emphatic bound markers of the verbs of the adverb clause may optionally be used in place of some bound markers when emphasis on the verbs of adverb clauses is intended. Such emphatic bound markers are shown against their corresponding bound markers below:—

Bound Markers	Emphatic Bound Markers	Meanings
1) lobod'i	logod'i	subjunctive tense
2) lobom'oktoda	lobophàoba	even if
3) lobomatúngda	loga	after
4) lobosù	logosù, túnosù	though
5) pogúmno	poda'uno	just as... so
6) phàttring'oida	lə'm..phàttring'oida	no sooner...than
7) tribomakhoi	tribophàoba	till
8) tring'oida	tring'aimomàngda	before

Examples:—

general forms with bound' markers	emphatic forms with emphatic bound markers	meanings
1) írobod'i	írogod'i	if he writes
2) írobom'oktoda	írophàoba	even if he writes
3) írobomatúngda	íroga	after he has written
4) írobosù	írogaù, idúnosù	though he writes
5) íbogúmno	íboda'uno	just as he writes so
6) íphàttring'oida	íro'm íphàttring'oida	no sooner he writes than
7) ídribomakh'oi	ídribophàoba	till he writes
8) ídring'oida	ídring'aim-màngda	before he writes

2(5/2) lo'm, emphatic additive marker

lo'm, marker of the past tense functions as the emphatic additive marker occurring with the verbs of the adverb clauses in the past tense with the following bound markers:—

- 1) hèk... pogo, as soon as
- 2) lobom`ektado, even if, even though
- 3) lobomotúngdo, after
- 4) lobosù, though, although
- 5) libomokh`oi, so long as
- 6) líng`ido, while
- 7) pogúmno, just as... so
- 8) pakhù`ingdo, whenever
- 9) pomoto`mdo, when
- 10) tribomokh`oi, till, until
- 11) tringò`ido, before

Examples:—

general forms with bound markers	emphatic forms with lo'm and bound markers	meanings
1) hèk ibogo	hek irambogo	as soon as he wrote
2) irabom`ektado	irò'mlobom`ektado	even if he wrote
3) irabomotúngdo	irò'mlobomotúngdo	after he had written
4) irabosù	irò'mlobosù	though he wrote
5) iribomokh`oi	irò'mlibomokh`oi	so long as he was writing
6) iring`ido	irò'mlíng`ido	while he was writing
7) ibogúmno	irò'mbogúmno	just as he wrote ...so

8) ibokhùdingdo	irò'mbokhùdingdo	whenever he wrote
9) ibomoto'mdo	irò'mbomoto'mdo	when he wrote
10) idribomakh'oi	irò'mdribomakh'oi	till he wrote
11) idring'òdo	iròmdring'òido	before he wrote

COMPOUND SENTENCES

4.2.3.0 Compound Sentences consist of two or more main clauses joined by the conjunctions (both conjunctive and disjunctive). Such conjunctions have been shown in the Morphology. They are discussed here in detail.

1 odùbù, but

bíren láklo'm'i odùbù càk càro'mdè. Biren came but did not take the meal

bínóyd'i sing'i odùbù to'n'i, Binoy is wise but idle

1(2) odùbù replaced by to'u;igúmbasùng

odùbù, "but" may be replaced by to'n;igúmbasùng, emphatic form when odùbù disjoins a positive verb and a negative verb provided such verbs are derived from the same root.

general form

emphatic form

bíréndò sén p'irò'm'i odùbù
syámdod'i p'irò'mdè

bíréndò sén p'irò'm'i to'u;igúmba
sùng syámdod'i p'irò'mdè

meaning — Biren was given the money but Syam was not given the money

1(3) odùbù, "but" replaced by Emphatic Forms

odùbù, "but" may be replaced by the three emphatic forms viz, d'i, sù..d'i and to... d'i, when odùbù disjoins a positive verb and a negative verb provided these verbs are derived from the different verb roots. In such case, these three emphatic forms are added to the verbs causing reduplication of these verbs.

general form

mà cà:ì odùbù
thòkté

emphatic forms

mà càd'ì cà:ì thòkt'ì thòkt'è
mà càsù cà:ì thòkt'ì thòkt'è
mà cáto cà:ì thòkt'ì thòkt'è

meaning— he eats but does not drink

2 odùm'òkpù, even then

cíth'ì on'ì thàré odùm'òkpù páokhúm lákté, two latters have been sent even then no reply has come

débéndo lùpà torà p'liè odùm'òkpù hénno páml'ì, Deben has been given ten rupees even then he is asking for more

2(2) odùm'òkpù, "even then," replaced by Emphatic Forms

odùm'òkpù, "even then" may be replaced by the two emphatic forms viz, odùm'òktodo and odùphàobodo.

general forms

mà càk càrè odùm'òkpù
cá thòkn'inglè

emphatic forms

mà càk càrè odùm'òktodo cá
thòkn'inglè
mà càk cà è odùphàobodo cá
thòkn'inglè

meaning— he has taken his meal even then he has liked to take tea

3 omosùng, "and"

binóy omosùng bírénno í, Binoy and Biren write

binóyno í omosùng bírénno pá:ì, Binoy writes and Biren reads

binóyno íro'mgon'ì omosùng páro'mgon'ì, Binoy will have written and read.

It is possible to avoid coordination at one point or more points by using modifiers when the verbs of the main clauses have the same subject and show sequential action.

(a) use of coordination

màno syámdogí sén ló'uro'm'i, kómlá l'óiro'm'i omosùng càrò'-m'i, he took money from Syam, bought orange and ate it

(b) use of modifiers

-syámdogí sén ló'urəgo kómlá loidúno mánò càrò'm'i, after taking money from Syam, buying orange he ate it

3(2) omosùng, "and" replaced by Emphatic Forms.

omosùng, "and" may be replaced by the three emphatic forms viz, odùgo, omód'i and omoh'iksùng when omosùng coordinates the verbs of the main clauses having the same subject.

general form

emphatic forms

màno í omosùng
pá:i

màno í odùgo pá:i
màno í omód'i pá:i
màno í omoh'iksùng pá:i

meaning — he writes and reads

3/3) omosùng, "and" replaced by -ò emphatic form

omosùng, "and" may be replaced by -ò, emphatic form, when omosùng coordinates two monosyllabic nominal forms. In such case, -ò is added to both the nominal forms.

general forms

emphatic forms

meanings

h'oi omosùng

h'ci:ò ló'i:ò

fruit and

lò'i

flower

ngà omosùng

ngà:ò càk:ò

fish and cooked

càk

rice

4 lánottrogo ... lá omo, "either ... or"

h'olno'uráno'ttrogo kómlárá omo càs'i, let us eat either mango or orange

so'ngómlá nöttrogo cárá zomo th'oksonù, let him drink either milk or tea

4(2) lá nöttrogo.....lá zomo, "either.....or" replaced by lá...lá zomo

lá nöttrogo.....lá zomo, "either.....or" may be replaced by lá . lá zomo, emphatic form.

general forms	emphatic forms	meanings
ho'irá nöttrogo lo'irá zomo	ho'irá lolrá zom	either fruit flower
ngàrá nöttrogo càklá zomo	ngàrá càklá zomo	either fish or cooked rice

5 mər'əmd'i. "because"

bínóy lák'óí mər'əmd'i làihòu h'òuri, Binoy will not come because he is suffering from fever

bírén khùtsùmo'n pho'nglói mər'əmd'i thəb'ək sùdè, Biren will not get his wage because he does not do the work

6 mər'əm əs'ino, "therefore"

bínóy làih'ou h'òu:ì mər'əm əs'ino lák'óí, Binoy is suffering from fever therefore he will not come

bírén thəb'ək sùdè mər'əm əs'ino khùtsùmo'n pho'nglói, Biren does not do the work therefore he will not get his wage

6(2) mər'əm əs'ino, "therefore" replaced by mər'əm ədùno

mər'əm əs'ino, "therefore" may be replaced by mər'əm ədùno, emphatic form.

general form	emphatic form
mà lóktè mər'əm əs'ino sən pho'nglói	mà lák'tè mər'əm ədùno sən pho'nglói
meaning—he does not come therefore he will not get the money	

7 nè, "as well as"

h'òinè l'òinè, fruit as well as flower

h'uinè h'oud'ongnè, dog as well as cat

7/2) nè, "as well as" replaced by sù

nè, "as well as" may be replaced by sù, emphatic form.

general forms	emphatics forms	meanings
ngànè càknè	ngàsù càksù	fish as well as cooked rice
tháonè thúmnè	tháosù thúmsù	oil as well as salt

8 nattro'go, "or"

birén ngos'ì lákpò yá'ì nattro'go hoyéng lákkon'ì, Biren may come today or will come tomorrow

bínóy k'òithén c'òtkon'ì nattro'go parà págon'ì. Biren will go to market or will read his lesson

9 nattro'bad'ì, "otherwise, if not"

pàbúnggì páotàk ins'ì nattro'bad'ì sáogon'ì, let us follow father's advice, otherwise he will be angry

thob'òk sùsòu nattro'bad'ì khùtsùmo'n pho'nglói, let them do the work otherwise they will not get the wage

9/2) nattro'bad'ì, "otherwise, if not" replaced by nattro'god'ì

nattro'b'ì, "otherwise, if not" may be replaced by nattro'god'ì, emphatic form.

general form	emphatic form
thob'òk sùs'ì nattro'bad'ì	thob'òk sùs'ì nattro'god'ì
khùtsùmo'n pho'nglói	khùtsùmo'n pho'nglói

meaning— let us work otherwise we will not get our wage

10 tannotto'no, ...sù'. "not only but also"

m'itin adudo pakh'ongto natto'no lo'isab'isingu laklo'm'i, not only the boys but also the girls came in the meeting

mádh'opt'i p'onghoto natto'no to'no'mbosu yá:i, Madhop may not only be foolish but also be idle

módhuno ibotonatto'no pabosu yá:i, Modhu may not only write but also may read

3 4 CONCORD

4.3.0 Manipuri has well knit concord systems, The main concord relations are the following:—

1 Verb-Noun Concord

2 Verb-Personal Pronoun Concord

4.3.1. Verb-Noun Concord in Plural

The following verbs, verbal nouns and verbal qualifiers in the feminine gender with p'i keep concord with the human nouns in such gender:—

- a) Emphatic Verbs of the Adjective Clauses in p'i
- b) Verbal nouns in p'i derived from the stative verb roots and used as the Subjective Complements
- c) Verbal Qualifiers in p'i derived from the stative verb roots

Examples:—

a) makh'oibù y'oklo'mb'i mab'ok, the grandmother who looked after them

b) nup'i as'i ongaob'i adu n'i, this woman is the one who is mad

c) asingb'i nup'i, the wise woman

4.3.2 Verb-Personal Pronoun Concord

4.3.2.1 Verb-Personal Pronoun Concord in Feminine Gender

The following verbs, verbal nouns and verbal qualifiers in the feminine gender with p'i may occur with the personal pronouns showing the feminine gender of such pronouns:—

- a) Emphatic Verbs of the Adjective Clauses in p'i
- b) Verbal nouns in p'i used as the Subjective Complements
- c) Verbal Qualifiers in p'i derived from the stative verb roots

Examples:—

(I) First Person

a) ob'okpù y'oklò'mb'i ò'ino, I who looked after my grandmother

b) ò'id'i pùmnòm'òk thàd'òklòb'i n'i, I am the one who has sacrificed everything

c) op'ongb'i ò'ikh'òino, we who are foolish

(II) Second Person

a) ob'okpù y'oklò'mb'i nòhàkno, you who looked after the grandmother

b) n'ongd'i pùmnòm'òk thàd'òklòb'i n'i, you are the one who has sacrificed everything

c) op'ongb'i nòkh'òino, you who are foolish

(III) Third Person

a) ob'okpù y'oklò'mb'i màno, she who looked after the grandmother

b) màd'i pùmuòm'òk thàd'òklòb'i n'i, she is the one who has sacrificed everything

c) op'ongb'i mòkh'òino, they who are foolish

4.3.2.2 Verb First Personal Pronoun Concord

1 Verb-First Personal Pronoun Concord in Plural

Verbs in s'i, hortative mood first person plural have concord with the first personal pronoun in the plural.

o'ikho'i h'oino'u càs'i, let us eat the mango

o'ikh'oi párá pákh'is'i, let us be reading our lesson

2 Verb-First Personal Pronoun Concord [without honorific implication]

The following verbs in the first person have concord with the first personal pronouns used as the subjects—

a) Verbs in ho'u, near in the indefinite and durative aspects of the future tense

b) Verbs in kè/s'i, hortative mood

c) Interrogative verbs in s'i. "should"

Examples:—

a) o'i os'ido ph'omh'oukh'igon'i, I shall be sitting here

b) o'i párá págè, let me read my lesson

o'ikh'oi h'oino'u càs'i, let us eat the mango

c) o'ikh'oi ngas'i c'ots'irá, should we go today?

3 Verb-First Personal Pronoun Concord with honorific implications

Verbs and Verbal Compounds in the honorific first person with co have concord with the first personal pronouns and honorific first personal pronouns.

o'i/ngónái o'i thob'ok sùzerí, I am doing the work

o'i/ngónái o'i os'ido ph'omzoh'oukh'igon'i, I shall be sitting here

o'i/ngónái o'i párá pázokh'igè, let me be reading my lesson

o'ikh'oi/ngónái o'ikh'oi ngas'i c'otcobo ngo'mgon'i, we can go today,

Verbs and Verbal Compounds in the honorific first person derived from the honorific verb roots have concord with the first personal pronouns and honorific first personal pronouns.

o'i/nonái o'i c'in séngzori, I am cleaning my mouth

o'ino/nonái o'ino os'ido lùpà càmo k'otcoh'ugon'i, I shall be giving one hundred rupees here

o'i/nonái o'i kh'ong hámzoge, let me answer the call of nature

o'i/nonái o'i lùk kho'nzobo ngo'mgon'i, I can give additional round of dishes

4 Verb/Modifiers-First Personal Pronoun Concord with honorific implication

Verbs and modifiers in the honorific first person have concord with the first personal pronouns and honorific first personal pronouns.

o'id'i/nonái o'id'i càk càzoro go p'otházoro'm'i I took rest after taking my meal

o'id'i/nonái o'id'i wàr'i tázodúno os'ido ph'omzoh'uhk'igon'i, I shall be sitting here hearing the story

o'ino/nonái o'ino sèn pho'ngzoro go séndón singzoge, let me pay my debt after getting the money

o'ikh'oid'i/nonái o'ikh'oid'i khùtsùmo'n tánzodúno moirángdo lo'izobo ngo'mgon'i, we can stay at Moirang earning the wage

4.3.2.3 Verb-Second Personal Pronoun Concord

1 Verb-Second Personal Pronoun Concord without honorific implications

The following verbs in the second person have concord with the second personal pronouns used as the subjects:—

- a) Emphatic verbal compounds with *óí/tá`i* in the present and past tenses
- b) Verbs in the Imperative Mood
- c) Interrogative Verbs in *kè*, "should"

Examples:—

a) *n`ongt`il n`oyàmbabù phùribói/phùribodá`i*, you are beating your elder brother

b) *nokh`oi thob`ok sùkh`o*, (you) go on doing the work

c) *n`ong párá pákh`igèrá*, should you be reading your lesson ?

2 Verb-Second Personal Pronoun Concord with honorific implications

Verbs in the honorific second person with *p`i* have concord with *od`om*, "you" (honorific singular) used as the subject.

od`omsù cá th`ekp`iridono, you are taking tea

od`omd`i nóngyáido c`ak cáb`iribói/cáb`iribodá`i, you are taking your meal at the midnight

od`omsù irúzob`ir`o, (you) please take bath

od`omno sán odù ínb`ibo tá`i, you have to wear that shawl

od`omno modù yéngb`igèrá, should you see that ?

Verbs in the honorific second person derived from the honorific verb roots also have concord with *od`om*, "you" (honorific singular).

od`omaù cá phánb`iridono, you are taking tea

od`omd`i nóngyáido lùk háb`iribói/háb`iribodá`i, you are taking meal at the midnight

od'omsù cáithob'ir'ò, (you) please take bath

od'omno sán odù th'onb'ibo tá'i, you have to wear that shawl

od'omno modù m'ityéng táb'igèrá, should you see that?

2(2) Replacement of od'om by Honorific Human Nouns

od'om, "you" (honorific singular) used as the subject of the verbs in the honorific second person may be replaced by the honorific human nouns. In such case, these honorific human nouns are in the Vocative Case,

yàmbùngsù cá phànb'iridono, oh! my elder brother! you are taking tea

yàmbùngd'i nóngyáido lùk háb'iribói/háb'iribodá'i, oh! my elder brother! you are taking the meal at the midnight

yàmbùngsù cáithob'ir'ò, oh! my elder brother! (you) please take bath

yàmbùngsù sáa odù th'onb'ibo tá'i, oh! my elder brother! you have to wear that shawl

yàmbùngsù modù m'ityéng táb'igèrá, oh! my elder brother! should you see that?

3 Verbs/Modifiers-Second Personal Pronoun Concord with honorific implications

Verbs and modifiers in the honorific second person have concord with od'om "you" (honorific singular).

od'omd'i thob'ok sùb'irigo khùtsùmo'n pho'ngb'iri, you are getting your wage after doing the work

od'od'i wàr'i páb'idúno mato'm lènb'iribói/iènb'iribodá'i, you are spending your time reading the story

od'omo lùk háb'inobo cáithob'ir'ò, (you) please take bath to have meal

od'omno wàr'i tàb'idúno pótháb'ibo tá'i, you have to take rest hearing the story

ad'omno modhugo ù:nob'inobo mabù ngáib'ikh'igèrà, should you be waiting for Modhu to see him?

4.3.2.4 Verb Noun/Third Personal Pronoun Concord

1 Verb-Noun/Third Personal Pronoun Concord without honorific implications

The following verbs in the third person have concord with the nouns and third personal pronouns used as the subjects: —

- a) Verbs in h'ou, "far" in the indefinite and durative aspects of the Present Tense
- b) Verbs in h'ou "near" in the indefinite and durative aspects of the Future Tense
- c) Emphatic Verbal Compounds with ói/tá:i in the Present and Past Tenses
- d) Verbs in sonù, Hortative Mood
- e) Interrogative Verbs in sonù, "should"

Examples: —

- a) bírénd'i/màd'i àdò ph'omh'ouri, Biren is sitting over there
- b) bírénd'i/màd'i as'ido sánnh'oukh'igon'i, Beren/he will be playing here
- c) bíréano/màno moyámabù phùríbói/phùríbojá:i, Biren/he is beating his elder brother
- d) bírénd'i/màd'i hoyéng c'òtsónù, let Biren/him go tomorrow
- e) bírénbù/màbù párá pákh'isonùrá, should Biren/he be reading his lesson?

2 Verbs-Noun/Third Personal Pronoun Concord with honorific implications

Verbs in the honorific third person with pī have concord with the honorific human nouns and third personal pronouns used as the subjects.

sonokhwàno/màno syámbù pángb'iro'mì, the Rajkumar/he helped Syam

sonokhwàd'i/màd'i os'ido syámbù ngáib'ih'òukh'igon'i, the Rajkumar/he will be waiting for Syam here

sonokhwàsù/màsù yèknobòbù pángb'iribói/pángb'iribodá:i, the Rajkumar/he is helping the enemy

sonokhwàno/màno syámbù ngáib'isonù, let the Rajkumar/him wait for Syam

sonokhwàno/màno syámbù thínb'isonùrá, should the Rajkumar/he escort Syam ?

Verbs in the honorific third person with pī derived from the honorific verb roots have concord with the honorific human nouns used as the subjects.

sonokhwàd'i àdo khùdóng phàn'b'ih'òuri, the Rajkmur is smoking over there

sonokhwàd'i os'ido lùk háb'ikh'igon'i, the Rajkumar will be taking meal here

sonokhwàd'i nóngyáido s'onggádo lèrgb'iribói/lèngb'iribodá:i, the Rajkumar is going to his home at the midnight

sonokhwàno s'ngóm phàn'b'isonù, let the Rajkumar drink the milk

sonokhwàno modù m'ityéng táb'ikh'isonùrá, should the Rajkumar be seeing that ?

sonokhwàd'i co'ukido lèngs'inb'iri, the Rajkumar is sitting on the chair

sonokhwàd'i oyùkto cáithob'iro'mbo yá:i, the Rajkumar may have taken bath in the morning

3 Verb/Modifier-Noun Concord in Honorific Third Person

Verbs and modifiers in the honorific third person with p'i have concord with the honorific human nouns used as the subjects.

yàmbùngd'i syámbù pángb'ínobò ádo màbù ngáib'ih'ouri, the elder brother is waiting for Syam over there to help him

yàmbùngd'i syámbù pángb'ínobò màbù os'ido ngáib'ikh'igo-n'i, the elder brother will be waiting for Syam here to help him

yàmbùngd'i syámbù pángb'ínobò màbù ngáib'iribói/ngáib'iribodá:i, the elder brother is waiting for Syam to help him

yàmbùngd'i syámbù pángb'ínobò màbù ngáib'iro'mbò yá:i; the elder brother may have waited for Syam to help him

4.3.3 Presence/Absence of Concord between Verbs of Main and Dependent Clauses

There may be presence or absence of concord in the tenses and tense forms between the verbs of the main and dependent clauses in the complex sentences.

4.3.3.1 Verbs of Main and Dependent Clauses in Tenses and Tense Forms

1 Same Aspects of same Tenses and Tense Forms

Verbs of the main clauses and the following verbs of the dependent clauses may be in the same aspects of the same tenses and tense forms:—

- a) Verbs of Adjective Clauses
- b) Verbs of Relative Clauses
- c) Verbs of Adverb clauses with Free Markers

Examples:—

1) Verbs of Main and Adjective Clauses

bírenno pánglo'mbo m'ising odù syámnosù pánglo'm'i, Syam helped those persons who were helped by Biren

bírenno pángbo yábo m'ising odù syámnosù pángbo yá'i, Syam may help those persons who may be helped by Biren

bírenno pánggodo'uribo m'ising odù syámnosù pánggon'i, Syam will help those persons who will be helped by Biren

bírenno pángbo ngo'mgodo'ubo m'ising odù syámnosù pángbo ngo'mgon'i, Syam can help those persons who can be helped by Biren

b) Verbs of Main and Relative Clauses

bírenbù pánglo'mbo'ising odù syámnosù pánglo'm'i, Syam helped whoever helped Biren

bírenno pánglo'mbo'ising odù syámnosù pánglo'm'i, Syam helped those who were helped by Biren

bírenno hàiro'mbo odù syámnosù hàiro'm'i, Syam said what Biren said

bíren lállo'm'i hàibo syámnosù tàro'm'i, Syam heard that Biren came

c) Verbs of Main and Adverb Clauses

bírenno n'ombo odùk syámnosù n'om'i, Syam works as much as Biren works

bírenno n'ombon'ino owámón phóng'i, since Biren works he gets his wage

2 Different Aspects of same Tenses and Tense Forms

Verbs of the main clauses and the verbs of the dependent clauses shown above may be in the different aspects of the same tenses and tense forms.

a) Verbs of Main and Adjective Clauses

bírenno pánglo'mlombo m'ising odù syámnosù pánglo'm'i, Syam helped those persons who had been helped by Biren

birénno pánglo'mbo yábo m'ising odù syámnosù pángbo yá'i
 Syam may help those persons who may have been helped by Biren

birénno pánglo'mgodo'uribo m'ising odù syámnosù pánggon'i,
 Syam will help those persons who will have been helped by Biren

b) Verbs of Main and Relative Clauses

birénbù pánglo'mlibosing odù syámnosù pánglo'm'i, Syam
 helped whoever were being helped by Biren

birénno pánglo'mlibosing odù syámnosù pánglo'm'i, Syam
 helped those who were being helped by Biren

birénno háiro'mlibo odù syámnosù háiro'm'i, Syam said what
 was being said by Biren

birénno háiro'mlibosing odù syámnosù háiro'm'i, Syam said
 whatever was being said by Biren

c) Verbs of Main and Adverb Clauses

birénno n'omlo'mlibo odùk syámnosù n'omlo'm'i, Syam wor-
 ked as much as Biren was working

birénno n'omlo'mlibon'iso owàmo'n pho'nglo'm'i, since Biren
 was working he got his wage

While the verbs of the dependent clauses express the indefinite aspect of the given tenses and tense forms, the verbs of the main clauses may express the perfect/durative aspect of such tenses and tense forms.

a) Verbs of Main and Adjective Clauses

birénno pánglo'mbo m'ising odù syámnosù pánglo'm'i, Syam
 had helped those persons who were helped by Biren

birénno pángbo yábo m'ising odù syámnosù pánglo'mbo yá'i,
 Syam may have helped those persons who may be helped by Biren

382—Syntax

b) Verbs of Main and Relative Clauses

birénàbù pánglò'mbòsìng odù syámncsù pánglò'mlè, Syam had helped whoever helped Biren

birénno pánglò'mbòsìng odù syámncsù pángl'mlè, Shyam had helped those who were helped by Syam

birénno hàirò'mbò odù syámncsù hàirò'mlè, Syam had said what was said by Biren

birénno hàirò'mbòsìng odù syámncsù hàirò'mlè, Syam had said whatever was said by Biren

c) Verbs of Main and Adverb Clauses

birénno n'ombò odùk syámncsù n'omlè, Syam has worked as much as Biren works

birénno n'ombon'ino owámò'n phò'nglè, since Biren works he has got his wage

3 Different Aspects of different Tenses and Tense Forms

Verbs of the main clauses and the verbs of the dependent clauses shown above may be in the different aspects of the different tenses and tense forms.

a) Verbs of Main and Adjective Clauses

birénno pánglò'mbò m'ising odù syámncsù pángkh'igò'nì, Syam will be helping those persons who was helped by Biren

birénno pángbò yábo m'ising odù syámncsù pánglè, Syam has helped those persons who may be helped by Biren

birénno pánggòdò'uribo m'ising odù syámncsù pánglò'mlè, Syam had helped those persons who will be helped by Biren

birénno pángbò ngo'mgòdò'ubo m'ising odù syámncsù pánglò'mgon'l, Syam will have helped those persons who can be helped by Biren

b) Verbs of Main and Relative Clauses

birénbù pánglò'mbòsing odù syámno'sù pánglò'mgon'ì, Syam will have helped whoever helped Biren

birénno pánglibòsing odù syámno'sù pánglò'mbo yá'ì, Syam may have helped those who are being helped by Biren

birénno hàiro'mbo odù syámno'sù hàiro'mgon'ì, Syam will have said what was said by Biren

birénno hàiribòsing odù syámno'sù hàiro'mbo yá'ì, Syam may have said whatever is being said by Biren

c) Verbs of Main and Adverb Clauses

birénno n'omlo'mbo odùk syámno'sù n'omlo'mgon'ì, Syam will have worked as much as Biren worked

birénno n'omkh'igado'uribon'ino owámo'n pho'ngbo yá'ì, since Biren will be working he may get his wage

4.3.3.2 Verbs of Main and Adverb Clauses in Tenses and Tense Forms

1 Same Aspects of Present and Past Tenses

Verbs of the adverb clauses with the bound markers express one of the three aspects of the present and past tenses viz., indefinite, perfect and durative. Such aspects of these tenses may be expressed by the verbs of the main clauses keeping concord with the verbs of these adverb clauses.

a) Indefinite Aspect

màno hék lákpogo syámsù lák'ì, as soon as he comes Syam also comes

màno lákpogúmno syámsù lák'ì, just as he comes so Syam also comes

màno lákpo moto'mdo syámsù lák'ì, when he comes Syam also comes

màno lákphàttring'oido syámsù lzk:t, no sooner he comes
than Syam also comes

màno lákpo khùdingdo syámsù lálklo'm'i, whenever he came
Syam also came

màno láktring'oido syámsù lálklo'm'i, before he came Syam
also come

màno lálklobomo'ktodo syámd'i lálklo'mdè, even if came Syam
did not come

màno lálklobosù syá'md'i lálklo'mdè, though he came Syam
did not come

màno láktribokho'i syá'md'i la'klo'mdè, till he came Syam
did not come

b) Perfect Aspect

màno la'klobomo'túngdo syámsù la'klè, after he has come
Syam has come

màno la'klobomotúngdo syámsù la'klo'mlè, after he had
come Syam had also come

c) Durative Aspect

màno íribomokh'oi syámsù íri, so long as he is writing Syam
is writing

màno íring'oido syámsù íro'ml'i, while he was writing Syam
was writing

1(2) Different Aspects of Present and Past Tenses

Verbs of the main clauses my express the aspects of
the present and past tense other than those denoted by the
verbs of the adverb clauses with the bound markers,

(V=Verb of Adverb Clause

VV=Verb of Main Clause)

a) V in Indefinite Aspect and VV in Perfect Aspect

màno hək lākpəgo sya'msù lāklè, as soon as he comes syam has also come

màno lākpəgúmno syámsù lāklè, just as he comes so Syam has come

màno la'kpo mətə'mdo sya'msù lāklè, when he comes Syam has also come

màno lākpháttring'oido syámsù la'klè, no sooner he comes than Syam has also come

màno lākpokhùdingdo sya'msù la'klə'mlè, whenever he came Syam had also come

màno la'ktring'oido sya'm la'klə'mlè, before he came Syam had come

màno la'kləbom'əktodo sya'md'i la'klə'mdrè, even if he came Syam had not come

màno la'kləbəsù sya'md'i la'klə'mdrè, though he came Syam had not come

màno lāktriboməkhə'i syámd'i lāklə'mdrè, till he came Syam had not come

b) V in Perfect Aspect and VV in Indefinite Aspect

màno la'kləbo mətúngdo sya'msù ta'k'i, after he has come Syam also comes

màno la'kləbo mətúngdo sya'msù la'klə'mli, after he had come Syam also comes

c) V in Durative Aspect and VV in Indefinite Aspect

màno n'əktiboməkhə'i syámsù n'ək'i, so long as he is laughing Syam also laughs

màno n'əktling'oido syámsù n'ək'ə'm'i, While he was laughing Syam also laughed

1(3) V in Present Tense and VV in Tense Forms

While the Verbs of the adverb clauses with the bound markers express one of the three aspects of the present tense viz., indefinite, perfect and durative, the verbs of the main clauses may express the aspects of the future tense and tense forms.

a) V in Present Indefinite and VV in Perfect Aspect of Tense Forms

màno hək ləkpo syámsù ləklo'mgon'i, as soon as he comes
Syam will also have come

màno ləkpo gúmno syámsù ləklo'mgon'i, just as he comes so
Syam will also have come

màno ləkphàttring'ido syámsù ləklo'mgon'i, no sooner he
comes than Syam will also have come

màno ləkpo khùdingdo syámsù ləklo'mgon'i ya'i, whenever
he comes Syam may also have come

màno ləktring'ido syámsù ləkpo ya'ro'mgon'i, before he
comes Syam might also have come

màno ləklobom'ektodo syámd'i lək' mbo nga'mlói, ever
if he comes Syam cannot have come

màno ləklobosù syámd'i ləkpo ngo'mlómloi, though he comes
Syam could not have come

màno ləktribomokh'oi syámd'i lək'tobo ta'rè, till he comes
Syam has had not to come

b) V in Present Perfect and V V in Indefinite Aspect of Tense Forms

màno ləklobo motúngdo syámsù ləkoni, after he has come
Syam will also come

màno ləklobo motúngdo syámsù ləkpo ya'i, after he has
come Syam may also come

c) V in Present Durative and VV in Indefinite Aspect of Tense Forms

màno ləklibomokh'oi syámsù lək'oni, so long as he is co-
ming Syam will also come

màno tákling'oido syámsù la'kpo ya':i, while he is coming
 Syam may also come

2 Three Tense Forms

When subjunctive (conditional) tense and contingent future perfect tense are expressed in the complex sentences, the verbs of the dependent clauses with the bound markers take indefinite aspect form of present/past tense and the verbs of the main clauses take indefinite/perfect aspect form of the future tense and tense forms

màno c'otlobod'i syámsù c'otkon'i, if he goes Syam will also
 go

màno c'otlo'mlobod'i syámsù c'otlo'mgon'i, if he went Syam
 would have gone

When "may" is expressed with the help of the verb of the dependent clauses with nobo, "so that", the verbs of the main clauses take indefinite/perfect aspect form of the tenses and tense forms,

màno syámbù dimápúrdò thínb'inobo mòng'ondo lúpà càmpò
 p'ìgon'i, he will be given one hundred rupees so that he may
 escort Svam to Dimapur

5 LEXIS

5.1 Present day Manipuri vocabulary consists of the words from the following sources:—

- a) Native Manipuri**
- b) A good number of words of NIA origin**
- c) A fairly good number of words of Arabic and Persian origin**

Besides these, a limited number of words from the European languages also, especially from English have been accepted by Modern Manipuri.

5.2 Phonological Forms of Loan Words

Loan words undergo some phonological changes.

5.2.1 Loan Words of NIA Origin

Phonological changes in the loan words of NIA origin have been shown in the following Sections of PHONOLOGY:-

- a) Internal Morphophonemic Changes in Loan Words (Pp 80-90)**
- b) Morphophonemic Changes of Consonants in Loan Words (Pp. 122-148)**

5.2.2 Loan Words of Arabic and Persian Origin

Vowels (monophthongs) other than -e in the initial, intervocal and final position in the loan words of Arabic and Persian origin undergo some morphophonemic changes. Such changes will be shown here.

1(1) o > a

a) Arabic Words

omin > ámin, revenue officer

hozzam > házám, barbar

mormot > mórám'ot, repair to the buildings

b) Persian Words

ocar > ácár, pickle

comca > cámo'c, spoon

hophta > háptá, week

1(2) ɔ>i

a) Arabic Words

zurmana>zóri, fine

b) Persian Words

nosa>nísá, intoxication

jonjir>zínzúr, a kind of gold necklace

1(3) ɔ>0

a) Arabic Words

dakhəl>dókhon, physical occupation of property

b) Persian Words

caddar>cádór, a kind of shawl

nomuna>nómná, model

resom>resom, velvet

1(4) ɔ>oi

a) Arabic Word

boyana>bóiná, advance payment of money

b) Persian Word

sohi>sóí, signature

2-a

2(1) a>ɔ

a) Arabic Words

okhobar>kho'bo'r, news

kobza>ko'po'co' iron implement used in locking the doors

kharij>kho'lás, discharge of prisoners

comca>cámo'co,, spoon

2(2) a>ai

a) Persian Word

pajama>páizámá

3-i

-i In the Arabic words changes into-ɔ,-a and-o.

a) i>ɔ

kolfoyet>kolph'ot, explanation

b) i>a

kharij>kho'lás, discharges of the prisoners

c) i>o

akil<ákón, intelligence

6.2 Replacement of Manipuri Script by the Bengali Script

Manipuri language written in the Bengali script became the official language of Manipur during the British rule (1891 AD-1947 AD). It was also used as the medium of Instruction and Examination during such rule.

The legacy left by the British rulers continues even today, Manipuri language written in the Bengali Script is now the official language and the medium of Instruction and Examination from the Primary to the Postgraduate levels.

6.3 Vowels and Consonants in Manipuri Script

Number of the vowels and consonants in the Manipuri script are same as those in the western scripts viz, the scripts used in writing the NIA languages like Bengali, Hindi etc. Pronunciation of such vowels and consonants in the Manipuri script is same as that in the western scripts, There will be no difficulty in using the Manipuri script in place of the Bengali script in the writing Manipuri, the Official Language. There has thus been a public demand since 1965 for using the Manipuri script for writing Manipuri, the Official Language. This demand had to confront with the so-called prayer of some misguided persons. Such prayer is that words in the Manipuri language to be written in the Manipuri script should be spelt according to the rules of the book, "wàk'oklón thléa solái omàilón pù'ok", This prayer is calculated to cause (a) confusion in the spelling of the Manipuri words and (b) delay in using the Manipuri script. It thus provoked criticism and opposition but it was vigorously publicised and propagated with the blessing and patronage of the politicians. There has thus been inordinately long delay in using the Manipuri script in writing Manipuri, the Official Language.

6. 5 Wakoklon System

Rules for spelling the Manipuri words written in the book, "wàk'oklón thléa solái omàilón pù'ok" will be referred to as the "wàk'oklón system".

If the Manipuri words are to be spelt according to the

wàk'ókón System, the vowels, diphthongs and consonants in the language are to be represented by and pronounced as the monosyllabic and compound words. These words and spelling of the Manipuri words with the help of such words will be shown here.

1 Words representing Consonants

1(1/1) Words representing Stops and Nasals in Syllable Initial Position

Unaspirated Voiceless stops and nasals in the syllable initial position are represented by the following monosyllabic words:—

Consonants Words representing Consonants in Syllable Initial Position

k	k'ok, head
p	pá, eyelid
t	tín, spittle
m	m'it, eye
n	ná, ear
ng	ngó'u, palate

1(1/2) Words representing Stops and Nasals in Syllable Final Position

Monosyllabic words representing the stops and nasals in the syllable initial position take l'onsúm, supreme god head when such words represent these consonant phonemes in the syllable final position.

Consonants Words representing Consonants in Syllable Final Position

k	k'ok:l'onsúm (k'ok, head=k)
p	pá:l'onsúm (pá, eyelid=p)
t	tín:l'onsúm (tín, spittle=t)
m	m'it:l'onsúm (m'it, eye=m)
n	ná:l'onsúm (ná, ear=n)
ng	ngó'u:l'onsúm (ngó'u, palate=ng)

1(1/3) Words representing Voiced stops in Syllable Initial Position

monosyllabic words representing the stop consonants in Syllable initial position take lóm, voicing or divine life force when such words represent the voiced stops in the syllable initial position.

Consonants	Words presenting the Consonants in Syllable Initial Position
------------	--

b	pá:lóm (pá, eyelid=p)
d	tín:lóm (tin, spittle=t)
g	k'ók:lóm (k'ok, head=k)

1(2/1) Words representing Aspirated Voiced Stops

Aspirated Voiceless stops are represented by the following monosyllabic words:—

Consonants	Words representing Consonants
------------	-------------------------------

kh	khó'u, throat
ph	phó'm, EM, heaven
th	thó'u, EM, breast

1(2/2) Words representing Aspirated Voiced Stop

Monosyllabic words representing the aspirated voiceless stops take lóm, voicing or divine life force when such words represent aspirated voiced stops.

Consonants	Words representing Consonants
------------	-------------------------------

bh	phó'm:lóm (phó'm, heaven=ph)
dh	thó'u:óm (thó'u, breast=th)
gh	khó'u:lóm (khó'u, throat=kh)

1(3/1) Words representing -l, -c and -s

-l, -c and -s are represented by the following monosyllabic words:—

Consonants	Words representing Consonants
------------	-------------------------------

l	lái, god
c	c'in, mouth
s	s'òm, hair

1(3/2) Words representing -r, -z and -zh

Monosyllabic words representing -l, -c and -s take lóm, voicing or divine life force when such words represent -r, -z and -zh.

Consonants	Words representing Consonants
r	lái:lóm (láì, god=l)
z	c'in:lóm (c'in, mouth=c)
zh	sóm:lóm (s'óm, hair=s)

1(4) Words representing -h, -w and -y

-h, -w and -y are represented by the following monosyllabic words:

Consonants	Words representing Consonants
h	hùk, EM, body
w	wài, EM, wind
y	yàng, backbone

1(5) Defects of Words representing Consonants

Compound words with lóm, voicing or divine life force representing the unaspirated voiced stops, aspirated voiced stops, -r, -z and -zh have the following defects:—

a) These words do not represent the sounds of such consonant phonemes.

b) These words are disyllabic compound forms. They thus make the spelling of the given words very long and clumsy.

Compound words with l'onsúm, supreme god head representing the unaspirated voiceless stops and nasals in the syllable final position are very long compound forms. They make the spelling of the given words awfully long and horribly clumsy.

2 Words representing Vowels

2(1/1) Words representing Vowels in Syllable Final/Intervocal Position

Words representing the vowels (monophthongs) in the syllable final position and the syllable intervocal position are shown below:—

396—Graphology

Vowels Words representing Vowels in Syllable Final/Intervocal Position

	with ϕ (zero) Tone	with lúm, Falling Tone
o	on`op	o:n`op: lúm
a	a:n`op	a:n`op: lúm
e	e:n`op	e:n`op:lúm
o	o:n`op	o:n`op: lúm
i	i:n`op	i:n`op:lúm
u	ùn:n`op	ùn:n`op:lúm

Meanings of the components forming the above words are shown below:—

i, blood	n`op, add
lúm, falling tone	ùn, skin
or vital life force	

2(1/2) Defects of Words representing Vowels in Syllable Final/Intervocal Position

The words representing i and-u consist of `i, blood and-ùn, skin in the Falling Tone as the basic stems of such words. These words do not express i-and u in the High Tone.

The words representing o,-a,-e and-o consist of n`op, add in the Falling Tone as the basic stem of such words. These words do not express o,-a,-e and-o in the High Tone.

The words with lúm, falling tone representing the vowels in the syllable intervocal position with such tone are compound forms with three or more syllables. Such words make the spelling of the given words inordinately long and clumsy.

2(1/3) Spelling of Words with Vowels in Syllable Intervocal Position.

When the words with the vowels in the syllable intervocal position are spelt according to the wàkóklón System, Such spelling of these words may consist of the following components:—

- a) Eight or more noun words
- b) Two or more lúms, falling tone or vital life force
- c) Two or more lóms, voicing or divine life force
- d) Four or more l'onsúms, supreme god head
- e) Four or more n'ops, add

Examples—

Words	Spelling of the Words
khómleń m'ong-lánzán, EM, dream	khó'u: on'op: m'it: l'onsúm: láj: en'op: ná: l'onsúm: m'it: on'op: lúm: ngo'u: l'osúm: láj: a'op: lúm: ná: l'osúm: c'in: lóm: an'op: lúm: ná: l'onsúm
khùtc'it khùt-nànth'ok, accidental fall from the hand	khó'u: un'op: lúm: tin: l'onsúm: c'in: in'op: lúm: tin: l'osúm: khó'u: un'op: lúm: tin: l'onsúm: ná: an'op: lúm: tin: l'onsúm: ná: an'op: lúm: ná: l'onsúm: tho'u: on'op. lúm: k'ok: l'onsúm
lómtháng khùt l'ot, robe of honour	láj: on'op: m'it: l'onsúm: tho'u: an'op: ngo'u: l'osúm: khó'u: un'op: lúm: tin l'onsúm: láj: on'op: lúm: tin: l'onsúm
múng'én k'ang-l'on, witch craft	m'it: un'op: ngo'u: l'onsúm: s'òm: en'op: ná: l'onsúm: k'ok: an'op: lúm: ngo'u: l'onsúm: láj: on'op: lúm: ná: l'onsúm
phùmlèn thàng-g'on, a long sickle	phó'm: un'op: lúm: m'it: l'onsúm: láj: en'op: lúm: ná: l'onsúm: tho'u: an'op: lúm: ngo'u: l'onsúm: k'ok: lóm: on'op: lúm: ná: l'onsúm
s'okyéng múng-sén, looking glass	s'òm: on'op: lúm: k'ok: l'onsúm: yáng: en'op ngo'u: l'onsúm: m'it: un'op: ngo'u: l'onsúm: s'òm: en'op: ná: l'onsúm

2(1/4) Spelling of Words with Vowels in Syllable Final Position

When the words with the vowels in the syllable final

position are spelt according to the wák'oklón Systems, such spelling of these words may consist of the following components:—

- a) Nine or more noun words
- b) Two or more lúms, falling tone or vital life force
- c) One or more lóms, voicing or divine life force
- d) Three or more l'onsúms, supreme god head
- e) Five or more n'ops, add

Examples:—

Words	Spelling of the Words
m'ir'ok m'icó'n-thì, shyness	mit: in'òp: lúm lák: lóm: on'òp: lúm: k'ok: l'on-súm: m'it: in'òp: lúm: c'ia: on'òp: ná: l'on-súm: tho'u: in'òp: lúm:
m'ith'ib'ong m'it'ó'mbán, worthless person	m'it: in'òp: iúm: tho'u: in'òp: lúm. pá:lóm: on'òp: lúm: ngo'u: l'onsúm: m'it: in'òp: lúm: tín: on'òp: m'it' l'onsúm: pá: lóm: an'òp: ná: l'onsúm:
páhàng núng- yéngzég, EM, widow	pá: an'òp: hùk: an'òp: lúm: ngo'u: l'onsúm: ná: un'òp: ngo'u: l'osúm: yàng: en'òp, ngo'u l'onsúm: c'in: lóm: en'òp: ngo'u: l'onsúm:
n'ingzíng mà- ngzíngnobo, hesitation	ná: in'òp: lúm: ngo'u: l'onsúm: c'in: lóm: in'òp: ngo'u: l'onsúm: m'it: an'òp. lúm: ngo'u: l'onsúm: c'in: lóm: in'òp. ngo'u. l'onsúm: ná: on'òp: pá: lóm: on'òp
núngsí núng- ngóabo, love	ná: un'òp. ngo'u: l'onsúm. s'òm. in'òp. ná. un'òp. ngo'u. l'onsúm. ngo'u. on'òp. ná. l'onsúm. pá. lóm. on'òp
núngsúk nú- ngzàpobo, melancholy	ná: un'òp: ngo'u: l'onsúm: s'òm: un'òp. lúm: k'ok: l'onsúm. ná: un'òp: ngo'u. l'onsúm: c'in: lóm: an'òp. lúm. ná. on'òp. pá: lóm. on'òp.

2(2/1) Words representing Vowels in Syllable Initial Position

Vowels in the syllable initial position are represented by the following words:—

Vowels Words representing Vowels in Syllable Initial Position

	-with ϕ (zero) Tone	-with lúm, falling tone
o	otíngà, l'onsúm	otíngà lúm. l'onsúm
a	otíngá, a. n'òp, l'onsúm	otíngà, a. n'òp. lúm. l'onsúm
e	otíngà, e. n'òp. l'onsúm	otíngà, e. n'òp. lúm. l'onsúm
o	otíngà, o. n'òp. l'onsúm	otíngà, o. n'òp. lúm. l'onsúm
i	ì: l'onsu'm	ì. lu'm; l'onsu'm
u	ùn: l'onsu'm	ùn. lu'm; l'onsu'm

Meaning of the components forming the above words are shown below:—

otíngà, sky	lu'm, falling tone or vital life force
ì, blood	n'òp, add
l'onsu'm, supreme	ùn, skin
god head	

2(2/2) Defects of Words representing Vowels in Syllable Initial Position

The words representing the vowels in the syllable initial position have the following defects:—

- These words do not express the sounds of the vowels
- The words representing -o, -a, -e and -o consist of ting, a bound morpheme in the High Tone as the basic stem of such words. These words thus do not express the four vowels in the Falling Tone.

The words representing -i and -u consist of -ì, blood and ùn, skin in the Falling Tone as the basic stems of such words. These words do not thus express the two vowels in the High Tone.

- The words representing the vowels in the syllable initial position are very long. They thus make spelling of the given words awfully long and horribly clumsy.

2(2/5) Spelling of Words with Vowels in Syllable Initial Position

When the words with the vowels in the syllable initial position are spelt according to the Wàk'oklón System; the

400- Graphology

spelling of such words may consist of the following components:—

- a) Eight or more noun words
- b) One or more lúms, falling tone or vital life force
- c) One or more lóms, voicing or diuine life force
- d) four or more l'onsúms, supreme god head
- e) Three or more n'ops, add

Examples—

Words	Spelling of Words
as'it owánthá, windy season	otíngà. l'onsu'm. s'òm. i. n'òp. lu'm. tìn. l'on- su'm, otíngà, l'onsu'm, wàt. an'òp. ná. l'on- su'm. tho'u. an'òp
arámdár cèp- thá, fillister	otíngà, an'òp. lu'm. l'onsúms; láí. lóm. an'òp m'it. l'onsu'm. tìn. lóm. an'òp. láí, lóm. l'onsu'm. c'lin, en'òp, lúm. pá. l'onsu'm, tho'u, an'òp
énno'm nàpàkp'i, an edible herb	otíngà, en'òp, lu'm. l'onsu'm. ná. l'onsu'm ná. on'òp. m'it, l'onsu'm. ná, an'òp, lu'm. pá, an'òp. lu'm. k'òk. l'onsu'm, pá, in'òp: lu'm
l'irúm s'òkt'ong- ngà, EM, a kind of umbrella	ì: lúm: l'onsu'm: láí: lóm: un'òp: lúm. m'it: l'onsu'm: s'òm, on'òp, lu'm, k'òk. l'on- su'm: tìn. on'òp lu'm. ngo'u: l'onsu'm ngo'u. an'òp. lu'm
l'onth'ok l'ons'in, alteration	otíngà. on'òp. lu'm. l'onsu'm. ná. l'onsu'm, tho'u. on'òp. lu'm. k'òk. l'onsu'm. otíngà: on'òp. lu'm. l'onsu'm. ná. l'onsu'm. s'òm. in'òp. lu'm. ná. l'onsu'm
úr'ok so'ndúng- ín, cattle egret	ùn: l'onsu'm: láí: lóm: on'òp: lu'm: k'òk: l'onsu'm: s'òm. on'òp. ná. l'onsu'm. tìn. lóm, un'òp. ngo'u: l'onsu'm: ì: l'onsu'm. ná. l'on- su'm

3 Words representing Diphthongs

3(1/1) Words representing Diphthongs in Syllable Final Position

Words representing the diphthongs in the syllable final position are shown below:—

Diphthongs Words representing Diphthongs in Syllable Final Position

	-with ϕ (zero) Tone	-with lúm, falling Tone
oi	c'oi:n'op	c'oi:n'op: lúm
ou	sə'u:n'op	sə'u. n'op. lu'm
ai	a. n'op. 'i. l'onsu'm	a. n'op. lúm, 'i. l'onsúm
ao	a. n'op. o'tingá. on'op. l'onsu'm	a. n'op. lúm. o'tingá. l'onsúm
oi	on'op. 'i. l'onsúm	o. n'op. lu'm. 'i. l'onsúm
ui	ùn. 'n'op. 'i. l'onsu'm	ùn. n'op. lu'm. 'i. l'onsu'm

Meanings of the components forming the above words are shown below—

o'tingá, sky	l'onsúm, supreme god head
c'oi, stick	n'op, and
'i, blood	sə'u, net
lu'm, falling tone or vital life force	ùn, skin

The words representing -ai, -ao, -oi and -ui are not given in the Wàkóklón System. They are reconstructed according to the principles followed in the Wàk'oklón System.

3(1/2) Defects of Words representing Diphthongs in Syllable Final Position

The words representing the diphthongs in the syllable final position have the following defects:—

- These words do not express the sounds of the diphthongs.
- The words representing -oi, -ai, -oi, and -ui consist of c'oi, stick, 'i, blood and ùn. skin in the Falling Tone as the basic stems of such words. These words do not thus express the four diphthongs in the High Tone.

The words representing -au and -ao consist of əu, net and ting, a bound morpheme (ɔ+ting+ngà, sky) in the High Tone as the basic stems of such words. These words do not thus express the two diphthongs in the Falling Tone.

c) The words representing the diphthongs are very long compound forms. They thus make the spelling of the given words awfully long and horribly clumsy.

3(1/3) Spelling of Words with Diphthongs in Syllable Final Position.

When the words with the diphthongs in the syllable final position are spelt according to the Wàkò'klón System, such spelling of these words may consist of the following components:—

- a) Eight or more noun words
- b) One or more lu'ums, falling tone or vital life force
- c) One or more lóms, voicing or divine life force
- d) Two or more l'onsu'ums, supreme god head
- e) Five or more n'ops, add

Examples:—

Words	Spelling of Words
l'òik'òk l'òikài, neighbours	lái. c'òino'p. lúm. k'òk. on'òp. lúm. k'òk. l'onsúm. láí. c'òia'òp. lúm. k'òk. an'òp. lúm. 'i. l'onsúm
l'òukháò phùr'it, a kind of shirt	lái. ə'u'no'p. lúm. k'ho'u. an'òp. lúm. otíngà. on'òp. l'onsúm. pho'm. un'òp. lúm. láí. lóm. 'i: n'òp. lóm. tín l'on- súm
p'ongdài súdái'no'bo, fool hardy	pá. on'òp. lúm. ngo'u. l'onsúm. tín lóm: an'òp. 'i. l'onsúm. s'əm. un'òp. tín: lóm: an'òp. 'j; l'onsúm. ná. on'òp. pá. lóm. on'òp.
pànnáo' s'ingnáo, progenies	pá: an'òp: lúm. ná. l'onsúm. ná. an'òp. ctíngà. on'òp. l'onsúm. ə'əm. in'òp. ngo'u.

	l'onsúm. ná: an'op: otingà: on'op. l'onsúm
phùdáo ná'áonobo, entravagant	ph'om. un'op. lúm. tin. lóm. an'op. otingà. on'op. l'onsúm ná. an'op. lúm. tin. an'op otingà. on'op. l'onsúm. ná. on'op, pá. lóm. on'op
th'oic'ot wángé'otnobo, arrogant	tho'u. on'op. lúm. ì. l'onsúm. c'in- on'op. lúm. tin. l'onsúm. wàj, an'op. ngó'u. l'onsúm. c'in. on'op: lúm. tin. l'onsúm, ná, on'op. pá lóm. on'op

3(2/1) Words representing Diphthongs in Syllable Initial Position

Words representing the diphthongs in the syllable initial position are not given in the wáko'klón System. Such words are reconstructed according to the principles followed in the Wáko'klón System. These reconstructed words are shown below:—

Diphthongs	Words representing Diphthongs in Syllable Initial Position	
	-with ϕ (zero) tone	-with lúm, falling tone
oi	otingà. c'oin'op. l'onsúm	otingà. c'oin'op. lúm. l'onsúm
ou	otingà. so'un'op. l'onsu'm	otingà. so'un'op. lúm. l'onsu'm
ai	otingà. an'op. l'onsu'm ì. l'onsu'm	otingà. a. n'op. lúm. l'on- su'm. ì. l'onsu'm
ao	otingà. a.n'op. l'onsu'm. otingà. o.n'op l'onsúm	otingà. a.n'op. lu'm. l'on- su'm. otingà. on'op l'onsu'm
ai	otingà. on'op. l'onsu'm ì. l'onsu'm	otingà. o.n'op. lu'm. l'on- su'm. ì. l'onsu'm
ui	ùn. l'onsu'm. ì. l'onsu'm	ùn lu'm, l'onsu'm. ì. l'on- su'm

Meanings of the components forming the above words are shown below:—

otíngà, sky	l'onsúm, supreme god head
c'òì, stick	n'òp, add
'ì, blood	so'u, net
lu'm, falling tone or vital life force	ùn, skin

3(2/2) Defects of words representing Diphthongs in Syllable Initial Position

The words representing in the syllable initial position have the following defects:—

- a) These words do not express the sounds of the diphthongs
- b) The words representing -oi, -ai, -oi and -ui in the syllable initial position are the extensions of the words representing such diphthongs in the syllable final position. They do not thus express the four diphthongs in the High Tone.

The words representing -ou and -ao in the syllable initial position are the extensions of the words representing such diphthongs in the syllable final position. They do not thus express the two diphthongs in the Falling Tone,

- c) These words are very long compound forms. They make the spelling of the given words awfully long and horribly clumsy.

3(2/3) Spelling of Words with Diphthongs in Syllable Initial Position

When the words with the diphthongs in the syllable initial position are spelt according to the Wàk'òk'lóu System, such spelling of these words may consist of the following components:—

- a) Eight or more noun words
- b) One or more lúms, falling tone or vital life force
- c) One or more lóms, voicing or divine life force

d) Three or more l'onsúms, supreme god head

e) Three or more n'ops, add

Examples—

Words	Spelling of Words
o'ikh'oikhwàino, all of us	o'tingà, c'oin'òp: lu'm l'onsu'm. kho'u: on'òp, lu'm ìi. l'onsu'm, kho'u: wàì: an'òp, lu'm. ìi: l'onsu'm. nà. on'òp
o'ugriho'nggén, a kind of dance	o'tingà, so'uno'p, lúm l'onsu'm. k'ok. lóm. lái. lóm. iao'p. hùk. on'òp. ngo'u, l'onsúm. k'ok, lóm, on'òp. nà. l'onsúm
áim'onkhúlén, name of a tribal village	o'tingà, an'òp l'onsu'm. ìi. l'onsu'm m'it on'òp. lu'm. ná. l'onsu'm. kho'u. un'òp. ná. l'onsu'm: láì. en'òp ná, l'onsu'm
áo'zùri pám'b'ì, a paddy plant	o'tingà, an'òp. l'onsu'm: o'tingà, on'òp. l'on- súm, c'in. lóm. un'òp. lúm. láì. lóm. ìin'òp. lu'm. pá, an'òp: lu'm: m'it. l'onsu'm pá. lóm. ìi: n'òp
o'iro'm yètl'om, left and right hand sides	o'tingà, on'òp. lúm. l'onsu'm. ìi. l'onsu'm. lái lóm. on'òp. lúm. m'it, l'onsu'm. y'ang en'òp. lu'm. tín. l'onsu'm. láì: on'òp: lu'm: m'it : l'onsu'm
u'ibói u'idobói tou': ìi, it is hardly firm	ùn: lúm. l'onsúm: ìi: l'onsúm: pá, lóm. on'òp: ìi: l'onsúm: ùn: lúm: l'onsu'm. ìi: l'onsúm: tín lóm: on'òp: pá: lóm: on'òp: ìi: l'onsúm: tín: so'uno'p: ìi. lúm. l'onsu'm

4 Assessment on Spelling of Words according to Wàk'oklón System

Spelling of the Manipuri words according to the Wàk'oklón System has the following defects:—

a) Sounds of the vowels and diphthongs are not expressed, Sounds of the unaspirated voiced stops, the aspirated voiced

406- Graphology

stops, -r, -z and -zh are not expressed.

b) The following vowels and diphthongs do not express the Tones shown against them:—

- I) -o, -a, -e and -o in the Falling Tone
 - II) -i and -u in the High Tone
 - III) -oi, -ai, -oi and -ui in the High Tone
 - IV) -ou and -ao in the Falling Tone
- c) Spelling of the words is awfully long and horribly clumsy.

The above defects are the sufficient ground for rejecting the demand for spelling the Manipuri words according to the Wāk'oklón System.
